**INDEX**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **CHAPTER No** | **SUBJECT** | **Page No** |
| 1. | Fasle ka Anumaan Lagana | 1 |
| 2. | Camouflage aur Concealment | 4 |
| 3. | Zamini Nishan ka Bayan aur Pahchan | 7 |
| 4. | Section aur Platoon Formations | 11 |
| 5. | Stalking | 15 |
| 6. | Range Card Banana | 19 |
| 7. | Fire Discipline aur Fire Control Orders | 22 |
| 8. | Scouting aur Section Battle Drill | 27 |
| 9. | Verbal Orders | 32 |
| 10. | Surveillance aur Observation | 34 |
| 11. | Battle Procedure | 37 |
| 12. | Infantry ki Visheshtaen aur Infantry Battalion 4B (MOD) ki banawat | 40 |
| 13. | Organisation & Employment of Ghatak Platoon | 54 |
| 14. | Organisation & Employment of Artillery | 57 |
| 15. | Organisation & Employment of Armour & Mechanised Infantry Battalion | 62 |
| 16. | Patrolling | 66 |
| 17. | Ambush | 75 |
| 18. | Raid | 88 |
| 19. | Fauji Tactical Shabdon ka Matlab | 102 |
| 20. | Defence : General | 107 |
| 21. | Platoon ke Hathiyaron ka Siting aur Employment | 118 |
| 22. | DCB par Defence | 122 |
| 23. | Defensive Operations on Line of Control | 132 |
| 24. | Desert mein Defensive Operations | 136 |
| 25. | Tank Hunting | 145 |
| 26. | Attack | 148 |
| 27. | Quick Attack | 161 |
| 28. | Bunker Bursting Drill | 175 |
| 29. | Attack in Skirmish Order | 179 |
| 30. | Small Team Concept | 182 |
| 31. | Intelligence collection at Battalion / Company level. | 187 |
| 32. | Road Opening & Convey Protection | 191 |
| 33. | MCP aur QRT | 198 |
| 34. | Built up Area ko Clear Karna | 205 |
| 35. | CASO & SADO | 207 |
| 36. | Raid on Militant Hide Out | 212 |
| 37. | Human Rights | 216 |
| 38. | Wire Obstacles | 219 |
| 39. | Mine Laying | 223 |
| 40. | Basic Demolition Set aur Assault Charges | 228 |
| 41. | Mine Anti Personnel M-18 (Claymore Mine) | 232 |
| 42. | Booby Traps aur IEDs | 234 |

(ii)

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **CHAPTER No** | **SUBJECT** | **Page No** |
| 43. | Basic Soldier Documentation: IAFF-958 aur AB-64 | 239 |
| 44. | Ration : Authorisation, Procurement & Issue | 243 |
| 45. | Maintenance of Small Arms Documents | 246 |
| 46. | Unit Security | 250 |
| 47. | Radio Telephony Procedure | 257 |
| 48. | Ammunition Scale | 263 |
| 49. | Sikhlai keTariqe | 268 |
| 50. | Lesson Plan Banana | 277 |
| 51. | Weapon Training Programme Banana | 280 |
| 52.. | Instructional Aid aur Unka Istemal | 285 |
| 53. | PWT,CWT aur Composite Periods | 288 |
| 54. | Range ki Tartib aur Fire Conduct Karna | 295 |
| 55. | Chote Hathiyaron ke Fire ka Siddhant | 302 |
| 56. | Aam Group ke Sidhant aur Mulyankan ke Mapdand | 307 |
| 57. | Shot Group kaVishleshan aur INSAS Rifle Firer ko Coach Karna. | 311 |
| 58. | Coaching the LMG firer | 318 |
| 59. | BFSR | 323 |
| 60. | HHTI aur LRF | 328 |
| 61. | Infantry Battalion ke Radio Sets | 332 |
| 62. | Svl, Obsn aur duri napne ki drill | 339 |
| 63. | Navigation drill | 341 |
| 64. | Bunker barbad karne ki drill | 343 |
| 65. | Jaldi ke hamle mein sec battle drill | 345 |
| 66. | Stand to drill | 347 |
| 67. | Jaldi ke hamle ke liye pl battle drill | 348 |
| 68. | Pl fire base | 350 |
| 69. | OPs aur LPs | 352 |
| 70. | Bahu dishatmak hamla | 353 |
| 71. | Abhhinn fire base ki awdharna | 356 |
| 72. | Def akhtiyaar karna | 359 |

**CHAPTER – 1**

**FASLE KA ANUMAN LAGANA**

**Infantry Training Volume -1 Infantry Platoon Weapons Pamphlet No 2 Field Craft**

**(All Arms) 2007**

**Fasle ka Anuman Lagane par Asar Dalne Wali Baten**

1. Fasle ka anuman lagate samay asar dalne wali do baten hain :-
   1. Zamin ki banawat
   2. Mausami halat.
2. Chahe ham kisi bhi tarike se duri ka anuman lagayein, mausam ya zamin ki banawat ke karan fasla kam ya jyada lagta hai. (Pahle ham dekhte hain ki fasla asal se kam dikhai kab deta hai yani lakshya jitna dur hota hai woh kab kam duri par malum padta hai).
3. **Fasla Asal se Kam Lagane ke Karan**.
   1. Jab roshni tej hoti hai ya suraj prekshak (observer) yani dekhne wale ke peechhe chamakta hai.
   2. Jab lakshya aas-pass ki chizon se bada hota hai.
   3. Jab prekshak (obsever) aur lakshya ke beech kuch agochar bhumi (dead ground) ho.
   4. Jab observer neche se upar ko dekhta hain jaise ke pahadi ilaque mein.
4. Abhi ham dekhte hain ke duri zyada kyon lagti hai. Yani (Lakshya jitna dur hota hai, usse bhi aage malum padta hai).
5. **Fasla Asal se Zyada Lagne ke Karan.** 
   1. Jab roshni kam hoti hai ya suraj ki kirnein prekshak ki ankhon mein aadi padti ho.
   2. Jab lakshya aas-pass ki chizon se chota hota hai.
   3. Jab ghaati (valley) ke paar dekhte hain.
   4. Jab nichhe let ke (Lying position) dekhte hain.
   5. Jab lakshya ko street yani galion, jungle ki pagdandi jaise tang jagahon ke bich se dekhte hain.
   6. Jab pahadi ilaque mein upar se neeche dekhte hain.

**Fasle Ka Anuman Lagane Ke Tarique Aur Mafi Galti**

1. **Duri napne ke tarique.** 
   1. Ikai ka tarika (map unit ka tarika).
   2. Dikhai ka tarika.
   3. Awaz ka tarika.
   4. Bearing ka tarika.
2. **Ikai ka Tarika (Unit of Measure Method).** Is tarike se kaam lene ke liye jawan zamin par 100 gaz tak ki duri ka anuman lagane mein mahir hona chahiye. Is tarike se 400 gaz tak ki duri aasani se napi ja sakti hai. 400 gaz tak ke target ki duri malum karne ke liye pahle 100 gaz tak ka anuman lagao phir usse 100-100 gaz ki badotri tab tak karte raho jab tak us se aap target tak na pahunch jayein. Is se us target ki duri malum ho jayegi 400 gaz se aage dur ke target ki duri ke liye is tarah malum karo. Us target ki aadhi duri ka upar batay dhang se andaja lagao phir us duri ko dugna kar do. Isse target ki duri malum ho jayegi. Is tarike ki kamyabi kewal 1000 gaz tak ke targeton ke liye hai.
3. **Lakshya Dekhkar Uski Duri Malum Karna (Appearance Method).** Is tarike mein lakshya ki duri ka andaza is baat se lagaya jaye ki woh kitna bada ya uski dusri chizen kitni dikhai deti hain. Is tarike se sahi duri tabhi malum hogi jab jawan ko yah pata ho ki kitni kitni duri par koi chiz kitni badi dikhai deti hai.
   1. 200 m par - Jawan ka pura sharir saaf dikhai deta hai.
   2. 250 m par - Ghutne tek position mein jawan fore sight blade se cover ho jata hai.
   3. 300 m par - Chehra dhundhla dikhai deta hai.
   4. 400 m par - Pura sharir dikhai deta hai, lekin chehra saaf nazar nahin aata. Foresight tip khare admi ko cover karta hai.
   5. 500 m par - Kandhe se uparwala hissa patla dikhai deta hai, anng dikhai nahin dete aur pura sharir patla dikhai deta hai.
   6. 600 m par - Sir (head), nukta jaisa dikhta hai, ang dikhai nahi dete aur pura sharir patla dikhai deta hai.
   7. 200 m par kneeling position wale jawan ko INSAS rifle ki foresight cover karti hai.
   8. 350 m par khare jawan ko INSAS rifle ki fore sight cover karti hai.
4. **Dhwani ka Tarika (Sound Method).**  Dhwani yani aawaz hawa mein ek second mein takriban 366 gaz (1100ft) tak jati hai. Isse duri ankne mein asani hoti hai. Lekin is ke liye goli ka asar ya sound jaruri hai. Udaaharan ke liye Jab aap din mein goli dhuan ya dhool ya raat mein chamak dekhein tab fauran ek sec mein 4 (char) ke hisab se ginti ginani shuru karein. Jab dhamaka suna jaye tab ginna band karein. Rukne tak jitne number tumne gine hain woh utne 100 gaz ko zahir karenge aur wohi range bhi hogi. Agar teen(03) ki ginti par rukoge to range hogi 300 gaz. Agar dhamaka sunne se pahle 8 tak gin liya hai to range 800 gaz hogi.
5. **Shuru shuru mein ek jawan ko sahi ginti ginne ki raftar nahin aati.** Yeh abhyas se ati hai. Iske abhyas ke liye malum duri se fire karo aur ginti ginne ka abhyas karo. (Student butt mein gallery ke andar) Jab aap correct speed se count karenge to 5 sec mein 10 tak do bar ginti kar sakoge. (Jab 10 se jyada ginti karte hain to 10 ke bad dubara ginti karen, kyon ki 11, 12, 13 ginne mein timing kharab ho jati hai). Sahi ginti ginne ke liye yadi raftar dheemi karni pade to dheemi karo aur agar badhani pade to badhao. Achha abhyas kar lene par ankh se dekh kar duri aankne ke bajaye is tarike se jyada duri aank sakte hain. Raat mein to yeh tarika bahut hi kaam aata hai.
6. **Bearing ka tarika.**
   1. Jis point ka distance nikalna hai uska compass se bearing nikalo. Bearing ko note karo aur jis jagah se bearing liya hai use mark karo.

* 1. Ab dayen ya bayen target se 3 baje ya 9 baje ki line mein utna chalo ki bearing mein 5 degree ka farq aa jaye. Jagah ko mark karo. Pahle nishan aur dusare nishan ke beech mein duri ko mtr mein naapo. Jitni bhi duri aati hai usko 11.4 se guna karo. Jo bhi yog aata hai woh distance hoga.

**Fasle Ka Anuman Lagate Samay Mafi Galti**

1. Duri napne ke abhyas mein jyada galti ki gunzaaish nahin hai. Duri ankne mein galti hone par nimnlikhit gunzaaish (+ ya - ) ho sakti hai:-
   1. 300 gaz tak ki duri ke liye sahi duri se 10% kam ya zyada. udaharan ke liye agar koi lakshya 300 gaz par hai to uske liye 30 gaz kam ya zyada ki galti maaf hai.
   2. 300 gaz se adhik duri ke liye sahi duri se 15% kam ya jyada.
2. Waise to fasle ka anuman lagana kaafi aasan hota hai lekin jab iska abhyas kiya jata hai to kaafi mushkilein pesh aati hain. Iska abhyas karte samay un sab baton ko dhyan mein rakhna chahiye jo anumaan lagate samay asar dalti hain. Iska us samay tak abhyas dena chahiye jab tak anuman lagane wale mafi galti ke andar nahin pahunch jate.
3. Lakshya malum karne ke bad use kargar tarike se barbad karna padta hai. Is liye lakshya ka pata chalte hi apne kisi saathi ya commander ko batana aniwarya hai. Isi ke liye "Target indication aur Fire Control Orders" ke bare mein jankari hona zaruri hai jo ki agle lesson ka hissa hai.

**CHAPTER – 2**

**CAMOUFLAGE AUR CONCEALMENT**

**Infantry Training Volume -1 Infantry Platoon Weapons Pamphlet No 2 Field Craft (All Arms) 2007**

**Camouflage**

1. Camouflage ke dwara hum dushman ko do tarike se dhoka de sakte hain:-
   1. Apne troops, harkat aur equipment ko chupao mein rakh kar.
   2. Apne troops, harkat aur equipment ka galat ahsas dekar.
2. Target ko barbad karne ke liye dushman ki sahi location ka pata hona zaruri hai. Camouflage ke zariye hum dushman ki is karwai ko nakara kar sakte hain. Is ke liye ek jawan ko apne dimag ka istemal karte hue dushman ko dhoka dena aana chahiye.
3. **Chizen Nazar aane ke karan.** 
   1. Shadow (Saya).
   2. Shine (Chamak).
   3. Surface (star).
   4. Silhouette (Khakha).
   5. Shape (Shakal).
   6. Spacing (Fasla).
   7. Movement (Harkat).

**Camouflage ke Sidhant aur Tarika**

1. Camouflage ke teen buniyadi siddhant hai:-
   1. **Ilake ke chunao.** Chunao ke liye sabse behtar ilaka woh hai jahan par vastu apne aas-paas ke ilake se milte julte hon. Ismein dhyan mein rakhne wali baat yeh hai ki, jagah itni badi honi chahiye jahan par chhupne wali vastu ya harkat ko chhupaav mil saken.
   2. **Camouflage Discipline.** Us equipment ya vastu ke aas-paas koi harkat na hon. Din ke samay dushman harkat, smoke, tracks aur mitti ko dekh kar jagah ka pata laga sakta hai, aur raat ke samay use roshni aur awaz ke zariye position ka pata lag sakta hai.
   3. **Ilake ki Banawat.** Agar ilaka puri tarah se chhupaav na de raha ho to wahan par prakirtik vastu jaise ped-paudhe ya kritrim vastu jaise garnish ityadi ka istemal kiya ja sakta hai taaki yeh paas ke ilake se mil sake.

**Camouflage Ke Tarike**

1. Camouflage karne ke teen tarike hai:-
   1. **Chhupav Se.** Is tarike se ek vastu puri tarah se chhup jati hai aur dushman usko nahin dekh sakta.
   2. **Ilake ke mutabik Chhupav dena.** Is tarike se hum ek vastu ke upar ya aas paas ke ilake ko camouflage karte hain. Jis se lage ki yeh usi ilake ka hi ek hissa hai.
   3. **Dhoka Dena.** Is tarike mein hum ek ilake mein harkat ya ek fauji vastu ka aakaar dikha kar dushman ko dhoka dete hain, Jis se usko lage ki yeh karwai asal ki hai. Parantu iska istemal dushman ko dhoka dene ke liye hai.
2. **Personal Camouflage.** Morche se badan ke jo hisse jawan ki position ko zahir kar rahe hon unka camouflage karna chahiye.
   1. **Steel Helmet.** Iska chamak aur shakal position ko jahir karta hai. Iski chamak ko dur karne ke liye 1½’ x 1½’ ka bori ka tukra lagao aur camouflage net shakal bigaadne ke liye 5"x2" ke garnish ke tukde betartibi se lagao.
   2. **Chehra (face).**Face cream/ blanco ka istemal.
   3. **Dress.** Ilake ke mutabik pahne.
   4. **Boot.** Dabi ya chikni mitti se chamak ko dur karna.
   5. **Equipment.** Equipment ko camouflage.
   6. **Hathiyar.**
   7. **Morcha.**
   8. **Camouflage net.**
   9. Khudi mitti.

(ii) Ilake ke mutabik.

1. **Concealment.** Iska arth hai kisi bhi vastu ke pichhe ya nichhe chupao. Camouflage mein to apne aap ko ya equipment ko ilake ke mutabik banaya jata hai jabki, concealment mein kisi aarh ke peeche chupao se karwai ki jaati hai.
2. **Tartib.** 
   1. Dabi zamin ka istemal.
   2. Ped ya jhari ka istemal.
   3. Building ya deewar ka istemal.
   4. Trench bana kar.
3. **Dhyan Rakhne Wali Baten.** 
   1. Aarh ke side se dekhen, upar se nahi.
   2. Satah ko na todein.
   3. Khaas kar ilake mein harkat na karein.
   4. Dabi zamin ka istemal karein.
4. Ek Section commander ya Platoon commander hone ke naate camouflage ke mahatav ke bare mein jankari hona bahut hi jaruri hai. Aap ko yeh yaad rakhna chahiye jo dushman dekh sakta hai wah usi par kaargar fire dalkar barbad kar sakta hai.

**CHAPTER – 3**

**ZAMINI NISHAN KA BAYAN AUR PAHCHAN**

**Ref - Inf Trg Volume –IV Platoon Tactics (2007)**

1. **Paribhashayen.** 
   1. **Madad ka nishan.** Pahle se muqarar kiye hue woh nishan jinki madad se kisi dusre nishan ya target ka bayan kiya jata hai. Yeh baki nishanon ke banispat zyada mashoor hona chahiye.
   2. **Zamini nishan.** Yeh woh pahchan mein ane wale nishan hain, jinko commander zabani hukam mein istemal karta hai.
   3. **Target.** Woh nishan jahan par kisi hathiyar ka fire giraya jata hai ya fire ke liye muqarrar kiya jata hai.
2. **Zamini Nishan Dene ki Tartib.**
   1. **Group.** Jis tukri ko zamini nishan dikhana hai uska dhyan akarshit karne ke liye e.g. class, section, LMG group, ‘O’ group.
   2. **Range.**  Apni jagah se zamini nishan ka range gaz mein kam se kam 50 gaz tak banta jaye.
   3. **Aid (Madad).** Zamini nishan ka bayan karne ke liye jis tarike ki madad li jaye. Jab disha ka prayog kiya jaye to range disha ke baad diye jata hai.
   4. **Description.** Zamini nishan ka bayan taki dekhnewalon ko woh samajh aa jaye e.g. *“LMG group samne dekh, 500, gaon ke bayen kinare par ek bara gol ped, jiske patte gahre hare rang ke hain aur uske dahine ek safed makan hai, naam gol ped”*.
3. Zamini nishan dikhane ke liye sabse sidha aur sadharan tarika jisse nishan jald se jald bataya ja sake, ka proyog karna chahiye. Zamini nishan dikhane ke alag alag tarike niche likhe gaye hain.

**The Direct Method (Sidha Tarika)**

1. Yeh sabse sadharan aur achha tarika hai. Ismein disha ke alawa aur kisi madad ka sahyog nahin liya jata hai aur ye sabse asan zamini nishan dikhane mein kaam aata hai.

**The Direction Method (Disha ka Tarika)**

1. Is tarike mein zamini nishan ki disha dee jati hai:-

(a) Aam rukh.

* 1. Madad ka nishan.
  2. Zamini nishan.

1. Yadi bataya na gaya ho to sabhi disha aam rukh se hi maani jati hai. Niche likhi dishaon ka hi prayog kiya jayega :-
   1. Thoda baen ya dahine : Takriban 10 degree.
   2. Ek chouthai baen ya dahine : Takriban 22 degree.
   3. Adha baen ya dahine : Takriban 45 degree.
   4. Teen chouthai baen ya dahine : Takriban 67 degree.
   5. Pura baen ya dahine : Takriban 90 degree.
2. Aam rukh dete samay dhyan mein rakhne wali batein niche likhi hui hain:-
   1. Ek mashoor zamini nishan ho.
   2. Far distance mein ho aur yadi ho sake to sky line par ho.
   3. Yadi chaurai mein ek degree se zyada ho to uska kinara diya jaye.
   4. Din aur raat ke samay pehchana ja sake.

**Reference Point Method (Madad ke Nishan ka Tarika)**

1. Yeh tarika tab istemal kiya jata hai jab seedhe tarike se nishan dikhaya na ja sake. Is tarike mein nishan ki disha kisi aur zamini nishan ya madad ki nishan se dete hain. Yeh pahle se hi chuna jata hai aur pahle se hi bataya hota hai. Madad ka nishan chunte waqat dhyan mein rakhne wali batein hai:-
   1. Nishan mashoor ho.
   2. 19 degree ke fasle se adhik dur na ho (Do madad ke nishan).
   3. Nishan bayen se dahine ko chuna jayen.
   4. Faile hue nishan ka kinara batayein (1 degree se zyada ho tab).
   5. Madad ke nishan ke naam pahle se muqarrar kiye gaye hon.
   6. Kitne nishan chune jayenge who zimmewari ke ilake ki chaudai par nirbhar karega. Nishan alag alag prakar ke chune jayein.

**The Clock Ray Method (Ghari ka Tarika)**

1. Yeh tarika madad ke nishan ke tarike ke saath istemal kiya jata hai. Ghari ke beech wale hisse ko us nishan par rakho jisse aap madad ke nishan ke taur par istemal kar rahe ho. Ghari ke jitne baje agla nishan parta hai woh diya jaye. Is tarike ko istemal karte samay kuchh dhyan mein rakhne wali baaten is prakar hain:-
   1. Ghari ke 6 baje ka rukh apni taraf hota hai.
   2. Gahri ke baje batane se pahle baen ya dahine ka prayog kiya jaye.
   3. 6 aur 12 baje ke liye niche aur upar ka prayog kiya jaye.
   4. Briefing sun ne waali tukri nazdik ho taaki ghari ki suyion ka theek anuman laga saken.
   5. Unchi zamin se niche dekhna ho toh ghari zamin ke saath samtal ho.
   6. Nichi zamin se unchi zamin dekh raha ho toh ghari khare rukh mein ho.

**The Degree Method (Degree ka Tarika)**

1. Agar ghari ke samay ke rukh mein ek hi tarike ke zyada nishan hon tab target ko zaahir karne ke liye ghari ke saath degree ka bhi istemal kiya jaata hai. Degree ko naapne ke liye hamare paas niche likhe saadhan hain:-
   1. Baen hath se - 1,3,5,8,12 aur 19 degree.
   2. Durbeen se - 4 degree tak.
   3. Rifle ki foresight, foresight protector aur backsight leaf se 3 degree tak.
   4. LMG foresight protector - 2 degree tak.

**Check back**

1. Yeh yakin karne ke liye ki koi mushkil zamini nishan jo bataya gaya ho use sab jawanon ne samajh liya hai commander use check back karwa sakta hai. Iske liye woh check back shabd ka prayog karta hai. Jo aadmi ‘check back’ kar raha hai woh diye hue zamini nishan se koi aur zamini nishan ka bayan karta hai.
2. Mushkil zamini nishan dikhane ke bad commander "seen" poochh sakta hai. Jise nishan samajh aa gaya ho woh chup rahenge aur jinhon ne nahin dekha hai woh "not seen" ka prayog karenge.

**Charon TarafZamini Nishan Dene ka Tartib**

1. Yeh is tarteeb mein diya jaye:-
   1. Sabse pahle aam rukh.
   2. Phir ghari ke sidhe rukh sabhi zamini nishan diye jayen jo dikhai de rahe hon.
   3. Waapis aam rukh.
   4. Zamini nishanon ko dohraya jaye.
   5. Aakhir mein jo zamini nishan dikhai na de rahe hon unhein bataya jaye.

**Auto Hathiyaron ke Zimmewari ke ilake ko Batane ki Tartib**

1. Ise is tartib mein bataya jaye:-
   1. Aam rukh.
   2. Bayen hadd aur dahine hadd.
   3. Madad ke nishan (Zimmewari ke ilake mein).
   4. Primary Arc, secondary arc aur fixed line.
   5. Fire kholne ki hadd din mein aur raat mein.

**Zamini Nishan Dete Samay Dhyan mein Rakhne Wali Batein**

15. Yeh nimnlikhit hai:-

1. Bayan chhota, saada aur saaf ho.
2. Kathin nishan sabhi tarikon ki madad se.
3. Disha hamesha aam rukh se di jaye.
4. Diye gaye hadon mein zamini nishan bayen se dahine bayan karne chahiye.
5. Commander dwara diye gaye nishan ka naam badali nahin karna chahiye. (f) Jo zamini nishan dikhai na deta ho use aakhir mein bayan karein.
6. Agar zamine nishan ka failao ek (1) degree se zyada hai to phir uska koi kinara diya jaye.
7. Unhi zamini nishanon ka bayan karein jo aap ke zabani hukam se sambandh rakhte hon. Pahle apne zabani hukam taiyar karein aur phir uske mutaabik zamini nishan chunein.

**CHAPTER – 4**

**SECTION AUR PLATOON FORMATIONS**

**GS pamphlet, Inf trg vol IV, Sec leading and Pl tac 2007.**

**Basic Consideration (Zaruri Baten)**

1. Section aur Platoon formation ko akhtiyar karte samay dhiyan mein rakhne wali batein :-
   1. Zamin.
   2. Task.
   3. Location aur dushman se muthbher ka andesha.
   4. Disha aur dushman ke fire ka prakar.
   5. Suraksha ki awashyakta.
   6. Command aur control.
   7. Jaldi se jaldi adhik se adhik fire dalne ki kabiliyat.
2. Support Group ko jahan tak ho sake open flank mein rakhna chaiye. Jawanon ke beech mein fasla kam se kam panch (5 mtr) hona chahiye. Aam taur par jawanon mein yeh aadat hoti hai ki fire aane par woh ikathha ho jate hain jisko nahin kiya jana chahiye. Groups mein duri aur individual ke beech ke duri zamin, samay chhupav jaise chizon par nirbhar karti hai.

**Section and Platoon Formations**

1. Section aur platoon formation nimn hain:-
   1. Single file.
   2. File.
   3. Arrow head.
   4. Diamond.
   5. Spear head.
   6. Extended line.
2. Faide/nuqsan aur zamin ke prakar jisme alag-alag formations ko akhtiyar kia jata hai, niche diye gaye hain.
3. Yeh buniyadi section formation hai aur har ek formation main LMG aur Rifle group ki jagah bataana Section Commander ki jimmewari hai. Ye group ke beech darmiyani fasla kam ya jyada kar sakte hai. Rifle group ko do (2) hisson mein bhi baant sakte hain.

**Platoon Formations**

1. Platoon formations khaas taur par control ki zarurat aur Platoon commander apni platoon ko action mein kitni nafri ki jarurat par sakti hai, is baat par nirbhar karta hai. Yeh bhi gaur se dekhna hoga ki kis tarah se Platoon commander apne platoon ko Artyfire, hawai fire aur Mortar fire se bachata hai. Iske liye failav ki awashyakta hogi, parantu zyada failav se command aur control par kharab asar padega. Platoon formations is prakar hain:-

* 1. One up.
  2. Two up.
  3. Three up ya assault formation.

1. Nimnlikhit formations ko vistarpurvak bataya gaya hai:-
   1. **One up.**
      1. Jarurat. Is formation ko tab akhtiyar karte hain jab Platoon ko dushman ke loc malum na ho aur jab Platoon commander chahta hai ki uske paas mein zyada se zyada Platoon ka hissa rahe.
      2. Deployment ki suvidha. Is formation mein yeh khas suvidha hoti hai ki Platoon Commander ke pass zyada se zyada jawan hote hain jinka istemal woh zarurat parne par kar sakta hai. Jab dushman ki location ka pata chal jata hai.
   2. **Two up.**
      1. Jarurat. Jab platoon ne ek bara ilaqa ya chaura ilaka cover karna ho, ya phir attack ke dauran.
      2. Deployment ki suwidha. ‘Two up' formation ‘One up' formation ke thik vipreet hoti hai. Is mein 02 section aage lead kar rahe hote hain aur ek section pichhe hota hai. Thora badlav zarurat ke mutabik kiya ja sakta hai.
   3. **Assault Formations.** 
      1. Jarurat. Iska istemal us samay kiya jata hai jab Platoon Commander chahta hai ki zyada se zyada bayonet strength dushman ki location par ek saath pahunche.
      2. Deployment ki suvidha. Assault ke dauran formation akhtiyar karne, frontage aur objective ki gahrai (depth) par nirbhar karegi.

* 1. **Single File.**  Jab Platoon ka rod/trenches se hokar gujrna ho tab aam taur par section ek ke piche ek hogi. Dhyan rahe ki section ke beech mein gap ho. Platoon headquarters ki location aam taur par No ek section ke pichhe hogi.

1. Ek Platoon agar ek achhe aur dridh nishchay waale Platoon commander ke nichhe kam karta hai aur agar uske NCOs apne kam ke prati ruchi rakhte hain toh koi wajah nahi hai ki platoon apne har task mein kamyabi haasil na kare. Ek platoon mein kaafi fire karne ki kshamta hoti hai aur uska faida tabhi uthaya ja sakta hai jab har ek jawan zamin, cover ka sahi istemal aur anya minor tactics ki sikhlai ko amal mein laye.
2. **Single File Formation.**

RFN-1

RFN-2

**LINE OF ADV**

SECTION COMMANDER

RFN-3

RFN-4

RL-1

RL-2

SECTION 2IC

LMG 1

LMG 2

1. **File Formation.**

RFN-1

RFN-2

SECTION COMMANDER

**LINE OF ADV**

RFN 3

RFN 4

SECTION 2IC

RL 1

LMG 1

RL 2

LMG 2

1. **Diamond Formation.**

RFN-1

RFN-2

**LINE OF ADV**

SECTION COMMANDER

RFN 3 RFN 4

RL 1 LMG 1

RL 2 LMG 2

SECTION 2IC

1. **Spearhead Formation.**

RFN-1

**LINE OF ADV**

RFN-2

SECTION COMMANDER

RFN 3 RFN 4

RL 1

RL2

SECTION 2IC

LMG 1

LMG 2

1. **Arrow head Formation.**

RFN-1

RFN-2

SECTION COMMANDER

**LINE OF ADV**

RL 1 RFN 3

RL2 SECTION 2IC

RFN 4 LMG 1

LMG 2

1. **Extended Line Formation.**

|  |
| --- |
| **RFN-1**  **RFN-2**  **RL-2**  **RL-1**  **SEC CDR**  **LINE OF ADV**  **RFN-3**  **SEC2IC**  **LMG-1**  **LMG-2**  **RFN**-4 |

**CHAPTER – 5**

**STALKING**

# (a) Inf Trg V-I Inf Platoon Weapons Pamphlet No-2 Field Craft (All Arms) 2007

**(b) Inf Trg Volume –iv Platoon Tactics (2007) Platoon Tactics (2007)**

1. **Ghat Lagane ki Tajwiz.**Stalking ki tajwiz banate samay ek stalker ko chand ek baton ka khyal karna chahiye.
   1. **Dekhbhal.** Stalking shuru karne se pahle ilake ki achchhi tarah dekhbhal karna chahiye aur niche likhe baton ka khyal rakhna chahiye.
      1. **Dushman ki position.**  Dushman ki position ko madad ke nishano se yaad rakho.
      2. **Dushman ki Dusri Position.** Ho sakta hai ki stalk karne wali position ke alawa dushman ki aur bhi position us ilake mein ho toh uske bare mein pata hona chahiye.
      3. **Akhiri fire position.** Dushman ke nazdik se nazdik akhiri fire position ka chunav. Jahan se dushman ka position theek nazar aaye aur us par kargar fire dala ja sake. Isko madad ke nishan se yaad rakho.
   2. **Rasta.** Hawai photo, map ya zamin ki banawat ke lihaz se madad lete hue rasta chuno. Rasta chunte waqt chand ek baaton ka khyal rakho.
      1. **Time.**Raste ka chunav karte samay ek stalker ko yeh sochna chahiye ki mere paas waqt kitna hai.
      2. **Dabi hue Zamin.**Rasta dabi zamin mein chuna jaye taaki dushman ki nazar aur fire donon se bachav mil sake aur khud dekhbhal bhi kar saken.
      3. **Fire Position.** Raaste mein fire position chunana chahiye taaki zarurat padne par jaldi dushman par fire daal sakein.
      4. **Bounds.** Chune hue raaste mein bounds ka hona bahut zaruri hai. Bounds yani aisi jagah jahan par stalker observation yani dekhbhal karne ke liye taiyar ho aur zarurat padne par dushman ke upar waar bhi kar sake.
      5. **Rukawat.**Raste mein koi rukawat na ho yadi ho to use paar karne ka bandobast kar lena chahiye.
      6. **Dusra Rasta.** Aisa dusra rasta hona chahiye jo zarurat padne par kam mein laya ja sake.
2. **Stalking ke liye Zaruri Baten.**
   1. **Chaukannapan.**Stalking karne wale jawan ki galti ka natija uski maut se milta hai. Isliye stalker ko hamesha chaukanna aur hoshiyar rahna chahiye.
   2. **Pahal Karna.** Agar dushman achanak nazar aa jaye to hamesha pahle us par fire kiya jaye aur munasib karwai ki jaye ya usi jagah chhup jaye aur waqt milne par nazdik achhi position mein harkat ki jaye.
   3. **Dushman ko Dhoka do.** Dhoka dene ki tajweez pahle se bani hui ho. Muktalif awazon se bhi dushman ko dhoka de sakte hain.
   4. **Zamin ka Faida.** Jahan par chal kar ja sakte hain wahan reng kar mat jao, aise karne se waqt aur taqat dono barbad hote hain.
   5. **Janwaron aur Parindo se Bacho.** Unki harkat aur awazon se dushman ko stalker ki maujudgi ka shak par sakta hai.
   6. **Dushman ke Nazdik Jana.** Dushman ke itna nazdik jao jitna zaruri hai. Itna nazdik jao ki dushman ko dekhkar munasib karwai ki ja sake lekin khud dushman ko dikhai na do.
   7. **Fire ki Tartib.** Fire bahut soch samajhkar aur sabra se karna chahiye. Stalking ki karwai pura karne ke baad agar goli theek nishane par na lage to tamam karwai bekar hai aur stalker khud dushman ka shikaar ban sakta hai.
      1. Ek position se ek ya do rds se zyada fire na karen.
      2. Re-load ki karwai ahista se karen.
      3. Yadi dubara fire karna ho to dusri position pahle se chun kar rakho.

**Chaalen**

1. **Khali Haath Chaalein.**
   1. **Bhoot Chaal.**  Yeh chaal gahri andheri raat mein us samay istemal kiya jata hai jab aage kuch bhi dikhai na de, ismen donon haath ilake ko ishare se mahsoos karte hain. Chalte samay arh ka istemal karte hue paon ko zamin mein bithaya jaye. Agar hathiyar carry kiya ja raha ho to siling arm position hona chahiye.
   2. **Bandar Chal.** Donon haath aur ghutne ko zamin ke saath lagao. Chalne ke liye jo haath aage aata hai wahi ghutna aage jayega. Dahine- baen ko dekhte huye aage badho. Is chaal ka 3' tak ki arh ke pichhe istemal kiya jata hai.

* 1. **Billi Chal.** Dono ghutnon ke bal seat ke upar baith jao. Dono hatheli zamin ke saath aage badhne ke liye jo haath aage jata hai wohi ghutna aage jana chahiye. Yeh harkat ahista aur dushman ke nazdik pahunchne par ki jati hai. Ruk- ruk kar ek bar dahina hath ek bar baen hath uske saath ghutna bhi aage kiya jaye.

* 1. **Cheetah Chal I.** Dushman ke nazdik 1' ya 2' ka arh ho to cheetah chal ka istemal kiya jata hai. Chhaati ke bal zamin ke saath lete hue kohni aur hatheli ke bal bayen hath ko aage karo, bayen paon ki madad se dahine paon ko aage karo.
  2. **Cheetah Chal II*.*** Dono hath aur paon ki madad se sharir ko aage badhao. Dushman ke ekdam nazdik dhire harkat karne ki zarurat parne par ya fir 1' ki arh ho us samay istemal kiya jata hai.
  3. **Ludhakane ki Chal.** Sky line par ya dhalaandar jagah par harkat karne ki zarurat pare to istemal kiya jata hai. Dono hath taang ke bich mein ho.

1. **Rifle ke Saath Harkat.**
   1. **Shikari Position.** Is position ke dauran dahine hath pistol grip par rifle kandhe mein, mag aasman ki taraf.
   2. **Dhawa Position.** Bayan hath fore hand guard par dahina hath pistol grip par hona chahiye. Dushman ke saath lagao ho jaye to us samay yeh position istemal kiya jata hai.
   3. **Alert Position.** Bayen haath niche ho dahina hath pistol grip par, agar sling lagai ho to kandhe par dali ja sakti hai.
   4. **Bandar Chal.**Rifle dahine hath mein carrying handle se pakra hona chahiye, sling adhik lambi na ho ek hi hath zamin mein lagayen.
   5. **Cheetah Chal No I.** Baen hath fore hand guard par dahina hath small of the butt par kohni aur taang ki madad se aage badhna chahiye.
   6. **Cheetah Chal No II.** Rifle Cheetah chal No I ki tarah kohni aur toe ki madad se body ko aage dhakele jaye.
   7. **Rolling Ya Ludhakna.** Yeh chal ham sky line par istemal karte hain, aur usmen rifle dono ghutno ke bich mein dabi ho.
2. **LMG ke Saath Chalen.**
   1. **Knee Crawl.** Kamar tak ki arh ho ya kisi diwar ya bandh ke pichhe harkat karne ki zarurat ho us samay istemal kiya jata hai.

* + 1. **Tariqa.** Kneeling position mein baith jao. LMG ko carrying handle se pakare saath hi angootha dahine ghutne ke saath lagna chahiye.
  1. **Side Crawl.** Kisi bhi pahlu ke bal let jao. LMG ko carrying handle se pakra ho aur dusre hath se flash hider ko pakra ho. Jis pahlu ke bal lete ho usi taang par LMG ko rakho aur mag andar ki taraf, erion ki takat se age barho.
  2. **Cheetah Chal No:I.** Bipod fold, mag age ki taraf, Rifle ki tarah kiya jaye.
  3. **Cheetah Chal No II.** Dono hathon se LMG ko pakro kohini aur toe ki madad se sharir ko aage dhakelo.
  4. **Cheetah Chal Bound Ke Tarike Se.** No I aur No II ikathe Harkat karenge. No I pistol grip pakrega No II bipod ke pas pakrega bipod band hua dahine hath se barrel aage ki taraf hona chahiye. No I up bolega , ek hi bar LMG aage lejayenge,dubara No I aur No II ki body aage jaigi ismen LMG ready rakhte hain.

1. Stalking ek jawan ki sikhalai ka bahut zaruri hissa hai, iska abhyas har qism ki zamin par hona chahiye. Yeh kaam chand ek shabdon mein pura nahi ho sakta balki is hunar mein mahir hone ke liye kafi abhyas aur tajurbe ki zarurat hai. Islie jawan ko stalking ki karwai ko pura karne ke liye alag alag chalon mein mahir hona chahiye taki woh ek achha stalker ban sake.

**CHAPTER – 6**

**RANGE CARD BANANA**

**Paribhashayein**

1. Is lecture ke dauran kaam ane wali paribhashayein is prakar se hai:-
   1. **Aam Rukh.** Dur ek mashur nishan, jo ki samanewale zimmewari ke ilaqe ko (General line of direction) do barabar bhagon mein banta hai use aam rukh kehte hain.
   2. **Setting Ray.** Defence position ke aghe aur piche woh do mashoor nishan jo ki range card ko set karne ke kaam aate hain usse setting ray kehte hain.
   3. **Fixed Line.** Primary arc mein chuni gai woh fire ki line jis par raat ya kharab mausam mein LMG ko fix kiya jata hai. Is line par dushman ke ane ka andesha hota hai.
   4. **Arc of Fire.** Kisi bhi hathiyar ya fire unit ka woh ilaka jisme aane wale target ko engage karna us hathiyar ya fire unit ki jimmewari hoti hai.
   5. **Primary Arc of Fire.**  Yeh arc hathiyar ya fire unit ki pehli jimmewari hoti hai. Yahan se dushman aane ka jyada andhesha hota hai. Hathiyar ka fixed line bhi primary arc ke andar hota hai.
   6. **Secondary Arc.** Yeh arc hathiyar ya fire unit ki dusri jimmewari hoti hai, is area mein tabhi fire kiya jayega jab hathiyar ya fire unit primary arc mein fire na kar raha ho.
   7. **Madad ka Nishan.** Yeh woh nishan hota hai jis ki madad se tgt ka bayan kiya jata hai use madad ka nishan kha jata hai.

**Range Card banate samay zaruri batein aur iske faide**

1. **Zaruri batein.** 
   1. Range card sahi jagah se banaya jaye (firing position se).
   2. Range sahi napa hona chahiye.
   3. Aam rukh aur setting ray ko moti rekha se banaye.
   4. Zamin par nishan nazar ane chahiye aur alag-alag range par hon aur ek hi naam ke na ho.
   5. Zamini nishan ka conventional sign banao.
   6. Fixed line ke liye gahre rang se line khincho.
   7. Primary aur secondary arc over lap honi chaye.
   8. Dahine aur bayein had ka dusre morche se safety angle hona chahiye.
2. **Range Card Banane ke faide.** 
   1. Range card se pure zemmewari ke ilaqe ke bare mein tafsil se jankari mil jati hai.
   2. Madad ke nishnon se aas pass ke nishnon ka sahi range milta hai.
   3. Tgt par sahi aur kargar fire dala ja sakta hai.
   4. Det ki badli hone par (unit ke andar) ya nayi unit position take over karte waqt bhi yeh bahut madad deta hai.
   5. Agar kisi karan se handing/ taking over thik na ho sake tab bhi range card ki madad se naye det ko apne ilaqe aur task ke bare mein puri jankari mil sakti hai.
   6. Kisi Commander/ VIP ko brief karte samay bhi range card madad deta hai. (g) Range card ki jankari hone ke bad det asani se dushman ko barbad kar sakta hai.

**Range Card Banane ka Tariqa**

1. Defence mein rahte hue hame charon taraf ka bachav karna parta hai. Is liye zaruri hai ki charon taraf ka bachao haasil karne ke liye charon taraf ke nishano ka range card banaya jaye. Range card banate samay tafsil se task aur zimmewari ke ilaqe ka soch vichar kiya jaye. Har ek mukhya hathiyar ke har ek position ke liye range card banaya jaye.
   1. Sab se pahle range card ka khaka banao.
   2. Samne aur dur ek mashur nishan chuno jo ki is position ka general line of direction (GLD) ya aam rukh hoga. Is nishan ko range card mein darz karo.
   3. Do setting ray banayein (Ek age aur ek pichhe). Is ke liye do mashur nishan chune. Apne position se in nishanon ka compass se bearing le aur ise range card mein darz karen. Setting ray chunne ka yeh faida hai ki is ki madad se ham ek range card ko zamin par set ya orient kar sakte hain.
   4. Us ke bad position ki bayein had aur dahine had chuno aur inhen range card mein shamil karo.
   5. Apne ilaqe mein do ya teen madad ke nishan banton jo ki tgt ko dikhane ke kaam ayenge. Madad ke nishan chunte samay dhyan mein rakhne wali baten :-
      1. 1 dusre se 19 degree se bahar ho.
      2. 1 degree se bada ho to ek kinara chuna jaye.
      3. Har ek ko naam diya jaye.
      4. Ek hi naam ke na ho.
      5. Itne chune jaye ki pure zimmewari ke ilaqe ko cover kar sake (indication of land marks ke liye).
      6. Alag Alag range par ho.
      7. Nishan baki nishano se mashoor ho.
   6. Apke zimmewari ke ilaqe ko primary arc aur secondary arc mein banto, dhyan rahe ke in donon ke beech mein overlap ho. Is ke liye zimmewari ke ilaqe ke beech mein ek nishan chuno aur is ilaqe ko do bhagon mein bant do. (g) Primary arc ke beech mein fixed line chuno, yeh ek mashur nishan hona chahiye, is par fixed line likho aur range bhi likho. Fixed line chunte samay dhyan mein rakhne wali batein :-
      1. Field of fire saf ho.
      2. Dushman ke mumkin ane wale raste par chuni jaye.
      3. Primary arc ke andar ho.
      4. Range jyada se jyada 700 m tak ho.
      5. Sighton ke upar sahi range lagaya jaye.
      6. Din ke samay lagai jaye.
      7. Fire plunging na ho.

(h) Akhir mein range card banana ki jagah, range card banane wale ka naam, fasla napne ka tarika, date aur mausam likho. Dahine taraf apna No, Rank, Name aur unit likho.

**Range Card ka Istemal aur Abhiyas**

1. Range card ko istemal karne ka tarika, is parkar hai:-
   1. Range card ko setting ray ka saath zamin par set karo.
   2. Range card set ho jane ke bad nishanon ko milao taki dekhane wala asani se pehchan sake.
   3. Range card ke nishnon ko ghari ke sidhe rukh padhna chahiye.
   4. Class range card banane ka abhyas kare.
2. Range card banana aap seekh chuke hain lekin dhyan rahe ki Range Card banate samay khas baaton ka dhyan rakha jaye tabhi aap sahi Range Card bana kar apne defensive position ka sahi istemal kar ke dushman ko barbad kar sakte hai. Ek Infantry ke jawan ko apni defensive position ko majbhut banaye rakhane ke liye Range Card banana, us ka istemal aur is se defence ke bare mein jankari haasil karna aane chahiye, taki apne defensive position ka sahi istemal kar ke dushman ko barbad kar sake. Aap ko Section Commander hone ke nate Range Card banana aur istemal karna aana chahiye.



PLACE :

PREPARED BY :

DISTANCE MEASURED BY :

DATE :

WEATHER :

ARMY NO :

RANK :

NAME :

UNIT :

**CHAPTER – 7**

**FIRE DISCIPLINE AUR FIRE CONTROL ORDERS**

**(a) GS pamphlet, Inf trg vol IV, Sec leading and Pl tac 2007.**

**(b) GS pamphlet, Inf trg vol I, Inf Pl wpns pamphlet no 2, Field Craft.**

1. **Paribhashayen.** 
   1. **Fire Unit.** Woh hathiyar band toli, jo ek commander ke hukam ke nichhe fire karti hai, jaise ki ek section.
   2. **Fire Unit Commander.** Jo ohededar fire unit ke fire par hukam ya ishare dwara control karta hai use fire unit commander kahte hain. Jaise ki ek Section commander.
   3. **Fire Control Orders.** Woh hukam jo ek fire unit commander, target par fire karwane aur usparr kabu rakhne ke liye fire unit ko deta hai.
   4. **Fire Direction Orders.** Yeh wo hukam hain jo ki ek Fire unit commander apne se unche darje ke commander se leta hai, Ismen fire ki tadad, target par fire kab khola jayega, ityadi ke hukam diye jate hai. Section commander, Platoon commander se Fire Directions Order leta hai. udhaharan, Platoon commander ke Fire direction order 51mm Mortar det ke liye. ”Mortar det Commander, 50, thoda bayen, spur par jhari, Platoon ka Fire base. Mortar det platoon ko, covering fire dega”.
   5. **Arc of Fire.** Yeh ek sub unit ya hathiyar ka zimmewari ka ilaqa hai jismen ki use target engage karna hota hai. Iska dahina aur bayan had zamini nishan ke dwara bataya jata hai. is Arc of fire, main kuch madad ke nishan chune jate hai.
   6. **Field of Fire.**  Yeh woh ilaqa hai jismen ki hathiyar kargar fire dal sakta hai. Arc of Fire , Field of Fire ka ek hissa hota hai.
2. **Fire Control ke Usul.** 
   1. Fire tabhi karen jab:-
      1. Dushman kargar fire range mein ho.
      2. Surprise kho jaye.
   2. **Asardar Fire.** Dushman/ target ko marne ya barbad karne ke liye, fire kiya jaye, na ki darane ke liye.

(c) Auto hathiyar se burst fire.

(d) Ammunition ki bachat. (Sahi fire discipline)

**Fire Control Orders**

1. Fire Control Orders char prakar ke hote hain:-
   1. **Full Fire Orders.**
      1. Nukta Target Ke liye.
      2. Faile hue Target ke liye.
   2. Taiyari ka Fire Order.
   3. Mauke ka Fire Order.
   4. Achanak ya chota Fire Orders.
2. **Full Fire Orders.**  Yeh Fire Orders tab diye jate hai jab fire unit commander ke paas prayapt samay ho aur target duri par ho. Yeh tafseel mein diye jate hain. Yeh do kism ka hota hai.
   1. **Nukta Target.** Yeh us samay diye jate hai jab ki dushman ek point (nukta) target banta hai. Jaise ki (LMG Group 500, Hulldown tree, dushman ka sniper, ek burst fire.)
   2. **Faila hua Target.** Yeh us samay diye jate hai jab ki dushman ek ilaqa mein faila hua hota hai. Jaise ki, (No 1 Section 300,Tuti futi zamin mein jhari ki piche aur aas-pass ke ilaqe mein dushman ka ek section faila hua hai. LMG Group 2 burst aur Rifle Group, 5-5 round fire.)
3. **Taiyari ka Fire Orders.** Yeh fire control order us samay diye jate hai jab ki dushman kargar range se bahar ho aur apni taraf harkat/ advance kar raha ho, yani hukam dene aur asar mein fire kholne mein samay lagega. Jaise ki (No 1 Section 800, Lal jhari ke ilaqe se dushaman ka ek section hamari taraf advance karta hua. Mar ke ilaqe mein ane par mere hukam se fire hoga). Fire kholne ka initiative commander apne pass rakh sakta hai ya sub unit par chhor sakta hai.Jaise ki mar ke ilaqe mein ane par (LMG Group 2 burst fire, Rifle Group 3 round fire).
4. **Mauke ka Fire Order.** Yeh fire order us samay diya jata hai, jab ki har ek jawan ko apne aap mauke ke mutabik fire karna ho. Jaise ki (No-1 Section, dushman tuti futi zamin mein chhup gaya hai najar ane par fire). Ismen har jawan apni sujh- bhuj aur fire discipline ka khyal rakhte hue dushman par fire karta hai.
5. **Achanak aur Chhota Fire Order.** Yeh fire order us samay diye jata hai jab ki dushman achanak nazdik fasle par nikal kar surprise kar deta hai. Jaise kih (No 1 Section aim down - dahine dushman fire).

**Fire Control Order ki Tartib**

1. Hukam hamesha mukarar ki hui tartib se dena chahiye taki koi baat chhut na jaye aur samjhne mein asani ho. Tartib is prakar hai:-
   1. G - GROUP - Jis unit ya sub unit dwara fire karwana ho.
   2. R - RANGE - Apni jagah se target ka fasla.
   3. I - INDICATION - Target ka bayan.
   4. T - TYPE - Fire ki kism.

**Dhyan Mein Rakhne Wali Baten**

1. **Fire se Pahle.** Fire unit Commander ko fire order dene se pahle nimnlikhit baton ko dhyan mein rakhna chahiye.
   1. Range - Kya dushman hathiyar ki range mein hai?
   2. Surprise - Kya surprise haasil karne ke liye fire ko thori der roka jaye?
   3. Hathiyar - Konse hathiyar se sabse achha natija haasil kar sakta hai?
   4. Rate of Fire - Rapid fire aam taur par in maukon par karwana chahiye?
      1. Jab dushman ko Surprise karna ho.
      2. Assault mein covering fire dete samay.

(e) Fire par Control - Initiative khud ke paas ya sub unit ko de diya jaye.

(f) Zimmewari.

1. **Orders ke Dauran Dhyan mein Rakhne wali Baaten.**
   1. Hukam saf, dhire aur kam lafzon mein de diye jayen.
   2. Awaj itni unchi ho taki saf sunai den.

* + 1. Jab tak surprise barkarar ho to fire control orders ya to dhimi awaj mein ya mukarar hue field/ sound signal se den.
    2. Surprise kho jane par unchi awaj mein order den aur sunne wale jawan hukam dohrain taki sabhi ko malum chal jaye.
  1. Tamam baten hukam ke taur par hon.
  2. Orders mein waqfa hona chahiye taaki jawan uspar saath saath amal kar saken.

1. Fire ke dauran istemal kiye jane wale shabd:-
   1. Stop aur jari kar.
   2. Dahine/ Bayen.
   3. Dhire/ Tez.
   4. Upar/ Niche.

**Attack aur Defence mein Fire Discipline ko Kayam Rakhne Wali Baten**

1. Kathin se kathin paristhion mein bhi hukam ya pahle se mukarar ishare ke bina fire na kholne ko fire discipline kahte hain. Fire discipline kayam rakhne mein nimn baten madad karti hai.
   1. Bagaer hukam ke fire nahin karen. Isse surprise kho jata hai. Fire us samay kholna chahiye jab yeh yakin ho jaye ki dushman ka koi bhi jawan bach nahin sakta.
   2. Fire dushman ko barbad karne ke liye dalna chahiye.
   3. Raat ke samay mein fire karte samay khas dhyan den ki kisi bhi harkati chiz par fire khol diya jaye.

**Defence.**

1. Defence ke dauran Fire Discipline is prakar kayam rakha jata hai.
   1. Hukam saaf ho aur nimn baten shamil hon:-
      1. Arc of fire - Primary aur secondary.
      2. Fixed Line.
      3. Defensive Fire Task.
      4. Fire kholne ki had.
   2. Fire kholne aur band karne ke ishare.
   3. Illumination ka hukam.
   4. Indirect fire ka sahi istemal.
   5. Ammunition ki bant.
   6. Briefing.
2. **Attack.** 
   1. Fire base ke sab hukam - banawat, jagah, fire ki bant aur samay.
   2. Fire kholne aur band karne ka ishara.
   3. Ammunition ki baant.
   4. Indirect fire ka sahi istemal.
   5. Detailed briefing.

**Fire Discipline ko Achha Banaye Rakhne ke liye Dhyan dene Wali Baten**

1. Fire discipline ko aacha banane ke liye nimnlikhit baten dhyan mein rakhni chahiye.
   1. Fire discipline ke usul training mein shamil kiya jaye.
   2. Ek morche mein sabhi naye jawan na ho.
   3. Fire kholne aur band karne ke ishare mukarar hon.
   4. Sentries jodi mein hon.
   5. Bina dekhe fire na karen.
   6. Faltu harkat na karen.
   7. Ilaqe ki jankari sabhi jawanon ko ho.
   8. Kabhi kabhi morche mein commander ko khud jakar fire control karna par sakta hai.
2. Fire discipline aur fire control orders tactics ke buniyadi usulon mein ek hai. Larai ke dauran ammunition, harkat, hathiyar ka sahi istemal aur dushman ko zyada se zyada nuksan tabhi ho sakta hai jab Officers, JCOs aur NCOs fire control orders ka istemal samajhdari se karen.

**CHAPTER -8**

**SCOUTING AUR SECTION BATTLE DRILL**

**Inf Trg Voume – IV (2007) Platoon Tactics**

**Scouting.**

1. **Scout ki Paribhasha.**  Scout woh hota hai jo ki dushman aur aage ke ilaqe ki zaruri jankarian, advance column ke aage chalte hue deta hai.
2. **Scouts ke Harkat.** Scouts hamesha jorion (buddy pairs) mein rahte hue kaam karte hai. Yeh nimn is prakar se harkat karte hain:-
   1. **Advance by Bounds.** Iska tatparya" ek paon zamin par rakhne" se hai. Is tariqe se harkat karte waqt, scouts hamesha pahle se niyukt bounds ki madad se hi aage badhta hai. Jab ek scout harkat kar raha hota hai, to dusra scout uske advance ko cover karne ke liye covering fire deta hai aur pahle bound par pahunchne ke bad pahla scout mukararshuda ishare se dusre scout ko aage ane ka sanket deta hai. Is prakar se advance jari rakhta hai. Is prakar ke advance ke nimnlikhit faide hain:-
      1. Leading scout hamesha fire se cover rahta hai.
      2. Yadi leading scout kisi prakar ki pareshani mein ho to dusra scout section commander tak, bina samay gawaye suchna pahuncha sakta hai.
   2. **Steady Advance.** Is tarike mein dono scouts bina ruke aur lagatar ek hi raftar se section ke aage chalte jate hain. Is prakar se harkat karte hue dono scouts ko nazar aur awaz ke milap mein rahna chahiye. Unke bich ka sahi fasla, zamin ki banawat par nirbhar karega. Tej raftar kayam rakhna, is tarike ka khas faida hai. Yeh lambe advance ke liye, ya jab dushman se lagao ki sambhavna na ho tabhi is tarike se advance karna chahiye.

**Scouts par Niyantran**

1. Ek section commander ko scouts ki harkat par kara niyantran rakhna zaruri hota hai. Yadi use koi taaze aadesh scouts tak dene ho to use scouts ko ishare se rok kar, un tak age badhna chahiye.
2. Savdhani scouts ki sabse bari khubi hoti hai aur scouts ka kam kafi dimagi mehnat ka hota hai. Is liye unhe samay samay par relieve karte rahna chahiye.

**Scouts ka Kaam**

1. Jab bhi fire ata hai to scouts ke yeh kaam hote hain:-
   1. Zamin pakar kar nazdik hi cover haasil karke fire position mein ana.

* 1. Jab tak sectioncommander age nahi pahunchta, scouts ko fire and move dwara, ek dusre ki madad karni chahiye, aur section ya column ki raksha karte rahna chahiye.

* 1. Dushman ki position aur yadi mumkin ho to inki tadad section commander ko batani chahiye. Yadi section commander age scouts ke pas tak nahi aa sakta hai to mukhya khabar field signal dwara bhejni par sakti hai.

* 1. Jab section commander halat par kabu pa leta hai to scouts ka age ka kam section commander ke nirdesh ke mutabik hoga.

**Dekhbhal ki Taknik.**

1. Scouts hamesha jorion mein kam karte hain. Leading scout jo ki age aur bayen hota hai woh apne age aur bayen ke ilake ko dekhbhal karta hai. Dusra scout apne dahine aur age ke ilake ki dekhbhal karta hai. Lekin dono ke area of resposibility mein overlap bhi rahta hai.

**Information Pass Karne ki Taknik.**

1. Aam taur par, scouts field signal ka istemal karte hain. Information (khabar) ko pichhe bhejne ke liye is ko duplicate karna zaruri hai. Short range ke radio set ke dawara. Udaaharan ke liye radio set VPS.

**Section Battle Drills.**

1. Battle Drill woh set drill hoti hai jinko sub units ya sub-sub units level par istemal karte hain aur un aam tactical situation se taluk rakhti hain jinse orders aur time dono ki bachat hoti hai. Yeh chhote tactical halaton ka hal nikalne mein kafi labhdayak sidh hota hain. Inse samay ki bachat hoti hai, karwai tej hoti hai aur koi confusion bhi nahi hota. Section aur Platoon commanders ki sabse bari mushkil wali baat yeh hoti hai ki unhen larai ki akhri stages mein teji aur durusti se chhote tactical halaton se nipatna hota hai. Iska tatparya hai ki jab leading section dushman ke effective fire ke ander aati hain. Yeh atyant awashyak hai ki saral aur lachile battle drills ka izahad kiya jaye, jisse ki junior leaders ko in halaton se nipatne mein asani ho.
2. Kisi bhi battle drill ke yeh khas tatva hote hain:-
   1. Fire and move.
   2. Appreciation (jaiza).
   3. Orders (hukam).

**Fire aur Move.**

1. Section ya Platoon fire aur move mein mukhya vichar-yogya baten is prakar hai:-
   1. Bina covering fire ke, khule ilake mein harkat nahin karni chahiye.
   2. Pure Rifle group ke jawan ek saath harkat nahin karni chahiye.
   3. Section aur Platoon commanders ka control (niyantran).
   4. Covering fire dene ka angle (kon) jitna ho sake utna lamba (Perpendicular) ho aur ise bina samay ya control gawaye ikhtiyar karna chahiye.
   5. Jitna bhi cover available ho uska istemal karo. Aar (cover) na hone par smoke ke istemal par vichar karna chahiye.

**Appreciation (jaiza)**

1. Section commanders ko kai halaton se nipatne ki jarurat par sakti hai lekin phir bhi do mukhya situation is prakar hain:-
   1. **Achanak Khule Mein Dushman se Muthber.** Agar achanak khule mein dushman se muthbher ho jaye to bas ek hi tarika hota hai us halat se nipatne ka aur woh hai golion aur bayonet ke saath dushman par hamla.
   2. **Dushman ke Kargar Fire Dwara Rokne Par.** Agar dushman ke kargar fire ke karan rukna pare to, section commander ko yah faisla karna chahiye:-
      1. Hamle ki disha.
      2. Support group ka sthan.
2. Section Commanders ke faisle aam taur par zamin par nirbhar karega. Waise bhi jab LMG ko ek flank mein lagakar rakha hoga, use dusre flank par le jana muskil hoga, kyonki dushman ka kargar fire upar aa raha hoga. Section Commander ki koshish honi chahiye ki dushman ko fire se hi barbad kar de. Yeh karne ke liye woh RL ka istemal kar sakta hai. Zamin ke mutabik woh LMG group ko assault me bhi le ja sakte hai, aur sirf RL se fire support bhi de sakta hai. Jab support group deployment hota hai to yeh zaruri nahin hai ki LMG aur RL ek hi jagah par hon. Achhi firing position ikhtiyar karne ke liye aur target ko engage karne ke liye alag location mein hona hi padega. Lekin dono dets hamesha section 2IC ke control mein hone chahiye.

**Hukam (Orders).**

1. Section ke attack (hamle) ke liye mukhya nimn baten hi hukam mein shamil ki jayengi:-
   1. Supportgroup ko kis flank mein lagaya jayega.
   2. Kaun sa group pahle move karega.
   3. Hamla baen ya dahine se hoga, bataya jayega.
   4. Fire ko rokne ka hukam ya signal aur ladai ke kis stage par diya jayega.

**Battle Drill.**

1. Dushman ke kargar fire ke niche ane se lekar virodh ko samapt karne tak ki karwai ek drill ke taur par hoti hai aur ise char bhagon mein banta ja sakta hai. Yeh drill bahut lachili hoti hai.
2. Section Battle drill in char bhagon mein pura hota hai:-
   1. Dushman ke kargar fire aane par pratikriya.
   2. Dushman ka pata lagana aur use neutralise (Nishkriya) karna.
   3. Hamla.
   4. Re-organisation.
3. **Dushman ke Kargar Fire mein Aane par Pratikriya.**  Aam taur par sainikon ki pratikriya zamin pakarne ki hoti hai. Yeh galat hai, kyon ki yeh dushman ke liye achha target ban jata hai aur dushman asani se aimed fire dal sakta hai. Amuman aisi halaton mein ya to aar hogi hi nahi ya wajib nahin hoga. Sahi tarika hoga, bhago-zamin pakaro-rengo-dekho aur fire karo. Is par drill ke taur par amal karna chahiye. Bhagne se mushkil target banta hai aur zig-zag bhagna chahiye. Dhyan mein rakhne wali baat yeh hai ke dushman kafi dur se fire kar sakta hai, apne sniper rifle ko istemal karke aise halat mein lambe range ke hathiyar jaise ke RL ka istemal karke dushman ke upar fire kar sakte hain aur age ki harkat aad ko istemal karke hogi.
4. **Dushman ko Dhundna aur Nishkriya karna.** Dushman ko dhund kar locate karna utna asan nahi hota. Dushman ko dekh kar, uske fire se ya uski harkat se dhunda ja sakta hai.
5. Dushman ka pata lagte hi Section commander ko fire control order dena chahiye aur section dwara nirdharit fire, dushman ko nishkriya karne hetu dalwana chahiye. Dhyan rahe ki initiative section commander hamesha apne hi hathon mein rakhe, jab woh dushman ke nazdik harkat kar raha ho, taki dushman par wajib hamla kiya ja sake.Amuman sniper ya eka duka dushman pakke defence mein nahin hoga, to inko barbad karne ke liye RL se air burst karne se kafi faida hoga.
6. **Hamla.** Section level par hamle do prakar ke hote hain:-
   1. **Baen se.** Is mein Rifle group, Support Group ke baen hota hai.
   2. **Dahine se.** Rifle group, SupportGroup ke dahine hota hai.
7. Hamle ke dauran zaruri baten is prakar hain:-
   1. Section Commander rifle group ke aage hona chahiye.
   2. Support group ko, ho sake to, voice control mein rakhta hai.
   3. Sari harkaten fire se cover honi chahiye.
   4. Covering fire ka angle lambavat (Wide)jitna ho sake hona chahiye.
   5. Supportgroupsection ke hamle ko support karne mein ammunition/ mag ke lihaz se purnataya saksham hona chahiye.
8. **Re-organisation.** Hamle ke baad nimn hona chahiye:-
   1. Support group bhi rifle group se ja milta hai.
   2. Chhupe ya ghayal dushman ka pata lagane ke liye section commander objective ki search karta hai.
   3. Ammunition ka bantwara/ redistribution.
   4. Ghayalon ki dekhbal aur evac.
9. **Pradarshan.** Section battle drill ka pradarshan ayojit kiya jana chahiye.
10. Battle drills ka training ke dauran abhyas karne se:-
    1. Jawanon mein atma vishwas aata hai.
    2. Indl initiative le sakta hai.
    3. Team work paida hota hai.
    4. Hukam lambe, dene ki zarurat nahin parti hai.
    5. Sabko apna apna kaam malum hota hai aur safalta ke chances badh jate hain.

**CHAPTER - 9**

**VERBAL ORDERS**

**Zubani Hukam Dene ki Tartib.**

1. Zubani hukum hamesha ek nirdharit roop ya tartib mein dene chahiye taaki hukum dene wala yeh yakin kar sake ki hukum ka koi zaruri bhag chhoot na jaye, saath hi hukum lene wale troops ko bhi hukum samajhne mein asani ho aur unhein yeh pata rahe ki aghe kaun se bhag bataye jane wale hain.

**Hukam Dene ki Tartib.**

1. Zubani hukum dene ki tartib is prakar hai.
   1. **Zaruri Hidayatein.**  Zurari hidayatein mein nimnlikhit batein shamil karni chahiye:-
      1. Dushman ka zamini ya hawai khatra hone par karwai.
      2. Sabhi ki position lene ki jagah.
      3. Cloth model ya saman le jane ki zimmewari.
      4. Khatra tal jane par briefing/ orders jari karne ki jagah aur ishara.
   2. **Ilaqe, Sand Model ya Cloth Model se jankari.** Agar hukum kisi ventage point se diye ja rahe hon to troops ko ilaqe ke bare mein aam jankari deni chahiye jaise zamin kaisi hai, obstacles, gaon adi. Agar hukum sand model ya cloth model ki madad se diye ja rahe hon to niche likhe batein bhi batani chahiye.
      1. Cloth model aur zamin ka North.
      2. Cloth model ka scale.
      3. IB (agar cloth model mein hai to).
   3. **Zamini Nishan.** Hukum dene wale Commander ko hukum tayar karte samay zamini nishan ke liye jagah khali chor deni chahiye. Pure hukum taiyar hone ke baad, jo zimini nishan prayog hone hain inko tartib war chore hue jagah mein likhna chahiye.
   4. **Khabar.** Khabar pahle dushman ke bare mein phir apni khabar deni chahiye. Khabar kewal us operation se talluk rakhne wali hi deni chahiye.
   5. **Irada.** Irada saaf aur chotta hona chahiye aur ise dohrana chahiye. (DS alag-alag operations jaise defence, ambush, patrolling adi ke irada udaharan ke taur par batayega).
   6. **Tariqa.** Is bhag mein operation/ task kaise pura kiya jayega iske bare mein tafsil se bataya jata hai. Asani ke liye tariqe ko operation ke lihaj se bhagon mein bant lena chahiye.
   7. **Bandobast.** Bandobast ke dauran niche likhi batein cover karni chahiye:-
      1. Dress aur equipment.
      2. Hathiyar aur ammunition.
      3. Khana aur pani.
      4. Medical.
   8. **Milap.** Is bhag mein pass word, pahchanane ke ishare milap ke sadhan, HQ ki jagah, frequency adi batani chahiye.

(j) **Shak Sawal aur Ghari Milao.** Hukum ke ant mein troops ko kuch samay dekar shak dur karne chahiye aur sawal karne chahiye aur phir sabhi ko gharian mila leni chahiye.

**Zaruri Hidayaten.**

1. Zubani hukum dete samay niche likhi zaruri baton ko dhyan mein rakhna chahiye:-
   1. Jahan tak mumkin ho hukum aise vantage point se dene chahiye jahan se operation ka ilaqa dikhai deta ho, nahin to cloth model ya sand model par dein.
   2. Hukam lene wale tartibwar baithe hon.
   3. Zamini nishan tartibwar diye jaye, wahi zamini nishan batayen jo operation se taluk rakhte hain.
   4. Irada saaf aur saral ho aur dohraya jaye.
   5. Tariqe mein sabhi batein batani chahiye. Tariqa vistaar purvak batayein.
   6. Hukum padhkar na diye jayein.
   7. Awaz saf aur tej ho.
   8. Hukum bina hitchkichahat aur atm vishwas se dene chahiye.

(j) Ant mein troops ko sawalon aur shak dur karne ke liye samay dein.

(k) Ghari milao awashya karna chahiye. (Ghari milao ki tartib sikhayein - jab main bolunga samay to samay hoga 1100h. 15 - 10 - 5,4,3,2,1 samay, samay 1100h).

1. Hukum ke zariye Commanders apne plans apne jawanon tak tartib se pahuncha sakte hain. Hukum hamesha saaf aur pure atamvishwas se diye jayen. Hukum di gaye nirdharit tartib mein hi dene chahiye. Hukam dene wala commanders ki yeh koshish honi chahiye ki hukum ke ant mein jawanon ko us task ke bare mein koi shak na rah jaye.

**CHAPTER – 10**

**SURVEILLANCE AUR OBSERVATION**

**Org of Svl (Aug 2007) HQ ARTRAC**

**Observation ke Sadhan aur Tariqe.**

1. **Hamari Nigrani ka irada.** Dushman ke upar nigrani ka irada is prakar hai:-

(a) Dushman ke troops ki location aur organisation haasil karna.

* 1. Dushman ke bhavishya ke plans ke bare mein jankari haasil karna.
  2. Dushman ke hatihyar ki location aur ammunition depot ko tgt chunna.

**Observation ke sadhan**

1. Yeh sari khabar haasil karne ke liye sabse uttam aur bharosemand tariqa hai ki khuli aankhon se dekhna, parantu aaj ki navintam senaen isko aur bhi kargar karne ke liye nimilikhit upkaran ka istemal karti hain:-
   1. **Unit Star Par Nigrani ke sadhan**
      1. Binocular
      2. PNVG
      3. PNVD
      4. HHTI
      5. BFSR
      6. UGS
      7. Telescopic Sight
      8. LORROS
   2. **Anya Sadhan**
      1. Hawai Jahaz
      2. Radar
      3. Sensor
      4. Satellite
      5. RPV (Remotely Piloted Veh, Indian : Nishant)
      6. UAV

**Observation ke Tariqe**

1. Samne ke ilaqa ka observation karne ke liye aage ke grnd ko teen bhagon mein banta jata hai.
   1. Near Distance lag bhag 500 m tak.
   2. Middle distance 500 se 800 m tak.
   3. Far Distance 800 m se aage.
2. **Observation Karne ke tariqe is prakar se hain:-**
   1. **Din ke Samay.** Door se najdik yani far distance se middle distance se near distance.
   2. **Raat ke Samay.** Najdik se door, yani near distance se middle distance tak.
3. Donon tariqon mein observation ek taraf yani bayein se dayein ya dayein se bayein jaise bhi observation kar sakte hain.

**OP/ LP ki Dutian**

1. OL/ LP ki dutian is prakar se hain:-
   1. Zimmewari ke ilaqe ki vistar se nigrani karna.
   2. Main defence mein lagatar khabar bhejte rehna.
   3. Zimmewari ke ilaqe mein ho rahi apni aur dushman ki harkat ki khabar dete rehna.
   4. OP log book ko bharna.
   5. Hawai jahaz ke bare mein khabar dena.
   6. Nazdik ke OP ke saath najari milap karna.
   7. LZ/ DZ par nigrani rakhna.
   8. Ilake mein ghum rahe apne patrols ki jaankari haasil karna.

**OP/LP ke Kaam Mein Aanewale Upkaran**

1. OP/ LP ko nimnlikhit upkaranon ki zarurat padegi:-
   1. Telephone.
   2. Radio set.
   3. PNVD, Binocular, BFSR ityadi.
   4. Unattended Ground Sensors.
2. **OP/ LP ke pass saman:-** 
   1. Milap ke sadhan jaise telephone, radio set ityadi.
   2. Binocular/ PNVD.
   3. Compass.
   4. Map sheet.
   5. Logbook.
   6. Pers weapon, ammunition ke saath.
   7. Writing material.
   8. Anya saman jaise khana pani ityadi.

**Dhyan mein rakhne wali baaten**

1. OP/LP ke dhyan mein rakhne wali anya batein:-
   1. Jodi mein kaam karein.
   2. Dushman ke aane wale mumkin raaston mein hon.
   3. Aise location jahan se task ko pura kar sake, OP unchai par hon (agar ho sake to) aur LP neeche ho.
   4. Password ki jaankari ho.
   5. Sanchar ke sadhan duplicate kiye gaye hon.
   6. Jo dekha usi khabar ko pass karna. Apna andaza na lagayein.
   7. Withdrawal ke raaste covered hone chahiye.
   8. OP/ LP ki location dushman ka mumkin DF task na ho.

(j) OP/ LP par atm nirbhar rahne layak ka saman ho.

(k) OP logbook jarur bhari jaye.

**Relief ka tariqa**

1. OP/LP jodi mein kaam karenge lekin badli kewal ek-ek karke hi hogi taaki is baat ka yakin kiya ja sake kih kisi bhi waqt ek purana jawan maujud ho. Iske time aur tarike Platoon/ Company Commander ke adesh anusar honge.

**Conclusion**

12. Science ki tarakki ke saath ab raat ko ham kafi dur tak dekh sakte hain. Isliye nigrani aur prakasan ki jankari honi jaroori hai. Saath hi hamare OP/ LP dushman ke EW dene mein saksham hone chahiye.

**CHAPTER – 11**

**BATTLE PROCEDURE**

## Ops of War V-I, Defence 2005

**Battle Procedure ka Tariqa**

1. Battle Procedure nimn prakar se kiya ja sakta hai.
   1. **Andaza Lagana**. Har level ke commanders ko yeh andaza lagate rahna chahiye ki ane wali situation kya hogi. Isse commander aur troops ane wale situatiion ke liye taiyaar rahenge.
   2. **Planned aur Coordinated Recce**. Recce karne se pehle sahi planning aur coordination hona chahiye.
   3. **Use of Prac Drill**. Har level par sabhi drill ka prac aur rehearsal hona chahiye.
   4. **Ek Saath Taiyaari.** Larai ke liye har level par taiyaari ek saath honi chahiye.
2. **Battle Procedure ke liye nimn baten zaruri hain.** 
   1. Khabar aur sochvichar
   2. Milaap
   3. Commander aur staff available hona chahiye
   4. Troops ki group mein baant.

**Deployment ke Liye Troops ki Baant**

1. Troops ko jaldi deployment aur ekrupta ke liye ek unit/ sub unit ko mukhya char bhagon mein banta jata hai.
   1. **Recce (R) Group.**  Is group mein commander aur woh numainde shamil hain jinse ek commander, plan banane se pahle salah mashwira karta hai. Yeh group jahan tak ho sake chhote se chhota hona chahiye. Platoon `R' group mein Platoon commander runner radio set ke saath.
   2. **Order (O) Group.** Is mein woh subordinate commander shamil hote hain jinko order diya jata hai. Platoon (O) group mein nimnalikhit numainde shamil hain :-
      1. Platoon `R' Group.
      2. Teeno section commander.
      3. 51 mm Mortar Det Commander. (Only in Mod ‘M’)
      4. RL Det Commander.

(v) Platoon Havildar (kewal defence mein).

* 1. **Fighting (F) Group.** Yeh unit/ sub unit ka sabse bara hissa hota hai. Is mein F echelon transport, jismein ek rifle company ke liye ek (1) Lorry, ALS, 5 ton shamil hoti hai.

Platoon ke F ech mein nimnalikhit shamil hai :-

* + 1. Platoon Headquarters `R' group chhor kar.
    2. Teenon sections.
  1. **Transport (T) Group.** Is mein transport aur woh numainde shamil hain jo upar likhit mein shamil nahin kiye gaye hai. Platoon ke darje par 'T' group nahin hota. Isko sadharanta nimnalikhit do ech mein banta gaya hai:-
     1. **A ech.** Is mein transport aur woh numainde shamil hote hain jinki `F' group ke saath zarurat nahin hoti, lekin larai mein bhag lene wale troops ko support dene ke liye ekdam tayar hai.
     2. **B ech.** Is mein woh transport aur numainde hote hain jo para ek (1) mein shamil nahin kiye gaye. Is mein mukhya roop se bandobasti daste hote hain.

1. **Warning Order.** Larai ki taiyari ko shuru karne ke liye commander ko jitni jaldi ho sake ek warning order issue karna chahiye. Is mein nimnalikhit shamil hona chahiye:-
   1. Diye jane wale task ka chhota bayan.
   2. Samay, jis se pahle troops harkat nahin kar sakte (NMB).
   3. 'O' group ke liye samay aur RV.
   4. `F` group ke liye samay aur RV.
   5. Aur koi khas bando basti nirdesh.

**R,O aur F group ki Banawat**

1. R, O aur F group ka mashware ke taur par banawat is prakar hai:-
   1. **`R' Group.** 
      1. Platoon Commander.
      2. Orderly radio set ke saath.
   2. **`O' Group.** 
      1. Section Commanders.
      2. 51 mm Mortar det Commander.
      3. RL det Commander.
      4. Platoon Havildar (Defence).
   3. **`F' Group.** 
      1. Platoon Havildar.
      2. Platoon Headquarters.
      3. Teenon Sections.
2. Teenon groups ki banawat ko paristhitiyon ke mutabik badli bhi kiya ja sakta hai.

**Jaldi ke Hamle ke Dauran Platoon Level par Battle Procedure**

1. Jaldi ke hamle ke dauran battle procedure iss prakar hoga:-
   1. Platoon `O' group Platoon commander ke orders ke liye apni RV tak harkat karta hai.
   2. Platoon commander recce karega aur apne `O' group ko order issue karega.
   3. Platoon Havildar ke nichhe platoon larai ki tayari karega.
   4. `F' group FUP mein aata hai aur hamle ke liye deployment hota hai.
   5. Section commander, section ke saath RV mein shamil ho jata hai aur section ko brief karta hai.Tayari aur briefing puri hone par sub unit commander ko report di jati hai.
   6. H Hr par troops Start Line (SL) ko par karten hain.

**Battle Procedure aur Battle Drill mein Antar**

1. Battle drill aur battle procedure mein nimn mukhya antar hain:-
   1. Battle Procedure Warning Order milne ke saath shuru hota hai aur Battle Drill Section, Platoon ya group ke upar fire ane par shuru hota hai.
   2. Battle Procedure ke dauran larai ki taiyyari ki jati hai jabki Battle Drill woh drill hai jo under fire ane par ki jati hai jaise fire and move.
   3. Battle Procedure digging ya SL paar karne ke baad khatam ho jata hai. Battle Drill larai ke dauran lagatar chalta hai.
   4. Battle Procedure har level par kiya jata hai. Battle Drill subunit level par kiya jata hai.
   5. Samay ki bachat Battle Procedure men ek saath karwai se aur Battle Drill men set drill ke karan hoti hai.
2. Ek commander ko hamesha samay ki kami mahsus hogi. Yeh mukhya roop se jaldi ke hamle mein ya jaldi ke defence ke dauran hota hai. Sabhi level par achhe aur durust tarah se rehearsal kiya gaya ho. Battle procedure se hi samay ko bachaya ja sakta hai.

**CHAPTER – 12**

**INFANTRY KI VISHESTAEN AUR INFANTRY BATTALION (4B MODIFIED) KI**

**BANAWAT**

**GS pamphlet, Inf trg vol IV, Sec leading and Pl tac 2007.**

**Infantry Ki Visheshtaen**

1. Infantry ki Visheshtaen is prakar se hai:-
   1. **Aatma Nirbharta.** Infantry ko larai mein imdadi daston ki madad milti hai lekin kabhi-kabhi aise mauke bhi ate hain ki apne hi hathiyaron ka istemal karte hue dushman ke khilaf karwai karni parti hai. Iske liye Infantry har samay taiyar aur atma nirbhar rahti hai.
   2. **Zamin Par Kabja Rakhna.** Apne desh ki zamin par har halat mein kabja banae rakhna tatha imdadi daston ke saath milkar dushman se prapt ki gaye jamin par kabja rakhne ka sabse acha kam kewal Infantry hi karti hai. Is ke liye jitni madad ise di jaye utni hi kamyabi se apna task pura karti hai.
   3. **Mouqe ke Mutabik Banana.**  Infantry har kism ki jamin aur mausam mein, din ho ya raat, andhi ho ya toofan apne kaam ko pura karti hai. Samudri sena ya hawai sena ke saath milkar jis parkar ka operational role diya jata hai, usi parkar mouke ke mutabik apne apko badalte hue task ko pura karti hai.
   4. **Harkat ki Kabliat.** Har kism ki mushkil ilake ko par kaam karne ki kshamta rakhti hai jo baki daston ke liye kathin hota hai. Infantry paidal harkat karti hai jisse raftar kam hota hai agar ise gariyan di jaye to yeh dusre daston ki tarah tej harkat bhi kar sakti hai. Infantry ko jamin, hawai ya samudra ke raste se ladai ke maidan mein asani se aur jaldi pahunchaya ja sakta hai.

**Kamjorian**

1. Infantry apne bachao ke liye har waqt taiyar rahti hai, phir bhi niche likhe khatron ke khilaf niptne ke liye kafi kathinayian pesh ati hai.
   1. **Zamini Khatra.**  Infantry ko khule ilaqe mein harkat karte samay shatru ke tank, topkhana aur small arms fire tatha machine guns se kafi nuksan pahunchta hai. Phir bhi zamin ka sahi istemal, durust failao aur dhuan se tatha defence ki larai mein anti tank hathiyaron ki madad, over head protection aur durust camouflage tatha concealment se is khatre ka samna kar sakta hai.
   2. **Hawai Khatra.** Jab Infantry harkat khule mein karti hai, tab dushman ka hawai hamala kafi khatarnak sabit hota hai. Lekin troops mein zyada failao, acha chupao aur zamin ka sahi istemal karne se baki daston se kam khatra ho sakta hai.
   3. **Anti Personnel Mine.** Infantry ko dushman ki anti personnel minefield se gujarte samay kafi nuksan pahunchta hai aur raftar par bhi asar parta hai. Lekin jawano ko is ke bare mein achha talmel diya jaye to nuksan kam ho sakta hai.

**Tactics**

1. Infantry ki khubian aur kamiyon ko madyanazar rakhte hue ise ek section se lekar upar tak ki banawat mein aisi tartib di gai hai ki Infantry ki harkat tatha defence ki larai mein dushman ke dakhal andaji ke bavjud bagair fire ki madad se apna task pura kar sake.
   1. Tactics hamle mein - Fire aur harkat.
   2. Tactics defence mein - Dekhbhal aur fire.

**Infantry Ki Kismein**

1. Infantry ki kismein iss prakar hain:-
   1. Standard Infantry.
   2. Mechanised Infantry.
   3. Anti Tank Guided Missile Infantry.
   4. Para Infantry.
   5. Para Special Forces Infantry.
   6. Scout Infantry.
   7. Motorised Infantry.
2. **Infantry Ki Kismen mein tabdili (Ilaqe ke anusar).**
   1. Mod `M' Pahari ilake mein.
   2. Mod `D' Retile ilake mein.
   3. Mod `Q' Andaman Nicobar dweep samooha mein.

**Standard Infantry Battalion (4B Modified) Ki Banawat**

1. Badalte huye jamane mein larai ladane ke dhang ya sadhan bhi badalte ja rahe hai. Kyon ki Infantry ko alag alag prakar ke task diye jate hai aur yeh task Infantry ko kisi dusri arms ke saath milkar ya phir akele hi karne padate hai. Isliye Infantry Battalion ki banawat ko bhi samay ke saath chalne ke liye badli karne ki zarurat hoti hai.
2. 1998 mein Infantry Battalion ko InfantryBattalion 4 (B) ke hisab se banaya gaya tha lekin bad mein isi Infantry Battalion ko iske task ke anusar kuch naye weapon aur equipment diye gaye jiske karan un weapon aur equipment ko carry aur handling ke liye jawano ki pher badal karne ki zarurat pari saath hi ek aisi chhoti motivated aur trained team ki zarurat mahasus ki gayi Jo ki har tarah ke task ko swayam hi kar sake isliye ek Ghatak Platoon banakar Support Company mein shamil kiya gaya.Inhi sab karano ki wajah se Infantry Battalion (4B) ko modify karke Infantry Battalion (4B Modified) ka naam diya gaya.

**STANDARD INFANTRY BATTALION 4B (Mod) KI BANAWAT (REVISED)**

**ATT**

1. **AMC (1-0-2)**
2. **EME (0-0-7) (0-0-8)\***
3. **AEC (0-1-2)**
4. Is naye organisation mein jo badlav kiye gaye hain woh is prakar hain:-
   1. Support company ki banawat alag se.
   2. Headquarter aur Support company ke 2IC JCO's honge lekin Platoon Commander officer honge. Company 2IC ka kaam administration ka hai aur company commander ki gair hazari mein officer hi officiating company commander hoga.
   3. Rifle company se RCL ko hata kar Support company mein de diya hai anti tank Platoon ke roop mein.
   4. Nafri mein pher badal.

**Manpower, Rank Structure Hathiyar aur Equipment mein Antar**

1. Nafri organisation mein badlaav ke karan manpower aur rank structure mein bhi tabdili hui hai. Naya organisation is prakar se hai:-

**STANDARD INFANTRY BATTALION (REVISED) KE MANPOWER KA VIVRAN**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Unit/Sub Unit** | | **Officer** | **JCO’s** | **OR** | **Total** |
| Battalion Headquarters | | 05 (04) | 03 (03) | 32 (32) | 40 (39) |
| Headquarters Company | Company Headquarters | 01 | 01 | 04 | 06 |
| Quarter master Platoon | - | 03 | 61 | 64 |
| Transport Platoon | 01 (00) | 03 (03) | 68 (70) | 72 (73) |
| Medical Section | - | - | 09 | 09 |
| Support  Company | Company Headquarters | 01 | 01 | 04 | 06 |
| Assault Platoon | - | 01 (01) | 13 (10) | 14 (11) |
| Mortar Platoon | 01 (01) | 05 (05) | 25 (30) | 31 (36) |
| Signal Platoon | 01 (01) | 01 (01) | 39 (34) | 41 (36) |
| Recce & Surveillance Platoon | 01 (01) | 01 (01) | 18 (07) | 20 (09) |
| Anti Tank Pl | 01 | 01 | 26 | 28 |
| Ghatak Platoon | 01 | 01 | 19 | 21 |
| Rifle Company | Rifle company x 01 | 02 (02) | 05 (05) | 116 (119) | 123 (126) |
| **Total** | | **21 (19)** | **41 (41)** | **782 (782)** | **844 (842)** |

1. Is vivran ko dekhne se jo pata chalta hai woh is parkar hai:-
   1. Support company nayi company bana di gayi hai.
   2. Battalion Headquarters se hata kar Signal aur Intelligence section ko Support company mein Signal Platoon aur Recce & Surveillance platoon bana diya gaya hai.
   3. HMG platoon ko ab WE se hata diya gaya hai.
   4. Asssault Pioneer Section ko ab Asssault Platoon ke saath Support company mein mila diya gaya hai .
   5. MortarPlatoon ko ab supportcompany mein shaamil kar diya gaya hai.
   6. RCL Battalion se nilkal di gai hai uski jagah Support company mein ATGM Platoon bana di gai hai.
   7. Ghatak platoon support company mein shaamil ki gai.
2. Hathiyar ke auth mein bhi kuch badlaav kiya gaya hai aur inka auth kuch

baaton par nirbhar hai jo ki is prakar hain:-

1. Ek admi ka ladai mein kaam.
2. Wazan jo ki ladai ke haalat mein usse le jana padega.
3. Ladai ke samay us indl ki jagah.
4. **Pistol.** (Niche likhe pers 9mm pistol carry karenge)

* 1. Commanding Officer aur 2IC - 02.
  2. Subedar Major aur Religious Teacher - 02.
  3. OR 50% Radio operater Signal Platoon ke - 13.
  4. RL NO 1 - 38.
  5. AGL NO 1 - 08.
  6. ATGM NO 1 - 08.
  7. Flame Thrower No 1 - 04.
  8. 81 mm Mortar No 1 - 06.
  9. Radio operator MFC - 03.
  10. MMG No 1 - 08.
  11. MGL No 1 - 13.
  12. AMR No 1 - 04.

(xiii) Total - **109.**

1. **Carbine.** 
   1. Officers chhod kar CO aur 2IC - 20 (17+01 RMO)
   2. JCOs chhod kar SM aur RT - 40
   3. Sectioncommanders (Riflesection) - 36
   4. LMG No 2 - 40
   5. MMG No 2 aur 3 - 16
   6. AGL No 2 - 08
   7. 81 mm Mortar No 2 aur 3 - 12
   8. Baki radio opertors - 13

(xi) BFSR Dets - 12 (04)

* 1. DR - 04
  2. ATGM No 2 aur Cdr - 16
  3. AMR No 2 & 3 - 08
  4. Total - **225.**

1. Baki indls chhod kar LMG No1 aur Sniper rifleman, sab ko rifle 5.56mm INSAS Rifle lagu hai jo ki total hai - 438.
2. Rifle Sniper - 10
3. MMG - 08
4. AGL 17 / AGS 30 - 08
5. ATGM - 08
6. LMG(5.56mm) - 40
7. 51mm Mortar(Kewal Mod M mein lagu hai) - 12
8. MFDC - 02
9. BFSRs - 04
10. Flame Throwers - 04
11. Projector 3A - 36
12. Pistol Mini Flare - 18
13. 84mm RL - 38
14. 9 mm sub cal adapter - 12
15. 81mm Mortar - 06
16. AK-47/ INSAS Rifle for UBGL - 36
17. AMR - 04
18. MGL - 13
19. UBGL - 36
20. Pump action shot gun - 12

**EQPT:-**

1. HHTI - 06
2. PNVG - 24
3. PNVB - 30
4. GPS - 22
5. LRF - 06
6. Digital Compass - 50
7. UGS - 03 (Mod M)
8. HHDF Interceptor - 04
9. RS VC - 03
10. RS HX - 04
11. IED Det Equipment - 01 set

**Note:**- 5 Sniper rifle par night sight lagu hoga aur panch bina night sight ke honge.

1. **CI Ops**. Jo battalion CI Ops ilake mein deployment hain usko addl weapons aur equipment auth hain:-
   1. **Veh.** 
      1. MPV - 03
      2. Light bullet proof Veh - 06.
   2. **Weapons.**12 Bore Pump Action Shot Gun - 12.
   3. **Equipment.**
      1. Counter IED Set - 01.
      2. Interceptor Rx - 04.
      3. HHDF - 04.
   4. **Manpower.** Ek (1) additionalplatoon.

**RifleCompany ki detailed Organisation**

1. Rifle company ka detailed organisation is prakar se hain:-

**RIFLE COMPANY**

**ARMR DET-02#**

1. **DET CDR - NK**
2. **NOs - ONE**

**SNIPER- 04#**

1. **TWO NKs**
2. **TWO LNK/ SEP**

**SP COY KI BANAWAT**

**ASLT PL**

**(0-01-10)**

**(0-01-13)\***

**PLHQ**

**(00-01-01)**

**Pl Cdr Sub-01**

**Pl Hav-01**

**ASLT DET**

**(0-0-3) FT- 01**

**(0-0-4)\* LMG-01**

**ASLT DET**

**(0-0-3) FT- 01**

**(0-0-4)\* LMG-01**

**ASLT DET**

**(0-0-3) FT- 01**

**(0-0-4)\* LMG-01**

**RECCE & SURVEILANCE PLATOON**

**RECCE & SVL PL**

**(01-01-07)**

**(01-01-18)\***

**Pl Cdr (Capt) - 01**

**Int & Svl JCO(Nb Sub) - 01**

**Pl Hav - 01**

**Sep GD (01)\* - 01**

**Int Nk (01)\* - Nil**

**Int Sec (03)\* - Nil**

**PL HQ**

**(01-01-02)**

**(01-01-06)\***

**Recce & Svl Team**

**Team Cdr (02) (04)\*- Hav**

**Nos (03) (08)\*- Lnk/ Sep**

**MOR PL**

**Mor PL**

**(01-05-30)**

**(01-05-25)\***

**Pl Cdr (Maj) - 01**

**MFC (Sub) - 03**

**Amn Hav - 01**

**Sep GD - 01**

**RS Opr(03)\* - 06**

**Int Sec (03)\* - Nil**

**Nk - 02**

**Lnk/Sep -04 -04**

**PL HQ**

**(01-03-08)**

**(01-03-05)\***

**SEC**

**Sub MPC - 01**

**TA Hav (01)\* - 02**

**SEC**

**Sub MPC - 01**

**TA Hav (01)\* - 02**

**DET-03x OR**

**DET-03x OR**

**DET-03x OR**

**DET-03x OR**

**DET-03x OR**

**DET-03x OR**

**MOR DET**

**Det Cdr (no-1) - Nk**

**Nos (No 2&3) - Lnk/ Sep**

**SIGNAL PL**

**Sig PL**

**(01-01-34)**

**(01-01-39)\***

**Pl Cdr (Capt) - 01**

**Pl 2IC (Sub) - 01**

**Store NCO - 01**

**Sep GD - 01**

**PL HQ**

**(01-01-02)**

**RADIO SEC**

**STR - 22 (27)\***

**SEC CDR (HAV) - 00 (01)\***

**RS OPR (NK) - 04 (06)\***

**RS OPR (SEP) - 18 (20)\***

**LINE SEC**

**STR - 10**

**SEC CDR (HAV) - 01**

**LINE MAN (SEP) - 09**

**A/TK PLATOON**

**A/ Tk PL**

**(01-01-26)**

**PL HQ**

**(01-01-02)**

**Pl Cdr (Lt) - 01**

**Pl 2IC (Sub) - 01**

**PL HAV CUM MSL AMN NCO - 01**

**Sep GD - 01**

**DET**

**03 ORs**

**DET**

**03 ORs**

**DET**

**03 ORs**

**DET**

**03 ORs**

**DET**

**03 ORs**

**DET**

**03 ORs**

**DET**

**03 ORs**

**DET**

**03 ORs**

**GHATAK PL**

### SUPPORT COMPANY MEIN ISTEMAL HONEWALE

**WEAPON AUR EQUIPMENT KA TECHNICAL DATA**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **81mm Mortar**  14. Wazan : 44.6 KG. |  |  |
| 15. Ammunition : HE | Smoke | Illumination |
| (a) Range : 5200M | 5200M | 5000M |
| (b) Wazan : 4.2 KG | 4.2 KG | 3.85 KG |

16. AMFDC : Automatic Mortar Fire Data Controller.

**ATGM**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Name | Wazan |
| 17. Fagot Launcher | : 22.5 kg. |
| 18. Flame Launcher Mk II | : 28 kg. |
| 19. Unified (Konkurs) Launcher    **Missile** | : 22.5 kg. |
| Name Wazan | Range |
| 20. Fagot Msl 12.9 KG | 75 M SE 2500 M. |
| 21. MILAN Msl 11.8 KG | 25 M SE 2000 M. |
| 22. KONKURS Msl 25.16 KG | 75 M SE 4000 M. |

**BFSR EL/M 2129**

23. Tech data is prakar hai:-

1. Total weight - 34.5 Kg.
2. Transciever - 12 Kg.
3. Pedestal - 5.5Kg.
4. CDU - 8.5 Kg.
5. Tripod - 2.5 Kg.
6. W3 cable - 5 Kg.
7. W4 cable - 1 Kg.
8. Setting time - 5 min (approx).
9. Power source - 24V Nickel cadmium rechargable battery pack.
10. Op range - (19v - 32v DC).
11. Lagatar chalne ki taqat 8 hrs.
12. Frequency 8.75 se 8.95 GHZ (8 Freq).

1. **Detection ki range**.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 1. Chalte hue admion ki tukri - 8 Km max. 2. Chalti gari - 8 Km max. 3. Helicopter - 15 Km 4. Single jawan - 5Km. 5. Detect karne ki kam se kam range- 59 mtr.   (vi) Accuracy - + 20m.  (vii) Azimuth - + 0.50.  (viii) Antenna elevation - -220 to 110. | | |
| **C-90 Disposable RL** | |  |
| 24. | Technical data is prakar hai :-   1. Calibre - 90 mm. 2. Length - 984 mm. 3. Length protective cover front- 41 mm. 4. Length protective rear - 51 mm. 5. Length ready to fire - 943 mm. 6. Weight Anti tank - 4.8 kg. 7. Weight anti bunker - 5.4 kg. 8. Weight Smoke - 5.6 kg. 9. Weight hand grip - 100 gm. 10. Weight shoulder pad - 15 gm. 11. Operating temp - -31 0C se +50 0C. 12. Lethal area - 8m radius 13. Effective area - 18 m radius. |  |
| 25. | **Range.** |  |
|  | Range Anti Tank Anti Bunker | Smoke |
|  | (a) Sight Range 0-400m 0-400m | 200-700m |
|  | (b) Khara target 400m 350m | 700m |
|  | (c) Harkati target 300m 250m | - |

1. **Penetration.** 
   * 1. Concrete : 1.2m - 250mm.
     2. Sand bag : 1000mm.
     3. Brick : 600m.
     4. Steel : 70mm.

**Radio Set**

1. Nimn radio sets authorised hai:-

(a) Radio Set VC/RS-20 Watts - 03. (b) Radio Set ANPRC - 25 - 15.

(c) Radio Set VA MK III - 51.

(d) Radio Set VPS - 56.

(e) Radio Set HX - 04.

(f) Telephone Set NO 7A - 44.

(g) ULSB Exchange - 06.

(h) Cable JWD(KMs) - 50.

**HEADQUARTER COMPANY KI BANAWAT**

**HQ COY**

**(02-07-144)**

**(02-07-142)\***

**Coy Cdr (Maj) - 01**

**Coy 2IC (Sub) - 01**

**CHM - 01**

**CQMH - 01**

**F ECH HAV - 01**

**SEP GD - 01**

**COY HQ**

**(01-01-04)**

**QM PL**

**(00-03-61)**

**TPT PL**

**(00-03-70)**

**(00-03-68)**

**MED SEC**

**(00-00-09)**

**TPT PL**

**(00-03-70)**

**(01-03-68)\***

**PL Cdr (Capt) (01) - 00**

**Store NCO (Hav) - 01**

**FOL NCO - 01**

**SEP GD # - 01**

**PL HQ**

**(00-00-03)**

**CAR SEC**

**(00-01-27)**

**Sec Cdr (Nb Sub)-01**

**Sec 2 IC (Hav) -01**

**Sec 2 IC (Hav) -03**

**DVR Nk -10**

**Dvr Lnk/Sep -54 (52)**

**Att:-**

**CHM - 01**

**VM - 02 (03)\***

**Elect - 01**

**TRUCK SEC (2.5TON)**

**(00-01-25)**

**Sec Cdr (Nb Sub)-01**

**Sec 2 IC (Hav) -01**

**LORRY SEC (5TON)**

**(00-01-14)**

**Sec Cdr (Nb Sub)-01**

**Sec 2IC (Hav) - 01**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |

**Senior Mos JCO will be Act as per Pl Cdr**

**ADM PLATOON**

**(0-3-61)+ (ATT 3 ARMR)**

**PL HQ(0-3-9)**

PL CDR SUB - 01

JQM NB SUB - 01

AMN JCO SUB - 01

AMN NCO HAV - 01

OFFRS MESS HAV - 01

STORE NCO HAV - 01

STORE MEN NK - 02

ADM NCO NK - 02

RUNNER/ORDERLY-02

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | **COMBAT**  (0-0-24)  CARPAINTER- 01 | | **MEDICAL SEC**  **(0-0-9)+(ATT 3 AMC)**  SEC CDR HAV – 01  BFNA NK – 04  BFNA/UEI SEP – 04 | **NON COMBAT**  (0-0-28)  BARBER- 05  W/MAN - 08  SAFAI MAN - 10  OFFR MESS STAFF- 05 |  |
| PAINTER – 01  ER – 02  TAILOR – 01  COOK - 19 |  |

1. Infantry Battalion ki organisation aur uski banawat tatha qabiliat ki jaankari har Infantry ke Commander ke liye nihayat zaruri hai jaisse ki usse diye hue task ko pura karne mein sahulyat hoti hai tatha larai ke samay karwai karte waqt talmel achha hota hai.

**CHAPTER - 13**

**GHATAK PLATOON KA ORGANISATION AUR EMPLOYMENT**

**Infantry Volume – IV (2007) Platoon Tactics**

**Parichay**

1. Kisi bhi Infantry Battalion ki Ghatak Platoon unki sabse potent force hoti hai. Ek chhoti team hone ke naate yeh sharirik aur mansik roop se sabse fit hote hain. Surprise aur lachak inka sabse bada hathiyar hai. Kisi bhi terrain aur kisi bhi tarah ki ladai ho chahe conventional ya unconventional Ghatak Platoon ka role bahut ahmiyat rakhta hai. Iss liye yeh nihayat hi zaroori hai ki ek Battalion Commander inko sahi jagah aur sahi tarike se istemal karna jaane.

**Organisation aur Banawat**

1. Ghatak Platoon ek Infantry Battalion mein Support company ka hissa hai. Iski nafri ek officer, ek JCO aur 19 jawan hai. Operation aur task ke hisab se hum ise ya to ek team ya do sub teams mein baant sakte hain.Iska prastavit organisation iss prakar se hai:-

**GHATAK PLATOON**

**(01-01-19)**

PLHQ(01-01-03)

PL CDR CAPT - 01

PL 2 IC NB SUB- 01

RUNNER/ SEP- 01

ORDELY

RADIO OPR SEP-01

FLAME THROWER SEP-01

**(2XSEC) SEC**

**(0-0-08)**

SEC CDR HAV - 01

SEC 2IC NK - 01

RL DET -02

SNIPER - 01

RIF MAN - 03

1. Ghatak Platoon mein hathiyar ki baant niche di gayi hai:-
   1. 5.56mm Rif - 14
   2. 84mm RL - 02
   3. MGL - 01
   4. HHTI - 01
   5. FT - 02 (ek jawaan carry karta hai)
   6. Sniper Rif - 02

**Tasks of Ghatak Platoon in Various Operationsof War**

1. **DCB par Task.** 
   1. Apne forward zone mein operate kar dushman ki routine aur harkat ki khabar haasil karna.
   2. Forward zone mein operate kar dushman ke mobile daston ko barbad karna.
   3. Dushman dwara banaye gaye Briidge Head ke samne Anti/Tank screen bana kar dusman ke break out Armour ko rokna.
   4. Recce kar dushman ke defence mein gap pata karna aur mine field ka alignment pata karna.
   5. **Raid.** Dushman ke gun location, fire control system, FOL dump, ammunition dump aur Radar station ko raid kar barbad karna.
   6. **Spoiling Attack.** Dushman ke FUP par aane par unke upar door se chhote daston dwara hamla karna aur unka time plan kharab karna.
   7. **Road Block.** Dushman ke ilaqe mein jaa kar road block lagana taaki unka reinforcement ko roka jaa sake ya delay kiya jaa sake.
2. **Desert mein Defence.**
   1. **Early Warning.** Apne forward zone ya dushman ke forward zone mein reh kar dushman ki khabar haasil kar apne Headquarters ko early warning dena.
   2. Speacial Mission patrol.
   3. Spoiling attack.
   4. Raid.
   5. Ambush.
   6. Threatened locality ko reinforce karna.
3. **Desert mein OffensiveOperations.** 
   1. Recce aur Surveillance.
   2. Trans Border Patrol aur Speaciall Mission Patrol.
   3. **Raid.** Dushman ke gun location, fire control system, FOL dump, ammunition dump aur Radar station ko raid kar barbad karna.
   4. Ambush.
   5. Infiltration kar hamla karna.
   6. **Jitter Parties.** Inka mukhya uddeshya dushman ke andar confusion aur delay paida kar unka morale down karna hai.
4. **Mountains mein Task.** 
   1. BAT.
   2. **Raid.** 
      1. Command aur Control centres.
      2. Headquarters. (iii) Gun positions.
   3. Attack column ke saath link up.
   4. Dushman ke patrol ko ambush karna.
   5. Heliborne tasks.
   6. Artillery fire dalwana.
   7. Convoy protection.
   8. Blocks.

(j) Long Range Patrols.

1. **CI / CT mein Tasks.** 
   1. Recce aur surveillance.
   2. Area Domination Patrols.
   3. Search And Destroy Operations(SADO).
   4. Covert Observation Post lagana.
   5. Mobile Veh Check Post (MVCP) lagana.
   6. Hard intelligence par ambush lagana.
   7. Convoy protection.
   8. Blocks.

(j) Hide out par Raid karna.

1. Ghatak PlatoonInfantryBattalion ka woh specialised dasta hai jiska sahi istemal kar uska bharpoor faiyda uthaya ja sakta hai. Surprise, speed, lachak aur aakramakta inhe kisi bhi task ke liye taiyar rakhti hai. Inka istemaal conventional aur unconventional operations dono mein saman roop se hai.

**CHAPTER - 14**

**ARTILLERY KA ORGANISATION AUR EMPLOYMENT**

**Mountain Warfare (2002)**

**Pahunch**

1. Artillery fire support dene wala mukhya arm hai. Ladai ke haalat mein dushman ke upar is kadar fire girana hai ki dushman na to humare plan ke saath hasthkshep kar sake aur naa hi apne ladne ki kabliyat ko badha sake. Is maksad ko pura karne ke liye Artillery dushman par bhari tadad mein fire gira kar unke troops, equipment aur logistics ko barbad karta hai.
2. Field Artillery ladai ke dauran Infantry ko lagatar aur bhari tadad mein fire support deti hai. Iss karya ko pura karne ke liye Artillery nimnlikhit kaam karte hain:-
   1. Static aur harkati target acquire karna.
   2. Target ko supported arms arm commander ke hisab se engage karna.
3. Artillery ek offensive arm hai aur use usi prakar istemal karna chahiye. Ladai ke waqt kai baar aisa hota hai ki Artillery kabhi main arm ho hata hai to kabhi supporting arm. Ladai ke shuruat mein Artillery air recce, UAV, surveillance devices, patrols dwara target acquire karta hai aur apne adhiktamrange par barbad karta hai. Jaise jaise ladai aage badhta hai Artillery ki ahmiyat badhti jaati hai.

**Artillery ka Vargikaran**

1. Marak kshamta aur trajectory ke upar Artillery hathiyaron ko guns, howitzers, mortars aur rocket launchers mein banta jaata hai. Weight, rate of fire aur emoloyment ke hisab se guns aur howitizers ka chaar bhagon mein baanta jata hai:-
   1. LightField.
   2. Field.
   3. Medium.
   4. Heavy.

**Khasusiyat**

1. Caliber aur range ko maddenajar rakhte hue Artillery hathiyaron ko nimnlikhit bhagon mein banta jata hai:-
   1. **Light.** 120 mm ya usse kam caliber wale hathiyar jinhe aasani se heptr dwara transport kiya jata hai ya animal transport aur mech agencies dwara uthaya jaata hai. Jaise 75/24 Pack Howitzer aur 120mm Mortar. Inka rate of fire jyada hota hai aurise asani se mountain/jungle terrain mein deploykiya jaa sakta hai. Inki mob jyada hoti hai.

* 1. **Field.** 120mm ya usse kam caliber wale hathiyar jinhe aasani se animal tranport dwara nahin carry kiya jaa sakta. Inhe air transport dwara transport kiya jaa sakta hai. Jaise 105 mm IFG aur LFG guns. Inka rate of fire aur mobility Light gun se kam hoti hai.
  2. **Medium.** 121mm se 160mm caliber waale gun ko Medium gun kehte hain. Medium gun Light aur Field gun se bhari hota hai aur iska range jyada hota hai par rate of fire aur mobility kam hota hai. Caliber jiyada hone ke karan iska lethal area jiyada hota hai. Eg- 130mm, 155mm BOFORS.
  3. **Heavy.**161mm se 210mm caliber wale gun ko Heavy gun kehte hain. Iska blast effect sabse jiyada hota hai aur ise concrete defence ke barkhilaf istemal kiya jata hai. Bhari hone ke karan yeh kam mobile hota hai aur iska rate of fire kam hota hai. Eg- 7.2 inch howitzer.

**Organisation aur Range**

1. Artillery Regiment ka organisation nimnlikhit baton par nirbhar karta hai:-
   1. Sahi waqt aur sahi jagah par fire ka concentration.
   2. Support arm ke saath group karne ki kabliyat.
   3. Central control ke liye flexibility zaroori hai.
   4. Har ek Commander ko ek adviser (officer) muhaiya kara sake.
2. **Organisation of Light Regt.**

LRW

SIG SEC

LRW

BTY

6

X 120mm Brandt Mor

BTY

RHQ

1. **Organisation of Field/Med Regt.**

CO

IC

2

Adjt

QM

Orderly Offr

Bty Cdr

Svy Offr

OC LRW(EME Offr)

IC Tp

LRW

Svy Sec

RMO & NA

Sig Sec att

HQ BTY

Bty Cdr

Bty 2IC

GPO

Bty Subaltern

Wagon Line JCO

Tp (3 Guns)

Tp 3 Guns)

Bty HQ

Bty 3

Regt HQ

1. **Range.** 
   1. **Light Mortar 120mmBrandt.**
      1. Max range - 6515/7160m.
      2. Plg range - 5200m.
   2. **Field105 mm IFG.** 
      1. Max range - 17200m.
      2. Plg range - 13760m.
   3. **Field (SUPPORT) 105 mm Abbot.** 
      1. Max range - 17366m.
      2. Plg range - 13900m.
   4. **Med M-46 130mm.** 
      1. Max range - 27490m.
      2. Plg range - 22000m.
   5. **Med FH 77B 155mm.** 
      1. Max range - 24000m.
      2. Plg range - 19000m.

* 1. **Heavy mortar 160mm.** 
     1. Max range - 9600m.
     2. Plg range - 7700m.

**Role of Artillery in Attack and Defense**

1. **Attack.** 
   1. **Preparatory Bombardment.** Main attack se pehle Artillery dwara ki jaane wali golabari jisme dushman ke troops, defenses, weapons, communication lines ko nuksan pahunchaya jata hai. Preparatory Bombardment ke waqt apni artillery dushman ke upar ek saath iss tarah golabari karti hai ki apna surprise kayam rahe.
   2. **Covering Fire.** Woh fire support jiska maksad dusman ke post aur hathiyaron ko neutralise karna hai taaki dushman attack ke waqt humare assaulting troops ko engage naa kar paye.
   3. **Harrasing Fire.** Woh fire jo dushman ke move or supplies par giraya jaye jisse use aaram karne ka mauka na mile aur woh jaldi deploy ho jaaye aur uska time plan bigar jaaye.
   4. **Counter Bombardment.** Dushman ke gun locatiom, fire control system aur locating devices ko barbad karna jo humare upar fire daal rahe ho ya daal sakta hain.
   5. **Defensive Fire.** Dushman ke Counter Attack ki taiyari ko disorganize karna ya dushman ke chal rahe CA ko disorganize karna.
   6. **Smoke Screen.**
2. **Defence.** 
   1. **Defensive Fire.** Yeh teen prakar ke hote hain:-
      1. **Defensive Fire in Depth.** Dushman ke concentarion Area se hote hue Assembly Area aur FUP tak select kiye defensive fire ko Defensive Fire in Depth kehte hain.
      2. **Close Defensive Fire.** Apne FDL se aage aur dushman ki Start Line tak. Mukhya mudda dushman ke assault ko FUP par hi todna hota hai.
      3. **Defensive Fire SOS.** Apne FDL ke bilkul najdik dushman ke assault ko barbad karne ke liye.Jahan par dushmanhamen surprise kar sakta hai.
   2. **Counter Bombardment**. Dushman ke gun locatiom, fire control system aur locating devices ko barbad karna jo humare upar fire daal rahe ho ya daal sakta hain.
   3. **Covering Fire.** Apne Counter Attack ko cover karne ke liye.

15. Kisi bhi ladai mein Artillery ek ahem bhumika nibhati hai chahe woh attack ho ya defence. Kargil ki ladai bina Artillery ke nahin jeeti ja sakti thi. Infantry ko har kadam par fire support dene ki kabliyat hi Artillery ko ladai ka ek abhinn hissa banata hai.

**CHAPTER - 15**

**ARMOUR & MECHANISED INFANTRY BATTALION KA**

**ORGANISATION AUR EMPLOYMENT**

**GS pamphlet, Inf trg vol IV, Sec leading and Pl tac 2007.**

**Pahunch**

1. Aaj ke is daur mein ladai akele infantry ke bute par nahin jeeti ja sakti hai. Combined Arm siddhant aaj ki ladai ka mool aadhar hai. Samay ki najakat ko dekhte hue Armour aur Mechanised ko Force multiplier ki tarah istemal karna nihayat hi zaroori hai. Infantry wale hone ke naate yeh hamare liye bahut zaroori hai ki hum Armour aur Mechanised Regiment ki banawat, organisation, characteristics, role aur tactics ke baare mein jaankari ho.
2. Mechanised infantry ka concept infantry ko mobility, operations mein protection, radio communication aur fire power pradan karna hai. Infantry Combat Vehicle (ICV) Infantry ki in zarooraton ko pura karta hai taki infantry Armour aur Mechanised forces ke saath milkar kaam kar sake.

**Organisation aur Banawat**

1. Armour aur Mechanised infantry ki banawat iss prakar se dhyan mein rakhkar banai gayi hai ki ladai ke dauran yeh infantry ko ache tarike se support kar sake. Maidani aur retile ilaqe mein inki ahmiyat aur bhi jiyada ho jaati hai. Inka mukhya uddesh infantry ko jiyada mobility aur fire power muhaiya karana hai. Inhi baton ko madde najar rakhte hue inka organisation niche diye hue prakar se banaya gaya hai.

**RHQ**

**COMD TKS**

**(**

**3)**

**HQ SQN**

**IC TROOP**

**RECCE**

**TROOP**

**X JEEPS &**

**07**

**.30**

**MG**

**LRW**

**ADMINISTRA**

**TION TROOP**

**SABRE SQN**

**(**

**THREE**

**)**

**SQN HQ**

**2**

**XCONT TKS**

**ADMINISTRA**

**TION TROOP**

**TK TROOPS**

**FOUR**

**)**

**(**

**3**

**XTKS**

1. **Armour Regt.**
2. Armour Regimentt ka manpower aur equipment niche diye hue table mein bataya gaya hai:-

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | **OFFR** | **JCO** | **OR** |
| ARMR | 27 | 41 | 489 |
|  | AT T | |  |
| AMC | 1 | - | - |
| EME | 1 | 3 | 56 |
| AEC | - | 1 | 2 |
| SIG | - | - | 5 |
| **TOTAL** | **29** | **45** | **552** |

(a) TKS - 45

(b) ARVs - 03

(c) COMD APC - 01

(d) AMB APCs - 02

(e) FRT APCs - 03

1. Mechanised infantry Battalion ki banawat:-

**Mech Inf Bn**

Int Sec

2)

,1,

(1

RP Sec

(0

7)

,0,

Adm Pl

(1

,

4,93)

X Secs

3

XDets/ Sec

2

Recce Pl

1,23)

,

(1

Jonga

7-

Sig Pl

(1.2,25)

Med Pl

(1

,0,

6)

1-

ICV Amb

LRW

5,64)

(1

,

Coy HQ

2)

,0,

(1

HQ Coy

,

(4

7,154)

Adm Pl

,

(0

3,22)

X Sec

3

(0.0,11)

1-

ICV

Mech Pl (3)

(1

2,37)

,

X Dets

2

(0

,

2,14)

1-

ICV

mm Mor

1-81

Mor Sec

2,14)

,

(0

Coy HQ

7)

(2

,0,

ICV

2-

Mech Coy (3)

(5,11,164)

Bn HQ

,

7,21)

(5

ICV

3-

1. Battalion ki str is prakar hai:-

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | **OFFR** | **JCO** | **OR** |
| REGT | 24 | 47 | 673 |
|  | AT T | |  |
| AMC | 1 | - | 02 |
| EME | 1 | 05 | 64 |
| AEC | - | 1 | 02 |
| SIG | - | - | 5 |
| **TOTAL** | **26** | **53** | **741** |

**Armour aur Mechanised Forces ka Role**

1. Armour ke employment ke siddhant nimnlikhit hain:-
   1. Speed.
   2. Concentration.
   3. Control.
   4. Fire aur mov.
   5. Surprise.
   6. Infantry ke saath taal mel.
2. Offensive ops mein Armour ka role is prakar hai:-
   1. Tank ki aamne samne ki ladai mein.
   2. Kamjor Defences ko Armour dwara kabja karna.
   3. Depth objective ko kabja karna.
   4. Breakout ke waqt.
   5. HB/para/air assault troops ke saath link up.
   6. Amphibious operations.
   7. Advance ke dauran advance, rear ya flank guard ka kaam karna.
3. Defensive operations mein Armour ka role:-
   1. Nodes ke beech ke gap ko secure karna.
   2. Dushman ke HB/para/air assaulttroops ke khilaf.
   3. Counter Penetration.
   4. Counter Attack.
   5. Mobile Defence.
   6. Early warning ka kaam karna.
   7. Dushman ke trawl tanks ko barbad karna.
4. Dushman ke lean on armour ko barbad karte hue apne FZDLs ko by pass hone se rokna.
5. Armour ke saath milkar Mechanisedinfantryattack mein bahut kargar hota hai.

Attack mein Mechanisedinfantryka role is prakar hai:-

* 1. Armour ke sath milkar objective par assault karna aur capture karna.
  2. Objective par dismounted attack karna.
  3. Assy area, FAA, FUP aur Firm base ko secure karna.
  4. Assaulttroops ke flk ko protect karna.
  5. Armour dwara kabja kiye hue objective ko pakad kar rakhna.
  6. DCB aur canal ki ladai mein obstaclepar crossing sthapit karna.
  7. Recce in Force.

1. Defence mein Mechanisedinfantryka role:-
   1. Covering troops ya Screen ka hissa ban kar forward zone mein ladna.
   2. Gps ke upar nigrani rakhna.
   3. Counter Attack aur Counter Penetration mein hissa lena.
   4. Dushman ke AB/HB forces ke khilaf karwai.
   5. Amphibious operations ke dauran dushman ke Mechanised Forces ko paani mein hin neutralise karna.
   6. Road blocks lagana.
2. Maidani aur retile ilaqe mein Armour aur Mechanised Forces ki ahmiyat bahut jiyada hai. Dushman ke upar inka shock effect hi inki sabse badi khubi hai. DCB, canal or Nodes ki ladai inko hi dhyan mein rakh kar plan ki jaati hai. Isiliye yeh bahut zaroori hai ki infantryka taal mel inke saath bahut achha ho.

### CHAPTER – 16

**PATROLLING**

**(a) GS Pamphlet, The planning and conduct of Patrols, Ambushes and Raids – 2007.**

**(b) GS Pamphlet, Infantry Training Volume IV – Tactics, Infantry Section Leading and Platoon Tactics – 2007**.

**Patrol ki Kism aur Task**

1. Isse pahle ki ham patrol ki kism ke bare mein jankari haasil Karen, yeh janna zaruri hai ki patrol ka uddesh kya hai. Patrolling ke do mukhya uddesh hote hain.
   1. Dushman ki khabar haasil karna
   2. Dushman ko apni khabar haasil karne se rokna.
2. In zaruraton ko madhyanazar rakhte hue patrols ko ham do kismon mein baant sakte hain.
   1. Recce Patrol.
   2. Protective ya hifazati patrol.
3. Recce aur protective patrol ki kismon ke alawa patrol ko special task bhi diye ja sakte hain, jaise dushman ke dump ko barbad karna, shadow patrol karna ya stay behind party ka kam karna.Lekin aise patrolsupportecial misson patrol kahlata hai. Islie kam ke lihaj se patrol ko recce aur protection ka kam hi behtar hai.

**Recce Patrol**

1. Recce ka matlab hai, bagair lare dekhbhal se dushman ke bare mein khabar haasil karna. Is liye recce patrol ka mukhya mudda hai ki woh khabar haasil kare aur use upar wale commander tak pahuchaye, taaki woh commander us khabar par amal kar sake. Recce patrol ki banawat is prakar se hoti hai ki woh chhup kar aur dekhbhal se khabar haasil karte hain; inka kam larna nahin hota hai, yeh sirf apna bachavke liye larte hai ya jab aisi halat ho ki khabar ko bina lare haasil karna mumkin na ho.
2. **Nafri aur Banawat.** Recce patrol ki nafri am taur par ek patrolleader aur do ya teen jawanon ki hoti hai. Patrol ki ahmiyat ko dekhkar patrol leader kisi Officer, JCO ya NCO ko niyukt kiya jata hai. Jab kabhi patrol base banane ki zarurat ho, ya khabar haasil karne ke liye dushman par fire karnne ki zarurat ho tab patrol ki nafri ko badhaya ja sakta hai.
3. **Task.** Recce patrol ko nimnlikhit task diye ja sakte hain:-
   1. Dushman ke defence ka failav aur auto/ anti tk hathiyaron ka pata lagana.
   2. Dushman ki pahchan, irada, adaten aur karwai ki khabar haasil karna.
   3. Zamin ke bare mein jankari haasil karna.
   4. Obst ke bare mein khabar haasil karna .
   5. Dushman ke EW, gun position, communication ke bare mein khabar haasil karna.
   6. Dushman ke reserve ki str, location aur sambhav task ke bare mein jankari haasil karna ya haasil kiye information ko check karna.

**Protectve Patrol**

1. Protective ya hifazati kamon par lagi hui patrol ko larne ke liye taiyar hona chahiye islie iski banawat usi mutabiq honi chahiye. Protective patrol ki nafri ek section se lekar company tak ho sakti hai. Agar zarurat ho to Arty OP aur MFC bhi is patrol mein diya ja sakta hai. Ek hifazati patrolko nimn task diye ja sakte hain:- (a) Fwd zone par chhaye rahna.
   1. Dushman ke ane wale raste par dekhbhal karna aur dushman ko rokna.
   2. Defence locality ke samne ya pichhe dead ground ko cover karna.
   3. Un obst ko cover karna, jo main position se cover nahin hote.
   4. Flanking unit / sub unit se lagao.
   5. Defenceposition ke alawa kisi ahmiyat wali jagah ko occupy karnaa.
   6. Dushman ki patrols ko khabar haasil na karne dena aur use barbad karna.
   7. Dushman ki khabar haasil karna aur EW dena.
   8. False front zahir karna.
2. Abhi tak apne Recce aur protective patrol ke bare mein jankari haasil ki. Recce aur protective patrol mein mukhya antar iss prakar hain:-

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **S/No** | **Recce Patrol** | **Protective Patrol** |
| (a) | Iski karwai zaruri nahin hai ki bhejne wali unit se sambandhit ho. | Iska sanchalan aur karwai us unit se sambandhit hai jiski yeh raksha kar raha ho. |
| (b) | Apni raksha ke alawa koi surakshatmak zimmewari nahin hai. | Iska uddesh ek khas approach se dushman ke patrols ko khabar haasil karne se rokna hai. |
| (c) | Iska uddesh khabar haasil karna. | Ek khas approach ko dushman ko na istemal karne dena aur us par chhaye rahna hai. |
| (d) | Dushman ko bina pata lage khabar haasil karna. | Dushman ko khabar haasil karne se rokna aur false fron zahir karna. |
| (e) | Do ya teen numaindon ka chota group. | Task ke adhar par ek section /Platoon tak ke troops.Apne task ke mutabiq equipment /weapons liye hue. |
| (f) | Kam se kam saman. | Defensive position ikhteyar karta hai. |
| (g) | Kaam khatam par wapsi. | Hukam par/pahle se diye hukam par withdrawal. |

**Taiyari**

1. Is baat ka dhyan rakha jaye ki troops ko ek dam mushkil aur khataranak patrol par na bheja jaye. Inko darje se tartib di jaye. Patrol par jane wale map reading aur battle craft mein mahir hone chahiye. Iske alawa team ke taur par kam karne ka jazba aur apne kam ko pura karne ke kabliyat par pura bharosa hona chahiye.

**Planning**

1. Kisi bhi patrol ko bhejne se pahle nimn baton par gaur karna chahiye :-
   1. Patrol ka uddeshya.
   2. Dushman ke bare mein khabar.
   3. Task ke bare mein khabar.
   4. Patrol ki nafri.
   5. Patrol ka samay (duration).
   6. Security aur discipline.
   7. Koi zaruratshuda numayanda/cheez jaise tech representative, fire support ya communication.
   8. Jane ki taiyari.
   9. Padosi unit se mel milap.

**Taiyari**

1. Patrol ki kamyabi zyadatar patrolleader ki pahal aur hunar par nirbhar hai. Phir bhi patrol ke bahar jane se pahle agar puri taiyari ki jaye to kaam ko kamyabi ke saath pura karne mein madad milegi. Puri taiyari ke liyeBattalionCommander, CompanyCommander aur PatrolCommander ki zimmewari hai.

**Command**

1. Patrol ke task aur nafri ko dhyan mein rakhte hue, BattalionCommander yeh faisla karenge ki patrolcommanderOfficer,JCO ya NCO hoga.

**Briefing**

1. Khas mushkil task wali patrol ko battalioncommander hi brief karenge. Lekin aam patrol ko Company Commander hi brief karta hai. Battalion mein patrol master 2IC hota hai jo patrols ki harkat ko coordinate karta hai.

**Fire Support**

1. BattalionCommander ye faisla karenge ki kya Artillery ya Mortar fire se support dena zaruri hai. Agar fire support zaruri hai, to woh FOO ya MFC ka bandobast karenge.

**Dress Aur Equipment**

1. BattalionCommander ki taraf se aam policy mukarrar hogi, lekin CompanyCommander tafsil mein faisla karenge. Yahi baat hathiyaron ke fasla karne par bhi lagu hoti hai.

**Communication**

1. Jab zarurat ho to radio se milap ka bandobast kiya jayega. Jab shatru nazdik hai to radio ka bahut kam istemal kiya jata hai.

**PatrolLeader ki Zimmewarian**

1. **Patrol ki Banaawat.** Jab hidayaten mil jati hain jismen andazen nafri banti jati hai tab patrol ki pakki nafri ka faisla karega aur jane wale jawanon ka chunav karega.
2. **Hathiyar.** Halke aur chote range wale hathiyar mobility ke liye behtar hain. LMG aur 51mm Mortar tab behtar hain jab khabar haasil karne ke liye ishara zaruri ho.
3. **Dress.** Dress aisa ho jo faidemand ho aur kam wazan wala ho aur awaz na paida kare.
4. **Equipment.** Yeh jitna halka ho utna behtar hai Patrolleader ko apnesaath Bino, Compas Map aur Morphine lena chahiye.
5. **Warning Order.** CompanyCommander ya patrolleader ko patrol ke bare mein warning order dena chahiye. Isse yeh faida hoga ki jawan ko taiyari aur rest ka samay mil jata hai.
6. **Recce aur Tajwiz.** Apni tajwiz banane se pahle patrolleader ko hawai photo aur pahle ki patrol ki report ko map ke saath study kar lena chahiye.
7. **Briefing.** Patrol par jane se pahle har jawan ko achhi tarah se brief kar lena chahiye taki mauka parne par achhi tarah se karwai kar sake. Agar zamin ijazat de, to briefing aisi jagah se ki jaye jahan se pura ilaqa nazar ata hai, jahan ye mumkin nahin, wahan sand model ya cloth model ka istemal kiya jana chahiye.
8. **Rehearsal.** Rehearsal mein nimn baton par gaur kiya jaye:-
   1. Sab formation mein indl ki position.
   2. Formation change karne ka tarika.
   3. Obstacles paar karne ka tarika.
   4. Dushman milne par karwai.
   5. Ambush hone par karwai.
   6. Objective/patrol base par karwai.
   7. Casualty evacuate karna.
   8. Fire hone par karwai.
   9. Halt par karwai.
   10. Field signal.
9. **Final Inspection.** Patrol ko task par jane se pahle, patrolleader ko inspection kar lena chahiye jismen yeh yakin karen ki:-
   1. Sabhi jawan jane ke liye fit hain.
   2. Koi faltu kajaz/ docu nahin.
   3. Camouflage.
   4. Equipment thik fit hain.
   5. Bandobast ka sabhi saman le liya.
10. **Karwai.** Patrol ki karwai teen bhagon mein puri hoti hai, jo is prakar hain:-
    1. Forward Defended Locality se patrol base tak harkat.
    2. Patrol Base se age ki karwai aur khabar haasil karna.
    3. Patrol base se wapasi ki karwai.

**Forward Defended Locality se Patrol Base tak Harkat**

1. Patrol ko jane se pahle kisi Forward Defended Localitypar ikattha kiya jayega aur use infiltration mein madad ke liye Artillery fire ya dusre tarike se deception diya jayega.

**Route**

1. Patrol ko aisa rasta chunna chahiye, jismen dushman ke milne ka kam se kam andesha ho aur movement asan ho.

**Formation**

1. Patrol ki formation nimn baton par nirbhar karegi:-
   1. Control.
   2. Ground ya zamin.
   3. Security.
   4. Chhupaav.

**Harkat**

1. Moujuda hathiyaron ke kargar fire ko dekhte, hue din ke samay patrol ko karwai karna mushkil hoga islie patrolling zyadatar raat ko hi hogi. Raat ko harkat bounds ki madad se ki jati hain.

**Patrol Base**

1. Patrol base woh jagah hai jahan se koi chhotti patrol operate karti hai. Patrol base un halaton mein lagana zaruri hota hai jab:-
   1. No man's land zyada bada / faila/chaura ho.
   2. Do ya do se zyada subsidiary patrol bhejne hon.
   3. Alag alag chhote patrol bhejne se raste mein dushman ke saath dakhlandazi ka andesha ho.
2. **Patrol Base Mein nimn Khubian Honi Chahiye.** 
   1. Dushman ke obsevation aur small arms se bachav mein ho.
   2. Zarurat parne par wahan se bachav ho sake.
   3. Asani se pahchan mein aa sake.
   4. Dushman ka DF na ho.

**Patrol Base Pakarne ki Karwai**

1. Patrol, patrol base se kuchh duri par deploy ho jati hai aur kuch nafri patrol base ki search karti hai, aur agar wahan par dushman na ho to wapas aakar patrolleader ko khabar dete hai. Puri patrol aisi halat mein patrol base mein chali jati hai,agar kisi wajah se patrol base ka istemal karna mumkin na ho to patrol, alternatepatrol base mein chale jati hai.Alternatepatrol base ka chunav pahle hi kar lena chahiye.
2. Patrolbase pahunchne par karwai :-
   1. Bhari saman,stretcher adi chora jata hai.
   2. Subidiary patrol apne zimmewari ke ilake mein ate hain aur khabar haasil karke wapis ate hain.
   3. Patrolleader unki debriefing karta hai.
   4. Get away man ki briefing ki jati hai.
   5. Patrol wapas harkat karti hai.

**Khabar Haasil Karne ka Tarika**

1. Subsidiarypatrol dekhbhal se khabar haasil karti hai. Agar phir bhi khabar haasil na ho to harkat ya fire se dushman ko fire karne par majboor karti hai.
   1. Observation.
   2. Harkat.
   3. Fire.

**Wapsi**

1. Patrol ko wapas ate samay alag raste ka istemal karna chahiye. Agar dushman pichha kar raha ho to use dhoka dene ke liye chotti tukdion mein bant kar milap tora ja sakta hai. Agar patrol ne khabar haasil kar li ho aur mauka mile to wapasi mein dushman par mauke ka ambush lagaya ja sakta hai,iska tal mel patrol par ane se pahle kar lena chahiye.

**Debriefing**

1. Nimn pts dhyan mein rakhen:-
   1. Wahi kare jisne patrol ko brief kiya ho.
   2. Patrol ke wapas ane ke baad jaldi kiya jaye.
   3. Patrol ke sabhi jawan, debriefing mein shaamil hone chahiye.
2. Patrolling larai ki ek bahut hi aham karwai hai, jiske liye jawanon ko bahut hi unche darje ki training ki zarurat hai.Agar troops ka patrolling ka darja achha hai to woh larai ke har operations mein kamyab rahne ki umeed rakh sakta hai.

**PATROL LEADER KI BRIEFING**

1. **Zamini Nishan.** Jo briefing se talluk rakhte hain.(Agar briefing sand model ya cloth model par ho jaye to patrol ko last light se pahile zamin dikhana behtar hoga).
2. **Khabar Dushman.** 
   1. Positions, jinke bare mein jankari haasil ki gayi ho.
   2. Rukawaton ke bare mein.
   3. Nafri aur hathiyaron ke bare mein.
   4. Koi khas adaten.
   5. Koi khas equipment ke bare mein yadi malum ho, jaise battle-field surveillance radar.
3. **Khabar Apni.** 
   1. Disposition.
   2. Apna yadi koi patrol bahar gaya hai to uske bare mein jankari.
   3. Apne patrol ki khabar baki sub-uniton aur flanking uniton ko di gayi hai.
4. **Task.**

Hamara patrol in sawalon ka jawab layega.(Misaal)

* 1. Kya ilaqa unchi zamin mein dushman hai, agar hai to uska deployment kya hai.
  2. Kya dushman ne apne ilaqe mein rukawaten lagayi hain. agar hain to uski jagah, kism tatha tadad kya hai.

1. **Tariqa.** Task ko teen bhagon mein banta gaya hai :-
   1. **Bhag I.** FDL se patrol base tak ki harkat.
   2. **Bhag II.** Khabren haasil karna.
   3. **Bhag III.** Wapsi.

**Note** :-Bhag I mein patrol base ki zarurat na ho to RV tak ki harkat.

1. **Bhag I.** FDL se patrol base/RV tak ki harkat.
   1. Patrol ki banawat.
   2. Samay bahar jaane tatha aane ka.
   3. Rasta.
   4. Bound tatha RV.
   5. Support.
   6. Formation.
   7. Order of march aur navigation.
   8. Raftar.
   9. Control ke liye ishare.
   10. Halt ya rukawat par karawai.
   11. Shatru milne par karawai.
   12. Surprise aur roshni hone par karawai.
   13. Fire kholne aur hathgola fenkne ke liye zaruri hidayaten
   14. Patrol base kahan hogi aur pakarne ki tartib, yadi jarurat ho to.
   15. Patrol base mein karawai.
   16. Alternative patrol base ki jagah, uski recce aur pakarne ki halat.
2. **Bhag II.**  Khabren haasil karna.

Agar task ko chhoti-chhoti tolion dwara (subsidiary Patrols), Pura kar rahen ho to karawai:-

* 1. **Subsidiary Patrol No 1.** 
     1. Banawat.
     2. Task.
     3. Rasta.
     4. Samay, jaane aur aane ka.
     5. Task pura karne ka tariqa.
  2. **Subsidiary Patrol No 2.**
     1. Banawat.
     2. Task.
     3. Rasta.
     4. Samay, jaane aur aane ka.
     5. Get away man ki baant our uska kaam.

1. **Bhag III.** Wapasi.
   1. Rasta.
   2. Bound tatha RV.
   3. Formation.
   4. Order of March.
   5. Navigation.
   6. Mine Field mein pahunchne par karrawai.
2. Rehearsal ke liye samay aur jagah.
3. Hathiyaron ko test karna.
4. **Inspection.**
5. **Bandobast.**

* 1. Dress equipment.
  2. Paani.
  3. Hathiyar.
  4. Ammunition.
  5. Medical.
  6. Zakhmi casuality ko uthana.
  7. Qaidi mila hai to uske liye karwai.

1. **Milap.** 
   1. Milap ke sadhan.
   2. Wapas ane par kis kis ko aur kahan report karenge.
   3. Pass word.
2. Koi shak ya sawal.
3. Ghari milao.

**CHAPTER - 17**

**AMBUSH**

**(a) GS Pamphlet, The planning and conduct of Patrols, Ambushes and Raids – 2007.**

**(b) GS Pamphlet, Infantry Training Volume IV – Tactics, Infantry Section Leading and Platoon Tactics – 2007.**

**Ambush ki Paribhasha**

1. Ambush ka matlab hai ki chalte ya thore samay ke liye ruke hue dushman par kisi chhupi hui position se aise achanak hamla karna jis par uska dhyan na ho ya jiski use ummeed na ho.

**Ambush ke Uddesh**

1. Ambush lagane ke kai uddesh ho sakte hain, jo kih is prakar hain:-
   1. Dushman ke jawan, uski garian, janwar ya transport ko zyada se zyada barbad karna.
   2. Intelligence ke lihaj se uski khabar haasil karna jaise pehchan ke nishan ya zaruri kagzat.
   3. Dushman ko is prakar darana ya tang karna ki woh apne bachao ke liye sena barhae.
   4. Dushman ko demoralise karna aur apni sena ka bharosa aur atmvishwas badhana.
   5. Dushman ke upar dar dalkar use itni savdhani baratne par majboor karna ki woh khulkar patrolling na kar sake.

**Ambush ke Prakar**

1. Ambush mukhya do prakar ke hote hain:-
   1. Mauke ka ambush. (b) Taiyari ka ambush.

**Mauke ka Ambush**

1. Jaise ki iske naam se jahir hai ki, aise prakar ka ambush mauka milne par lagaya jata hai. Yeh achanak samne ae dushman ke khilaf lagaya jata hai jiski pahle se ummeed ya taiyari na ho. Mauke ke ambush ki safalta in baton par nirbhar karti hai:-
   1. Commander ka pakka irada.
   2. Troops ki achhe darje ki sikhlai aur discipline.
   3. Jaldi se ambush lagane ki drills aur tej karwai.

**Taiyari ka Ambush**

1. Taiyari ka ambush khas tazweez banakar aur kisi khas uddesh ko haasil karne ke liye hi lagaya jata hai . Aam taur par iske liye itna samay hota hai ki tajwij taiyari aur rehearsal tafsil mein ki ja sake. Taiyari ke ambush ki chand ek vishehtaen hai jo is prakar se hain:-
   1. Ambush apni marzi ke mutabiq chuni hui jagah par lagaya jata hai.
   2. Dushman ke bare mein khabar kafi tafsil mein haasil hogi. (c) Recce taiyari aur briefing ke liye kafi samay hoga.
2. **Ambush ki Vishestaen.** Ambush ko kamyab banane ke liye kuch zaruri baten is prakar se hain:-
   1. **Surprise.**  Surprise haasil karne ke liye kuch bunyadi baten zaruri hain jo is prakar hain:-
      1. Khamoshi.
      2. Samajh aur hoshiyari ke saath layout aur siting.
      3. Security.
   2. **Control.** Ambush ki karwai ke dauran commander ka control honanihayat hi zaruri hai jisko niche likhe baton se haasil kiya ja sakta hai:-
      1. Achha briefing.
      2. Rehearsals.
      3. Achhi tarah jane hue signal.
      4. Commander ki durust position.
      5. Discipline.
   3. **Fire Power.** Kyonki samay kam hota hai is liye dushman ke upar bhari tadad mein aur ikattha fire dalna chahiye. Iske liye zaruri batein is prakar se hain:-
      1. Sahi scouting aur durust fire control.
      2. Automatics ka adhik istemal.
      3. Achhe fire plan jisse dushman ke bhag nikalne wale raston ko

Artillery ya Mortar fire se cover kiya ja sakta hai.

* + 1. Anti personnel ya claymore mines ka istemal.
    2. Grenades ka istemal.
    3. Area weapon jaise 51mm Mortar, 84mm RL, MGL,UBGL, aur rifle grenade ka istemal.
  1. **Saadgi.** Ambush ki planning mein jitni saadgi hogi utni hi adhik kamyabi ki sambhawana hogi. Agar briefing ya hukam kafi pechide aur kathin honge to galti hone ki sambhawana jyada hogi.
  2. **Pakka Irada.**Ek bar ambush kar lene ke baad use sahas aur pakka irade ke saath kamyab karna zaruri hai.
  3. **Self Discipline.** Ambush ko safal banane ke liye jawanon ka apna anushasan ale darje ka hona chahiye kyonki ambush ke dauran unhen zimmwari aur dimagi thakawat kafi ho sakti hai.

**Banawat**

1. Karwai ke lihaj se ambush party ki banawat is prakar se hai:-
   1. **Scout.** Inhen aam taur par 'look out' ya 'Listenning' man bhi kaha jata hai. Inko ambush mein dushman ke ane wale raston par lagaya jata hai taaki woh dushman ke aane ki khabar aur uski nafri ke bare mein pahle hi jankari de sake. Aise khabar ko savdhani aur suraksha se dene ka bandobast karna chahiye. Scouts, dushman ke ambush mein phans jane ke baad. Stops ka kam bhi kar sakte hain. Inhen BFSR, HHTI aur night vision devices jaise aale dene chahiye.
   2. **Stops.** Yeh do ya teen admion ka dal hota hai jo munasib jagah par is prakar lagaya jata hai ki dushman ko bhagne se rok sake aur use barbad kar dena.
   3. **Covering/Firing Party.**  Yeh ambush ki sabse aham toli hoti haijo kih achanak aur bhaari tadad mein dushman ke upar fire dalkar usko barbad karti hai. Yeh party ambush commander ke ishare par fire kholti hai aur band karti hai. Iske liye achha fire discipiline hona zaruri hai.
   4. **Reserve Party.** Commander dwara reserve party niche batae kisi bhi kam mein lagaye ja sakte hai:-
      1. Covering party dwara shuru ki prapt ki gai safalta ko banaye rakhna.
      2. Ho sakta hai covering party ke fire se dushman ko jyada nuksan na hua ho is halat mein reserve party ghabrae hue dushman par dhawa karke use jyada barbad kar sakti hai.
      3. Agar ambush party ka task indetification karna ho to reserve party ka kuchh hissa search party ke taur par kaam kar sakta hai.
      4. Reserve party ko dushman ki kisi bhi karwai ke khilaf istemal kiya ja sakta hai agar zarurat ho to covering party ke withdrawl ko cover karne mein bhi lagaya ja sakta hai.

**Siting**

1. Ambush ko lagane se pahle jagah ka chunav karte samay dhyan mein rakhne wali baten is prakar se hain:-
   1. **Surprise.** Ground aisa chuna jaye ki dushman ko zara bhi shak na ho. Aane aur jane ke raste chupao mein ho taaki akhri samay tak surprise kayam rahe.
   2. **Sambhavna.** Chunao kiye hue ilake mein dushman ke ane ki sambhavna adhik se adhik honi chahiye. Yeh dushman ki pichli harkaton aur sahi jankari par munnsar hoga.
   3. **Defensibility.** Surprise tut jane par, is jagah se ambush party apne bachao ke liye lar sakti ho, aur yeh jagah dushman ke mumkin DF task na ho.

* 1. **Fire Power.**  Killing ground saaf aur bara ho jismen dushman par bhaari tadad mein fire dala ja sake.
  2. **Concealment.** Kudrati concealed jagah honi chahiye.
  3. **Observation.** Chuni hue jagah se din aur raat ke samay door tak observation milna chahiye.

**Layout**

1. Sujhav ke taur par ambush ka layout is prakar ho sakta hai:-
   1. Approach ke ek taraf
   2. Approach ke donon taraf
2. Ambush ko approach ke ek tarf ya donon taraf lagate samay dhyan meinrakhne wali baten is prakar hain:-
   1. Ambush ko approach ke donon taraf lagane se dushman ko bhag nikalne se roka ja sakta hai saath hi bina troops ko failae jyada se jyada area ko cover kia ja sakta hai lekin iske kuchh nukshan bhi hain:-
      1. **Apne Troops ko Khatra.** Raaste ke amne samne apne troops ko echelon mein lagakar ya sakat safety area lagakar is khatre ko kam kiya ja sakta hai. Lekin phir bhi khatra yeh rahta hai ki dushman ko bhag nikalta dekh kar kahin apne koi jawan josh mein aakar apni fauz par fire kar sakta hai.
      2. **Control ki Kathnai.** Yeh tab hota hai jab ki plan ki badli karne ki zarurat hoti hai. Lekin isko bhi is prakar dur kiya ja sakta hai :-

(aa) Commander bant dena chahiye aur unhen jimmewari dene chahiye.

(ab) Achha fire control.

(ac) Achha fire signals.

* 1. Ambush ko ek taraf lagane se control achha hota hai lekin dushman ke bhag nikalne ki sambhawana rahti hai joki obstacles lagane se roka ja sakta hai.

**Siting of Weapons aur Troops**

1. Chahe ambush approach ke ek taraf ya donon taraf laga ho. Hathiyar aur troops lagate samay dhyan mein rakhne wali baten:-
   1. Automatics ka primary task marne ke ilake ko cover karta ho aur secondary task dushman ke bhag nikalne ke raste hon.
   2. Jis jawan par automatics ka cover na ho use rifle man dwara cover kiya jana chahiye.
   3. Dushman ke bhag nikalne wale raston ko booby traps, mortar fire ya rifle grenade ke fire se cover karna chahiye lekin booby traps do dhara hathiyar hai islie isse savdhani se lagana chahiye.
   4. Bait ka istemal karne se dushman ikatta target bhi ban sakta hai.

**Tajwiz**

1. Ek bada plan aur achhe taiyari safal ambush ki sidi hoti hai. Ambush ki tajwiz banate samay bahut tafsil mein soch vichar karna chahiye. Tajwiz banate samay in baton par detail mein soch vichar karna chahiye.
   1. **Dushman ke bare mein jankari.**  Jankari in baton ke bare mein haasil karne chahiye:-
      1. Dushman ke khasusiyat, adaten, organisationaur hathiyaron ke bare mein.
      2. Shatru ki position, unki harkat ka samay, nafri, le jane wale saman aur rakhsha ke bandobast.
      3. Dushman ki patrol ka uddesh, nafri, raste samay aur adaten.
      4. Working partion ki nafri.
      5. Dushman ke scouting ka tarika.
      6. Dushman ki jawabi karwai
      7. Harkat ka samay jawanon aur formation ke bich fasla aur tartib.
   2. **Ambush Site ka Chunao.** Ambush site ka chunao karte samay dhyan mein rakhne wali baten:-
      1. Site aur usko pakarne ka tarika.
      2. Shakiya na ho.
      3. Ambush partion ko lagane ki jagah kafi ho.
      4. Position tak pahunchna aur pichhe tak harkat ke raste.
      5. Ambush site ke nazdik woh position jahan commander ki recce ke dauran party thahrathi hai.(RV).
      6. Dushman ke bhag nikalne ke raste.
      7. Ambush complete hone ke baad RV ka sthan.
   3. **Ambush ki Nafri.** Ambush ki nafri aur banawat per niche likhe baten asar dalegi:-
      1. Uddesh.
      2. Dushman ki jawabi karwai vishestaen aur uski nafri.
      3. Zamin ki banawat.
      4. Dushman ke ane aur bhag nikalne ke raste.
      5. Apni fauj ka withdrawl.
      6. Control.
      7. Automatic hathiyar kitne mil sakte hain.
   4. **Fire Support.** Ambush ki kamyabi ke liye yeh zaruri hai ki dushman par bhari tadad mein fire giraya jaye kyonki samay bahut kam hota hai. Fire support ke liye zaruri batein:-
      1. Tafsil mein briefing.
      2. Achha shooting aur fire control.
      3. Zyada se zyada automatics ka istemal.
      4. Mortar grenade fire ka istemal.
      5. Sub group mein apasi achhe milap ke sadhan.
      6. Achha fire plan jismen Artillery aur Mortar fire shamil ho.
   5. **Control and Coordination.** Ambush party commander ka sabhi tolion par achha control hona chahiye. Control haasil karne ke liye zaruri baten:-
      1. Ambush ko hoshiyar karne ke liye pahle se mukarar ishare.
      2. Dushman ke ane ke ishare
      3. Fire kholne aur band karne ke ishare
      4. Ambush party ki harkat aur us ilake mein kisi aur partion ka apasi coordination.
      5. Ambush ke har ek admi ko zimmewari ke ilake dena chahiye.
   6. **Surprise and Discipline.** Ambush ki kamyabi bahut had tak surprise par nirbhar hoti hai surprise haasil karne ke liye zaruri baten:-
      1. Khamoshi.
      2. Camouflage and Concealment.
      3. Ambush site ka chunao.
      4. Dushman ko dhoka dene ke har bar alag alag tarike.
   7. **Taiyari.**
2. Taiyari ke ambush mein niche likhe kramanusar karwai hogi:-
   1. **Warning Order.** 
      1. Ambush ki banawat.
      2. Briefing ke liye jagah aur samay.
      3. Jane ka samay.
      4. Bandobasti hidayaten.
   2. **Recce.** 
      1. Mar ka ilaka aur ambush position.
      2. Main body ka ambush tak rasta.
      3. RV aur us tak jane ka rasta.
      4. Pichhe hatne ka rasta.
      5. Alternative ambush position.
      6. Alag alag tolion ki jagah aur rasta.
   3. **Briefing.** 
      1. Asan aur tafsil mein.
      2. Cloth ya sand model par.
      3. Kisi ko koi shak na rah jaye.

* 1. **Rehearsal.** Jahan tak ho sake niche diye points par rehearsal vistar purvak ki jaye aur vaise hi zamin par ho, jis tarah ki zamin par ambush lagana hai.

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  |  |  |  | (i) | RV tak move aur formations. |
|  |  |  |  | (ii) | Nigrani ke liye bandobast. |
|  |  |  |  | (iii) | Waiting area mein deployment aur hifajat. |
|  |  |  |  | (iv) | Ambush site mein layout aur har admi ka kam. |
|  |  |  |  | (v) | Milap ke sadhan. |
|  |  |  |  | (vi) | Signals ks abhyas. |

* + 1. Booby traps aur mine lagane ka tarika aur zimmewari.
    2. Khud ambush ho jane par karwai.
    3. Hathiyar aur equipment ka test.
  1. **Inspection.** Akhiri inspection mein yakin karen ki koi chamkili aur awaz karne wali chiz na ho aur hathiyar aur ammunition ka mulaaiza kar liya jaye.

**Ambush Site Pakadna**

1. Ambush site ko surprise ko kayam rakhte hue pakadna chahiye taaki dushman ko shak na ho, karwai is prakar hogi:-
   1. Ambush ke liye rawanagi RV tak.
   2. Confirmatory Recce.
   3. Antim hukum, agar koi farq ho.
   4. Site ko pakadna.

**Ambush ke Liye Rawangi**

1. Ambush site ki chahe pahle se recce ki hui ho phir bhi sari toli ko lekar usmen jana theek nahin hoga. RV tak harkat tactically ki jayegi. Harkat ke dauran security ka pura dhyan rakha jayega.

**Confirmatory Recce**

1. Ambush RV mein pahunchne ke baad yeh zaruri hai ki ambush site pakarne se pahle uski recce kar li jaye. Iske liye party commander khud jayega aur alag alag tolion ke commanders ko bhi le ja sakta hai.

**Antim Hukam**

1. Recce ke baad agar commanderplan mein koi badli karta hai to bata dena chahiye. Final order chhote aur saaf hone chahiye aur niche likhe baten shamil kar sakte hain.
   1. Ambush ilake ka aur nazdiq wale ilake ka bayan.
   2. Commander ki final position.
   3. Jawanon ke kaamon ki rehearsal se jo farq ho.

**Site Pakadna**

1. Ambush site mein jane se pahle camouflage ki jaanch kar lena chahiye aur hathiyar cock kar lene chahiye. Position rear se pakarni chahiye aur harkat chhote chhote groups mein karni chahiye.
2. Position lene ka karan is prakar hoga:-
   1. Scouts position pakarta hai aur milap karta hai.
   2. Automatic hathiyar lekar killing ground cover kiya jata hai.
   3. Booby traps aur mines lagaye jate hai.
   4. Troops depth mein lagaye jate hain rear aur flank ki hifazat ke liye.

**Intezaar**

1. Surprise ko kayam rakhne ke liyetroops apni durust position chun kar intzar karen lekin iske dauran koi harkat, awaz nahin honi chahiye. Ambush site ke aas pass apni fauj ki bhi koi harkat nahi honi chahiye dushman ke ane ka signal milte hi chup chap alert karne ka tarika mukarar hona chahiye.
2. Zyada samay intezaar karna ho to aadmi apne hathiyar ke piche aram kar sakta hai lekin sentry niyukt honge aur har halat mein approach aur killing ground ko dekhbhal mein rakha jayega.
3. Jab sentry ya scouts dushman ko dekh le to weh signal karke puri party ko alert karte hain pure dushman killing ground mein aa jane ke baad ambush commander fire kholne ka hukam deta hai.
4. Puri ambush ki karwai is prakar hogi :-
   1. Scouts dushman ke ane ki warning dega.
   2. Pure ambush party ko chaukanna kiya jayega.
   3. Fire kholna.
   4. Hamla.
   5. Talashi.
   6. Withdrawl.

**Ambush se Bachao**

1. Dushman ke ambush se bachne ke liye chand ek niche likhe baten dhyan mein rakhne chahiye:-
   1. Apni karwai mein lagatar tabdili.
   2. Harkat hoshiyari se karni chahiye aur niche likhe baton ka dhyan rakhna chahiye.
      1. Scout ka istemal.
      2. Bound ka chunao.
      3. Durust formation.
      4. War dogs ka istemal.

**Ambush mein phansne par karwai**

1. Ambush mein phansi hue tukri ki karwai is prakar ho sakti hai :-
   1. Ambush par hamla karma.
   2. Pichhe hatna aur khatre se bach kar nikal jana.
   3. Zamin par letkar chhup jana. fazat ka bandobast.
   4. FOO aur MFC.

30. Ambush paramparagat yudh aur CI Ops ki ek bahut aham karwai hai. Ek SectionCommander hone ke nate yeh bahut jaruri hai ke use ambush ke karwai ka pura gyan ho taki jarurat parne par woh kam se kam samay aur causality ke saath dushman ko barbad kar saken.

**AMBUSH PARTY COMMANDER KI BRIEFING**

1. Zamini Nishan (Zarurat ke mutabiq).
2. Khabar
   1. **Dushman ke bare mein.** 
      1. Malum dispositions.
      2. Patrol ki harkat ya adaten.
      3. Aur koi malum khabar.
   2. **Apni Fauj ke bare mein.** 
      1. Apne patrol aur dusre ambush ke bare mein.
      2. Patrol ambush ke bare mein dushman ko khabar.
      3. Apne ilaqe mein aur koi karawai ho rahi ho to uske bare mein.
3. **Task.** Hamare irada aaj raat\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ baje se kal savere \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_baje tak ilaqa\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ mein ambush lagakar shatru ke \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ ko barbad karega aur pahchan ke nishan haasil karega.
4. **Tariqa.** Task teen bhagon mein pura hota hai.
   1. **Bhag I.** Ambush site tak harkat.
   2. **Bhag II.** Ambush.
   3. **Bhag III.** Wapsi.
5. **Ambush RV tak harkat.** 
   1. Nafri aur banawat.
   2. Samay bahar jane ka.
   3. RV tak rasta.
   4. Ambush RV ki jagah.
   5. Order of March.
   6. Formation.
   7. Navigation ki zimmewari.
   8. Bound tatha RV.
   9. Ambush RV mein pahunchne par karawai.
6. **Ambush Site ki Confirmatory recce.** 
   1. Recce party ki banawat.
   2. Rasta.
   3. Samay jane ka tatha aane ka.
7. **Ambush.** 
   1. Ambush ki jagah.
   2. Party ki banawat.
8. **Scout.** 
   1. Commander.
   2. Banawat tatha hathiyar.
   3. Jagah.
   4. Task.
   5. Milap ke sadhan.
   6. Control ke ishare.
      1. Shatru ke aane ki khabar.
      2. Pura shatru ambush site mein aane ki khabar.
9. **Covering Party.** 
   1. Commander.
   2. Banawat tatha hathiyar.
   3. Jagah.
   4. Task.
   5. Milap ke sadhan.
   6. Control ke ishare. Fire kholne aur band karne ke ishare.
10. **Reserve party.** 
    1. Commander.
    2. Banawat tatha hathiyar.
    3. Jagah.
    4. Task.
    5. Milap ke sadhan.
    6. Assault aur search ka ishara.
11. **Stop.** 
    1. Banawat tatha hathiyar.
    2. Jagah.
    3. Commander.
    4. Milap ke sadhan.
    5. Task.
    6. Control ke ishare.
       1. Dushman aane ki khabar ka.
       2. Fire band karne ka.
12. **Control ke Ishare ke liye.** 
    1. Fire kholne ka.
    2. Fire band karne ka.
    3. Withdrawal ka.
    4. Ambush site karne ka.
13. Ambush RV se ambush site tak jane ka rasta.
14. Ambush site pakarne ki tartib aur drill.
15. **Timings*.***
    1. Ambush pakarne ka akhiri samay.
    2. Ambush chorne ka samay.
16. Ambush ka dushman ko pata hone par kar awai.
17. Ambush ke baad ki RV.
18. Baad ki RV Tak Jane ka rasta.
    1. Stops.
    2. Scouts.
    3. Covering party.
    4. Reserve Party.
19. **Withdrawal/Ambush site ko chhorna.** 
    1. Agar ambush ka pata dushman ko pahle malum ho to.
    2. Task pura hone par.
20. **Bhag IIIWapsi.** 
    1. Check.
    2. Order of March.
    3. Formation.
    4. Bound tatha RV.
    5. Navigation ki zimmewari.
    6. Samay andar aane ka.
21. **Aam baten.** 
    1. Harkat ke dauran surprise hone par karwai.
    2. Halt par karwai.
    3. Para flair our very light hone par karrawai.
    4. Surprise aur dhoka dene ka prabandh.
22. **Hathiyaron ko check karna.** 
    1. Samay.
    2. Jagah.
23. **Rehearsal.** 
    1. Samay.
    2. Jagah.
24. **Antim Inspection.** 
    1. Samay.
    2. Jagah.
25. **Bandobast.** 
    1. Hathiyar tatha ammunition.
    2. Khana-Pani.
    3. Medical, dress our equipment.
26. **Milap.** 
    1. Pehchan ka ishara.
    2. Radio Set.
27. **Radio Set par Signal.** 
    1. Dushman aane ka.
    2. Fire kholne ka.
    3. Fire band karne ka.
    4. Assault our talashi lene ka.
    5. Withdrawal ya site chorne ka.
28. Password.
29. Koi shak ya Sawal.
30. Ghari Milao.

**CHAPTER - 18**

**RAID**

**a) GS Pub Ptl, Ambush & Raid 1991.**

**(b) GS Pamphlet, The planning and conduct of Patrols, Ambushes and Raids – 2007.**

**Aam Jankari**

1. Raid dushman ke ilaqe mein kisi khas mission ko haasil karne ke liye kiya jata hai. Raid mein zamin par kabza karne ka irada nahi hota hai.
2. **Raid ke Maksad.** Raid normal hamle se kathin aur jokhim bhara operations hai, isi liye iska natiza bhi aisa nikalna chahiye ki itna jokhim uthana jaiz ho. Raid ke nimn maksdad ho sakte hain:-
   1. Dushman ke troops ko bandi (prisoners) banana, dushman aur uski karwaiyon ke bare mein kisi vishisht (specific/ khas) khabar ko haasil karna ya uske Commanders aur mahatwapurna vyaktiyon (key pers) ko pakadna.
   2. Dushman ki kisi vishisht (specific/ khaas) det/ installations par kabza karna ya barbad karna e.g. command posts, communication ki facility (sahuliyat), depots, radar sites, headquarters etc.
   3. Kisi ek objective ko hadapna ya barbad karna, kabhi-kabhi objective par kuch der ke liye kabza bhi kiya jaa sakta hai jab tak hamare troops se link-up na ho jaye.
   4. Kisi ek ilaqe mein dushman ko tang (harass) karna, dhokha dena aur use ast-vyast (disrupt) karna (tartib bigarna) taki uska dhyan kisi dusre operations se dur ho jaye.
   5. CI operations mein raid atankwadi/ ugrawadion se nipatna ka aam tarika hain.
   6. Apne admiyon/ mitron ko chhudane ke liye bhi Raid kiya jata hai.
3. Yeh chhote paimane par ki gai sankriya(operations)hai jiske antargat dushman ki seema mein teji se ghusa jata hai. Raid ka uddesh,dushman ke bare mein suchna prapt karna, use ast vyast karna ya uski sansthapna/mukhyalaya ko nasht karna hai yeh kisi niyat msn ko pura karke Raid party ki yojna badh tarike se wapsi ke baad pura hota hai.
4. Raid ke dauran party ko nimn tgts diye ja sakte hain:-
   1. Dushman ki equipment aur supplies ko barbad karna ya nuksan pahunchana.
   2. Dushman ke installations ko barbad karna jaise ki:-
      1. Depots and dumps.
      2. Radar sites.
      3. Communicationke zariye.
      4. Command Post.
      5. Airfields/strips.
      6. Gun Areas.
      7. Headquarters.
      8. Transit Camps.
   3. Dushman ke supplies,equipment aur commander ko pakadna.

* 1. Dushman ki jyada se jyada casualty karna.

* 1. Dushman ki communication zone mein khatra paida karke use communication zone ke bachao ke liye troops tainat karne par majboor karna.

* 1. Jhuthi karwai se dushman ke dhyan ko dusri taraf batana.

1. **Raid aur Hamla mein Antar.** 
   1. **Surprise.** Raid main hamle ke banisupportat surprise ki ahmiyat jyada.
   2. **Asthai Kism.** Raid karke zamin par kabza sirf task pura hone tak hi rakha jata hai.
   3. **Nafri(Numerical Superiority).** Raid ki karwai kam nafri ke saath bhi ki ja sakti hai.
2. Raid ko mukamal taur par kamyab banane ke liye chand baaten hai jin par gaur

karna jaruri hai,jo ki is parkar hai:-

* 1. Tajwij aur taiyari tafsil mein ho(detailed platoong and preparation)
  2. Poshidgi(security), Surprise, aur deception.
  3. Poshida Pahunch(secret appch).
  4. Jaldi Hamla(lightning attack). Tez karwai.
  5. Dhoka aur tej withdrawal.
  6. Sada Plan.
  7. Unche darje ki trange.

1. **Grouping.** Raiding party chahe kitni bhi nafri ki kyon na ho use niche likhe groups mein bantna padega :-
   1. **Cut off Group.**  Is group ki nafri dushman ki mudakhlat ki takat aur kism par nirbhar hogi.Is group ko aise raid hone se pahle hi position mein lag jana chahiye aur inka kaam:-
      1. Dushman ki reinforcement ko objective tak pahunchne se rokna.
      2. Dushman ko objective se bahar na nikalne dena.
      3. Raiding party ko withdraw karne mein madad dena.
      4. Raid hone se pahle agar dushman ki reinforcement aa jaye to khabar dena.
2. **Support Group.**  Is group ka kaam assault group ko fire se madad dena hai.
3. **Assault Group.** Yeh raiding force ka mukhya group hai aur raid ki kamyabi isi group ki karwai per munnasar hai. Iske kaam is prakar se ho sakten hain:-

* 1. Sentries ko khamoshi se barbad karna.
  2. Rukawat ko breach ya door karna.
  3. Objective par dushman ko barbad karna aur objective par us waqt tak kabja rakhna jab tak task pura na ho jaye.
  4. Zarurat ke lihaj se task ko pura karna.
  5. Commander aur staff ko pakadna.
  6. Document lene ke liye daftar, command aur control ki garion ki talashi karna.

**Tajwij(Planning)**

1. Raid ki kamyabi gahrai mein ki hui tajwij aur commander ki sujh-boojh par nirbhar hoti hai. Ek commander ko raid ki tajwij banate samay in baton ko dhyan mein rakhna chahiye:-

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  |  | (a) | Task. |
|  |  | (b) | Khabar (information) |
|  |  | (c) | Zamin. |
|  |  | (d) | Nafri. |
|  |  | (e) | Fire support. |
|  |  | (f) | Control aur coordination. |
|  |  | (g) | Samay. |
|  |  | (h) | Surprise. |
|  |  | (j) | Bandobast. |
|  |  | (k) | Alternative plan. |

**Task**

1. Raid ki tajwij banate wakt commander ko task bilkul saaf hona chahiye aur task raid party ki kabliat ke andar hona chahiye.
2. **Khabar.**  Raid commander ko raid mukammal taur se kamyab banane ki liye tafsil mein khabar ka hona zaruri hai.Jin baaton ke bare mein khabar hona chahiye woh is tarah hain:-
   1. Objective ke ilake ki banawat aur uske bachao ki tartib.
   2. Dushman ki woh tamam fauj jo objective per madad ke liye jaldi aa sakti hai.
   3. Objective ke nazdik ke civilian logon ke taluqat.
   4. Objective tak jane aur lautne ka raasta.
   5. Mumkin RV.
3. Recce karte waqt jin baaton per dhyan dena chahiye woh is prakar hain:-
   1. Local guides agar milen to unhen istemal karna chahiye.
   2. Jab tak raid na ho jaye objective ki lagatar dekh-bhal karna.
   3. Dushman ko hone wale raid ke baare mein bilkul pata na lage.

**Zamin**

1. Tajwij banate samay zamin ki banawat ka khas dhyan rakhna chahiye. Zamin ke bare mein khabar pahle se gaya hua patrol, air photo,air maps, satellite photos se mil sakta hai.Tajwij banete wakt in baaton ka dhyan rakhna chahiye:-
   1. Objective.
   2. Dushman ke reinforcement ke liye raaste.
   3. RV ka ilaka.
   4. RV ke liye mumkin raaste.
   5. Patrol base ke liye munasib jagah.
   6. Withdrawal ke munasib raaste.
2. **Nafri.** Raiding party ki nafri in baaton per nirbhar hogi:-
   1. Task.
   2. Objective ki jagah aur kism.
   3. Objective per bachao ki nafri aur kism.
   4. Kitne troops mil sakten hain.
3. **Fire Support.** Raiding party ke apne direct fire karne wale hathiyaron par hi nirbhar rahna padega. Raid party ko 84mm RL aur ziyada se ziyada auto hathiyar le jane chahiye. Artillery aur mortar fire exfiltration ya withdrawl mein madad kar sakte hain isliye inke fire ke liye bhi pahle se hi prabandh kar lena chahiye.

**Control aur Coord**

1. Raid ki kamyabi ke liye chahiye ki raid party commander ka raid party per achchha control ho. Niche likhi baaten use madad de sakti hain:-
   1. Alag alag troops ke saath radio per milap.
   2. Tafsil mein briefing.
   3. Alag alag kaamon ke liye mukarar kiye hue ishare.
   4. Raid ke dauran raiding party commander ki munasib jagah.

**Samay**

1. Raid ki tajwij banate wakt commander ko samay ka theek andaza lagana chahiye taki raiding party ko objective tak harkat, apna task pura karne aur wapas aane mein mushkil na ho. Tajwij karte wakt samay ke baare mein, in baaton ko dhyan mein rakhna chahiye:-
   1. Samay aur duri ka khyal bhi karna chahiye. Raat ko harkat karne ke liye kafi samay dena chahiye.
   2. Agar objective ki achhi jankari hai to raid ko raat mein karna chahiye kyonki aisa karne se surprise haasil kiya ja sakta hai.Iske ilawa raat ke andhere mein withdrawal karne mein asani hogi.
   3. Agar objective ke baare mein jankari achhi nahin hai to raid ya to sham (dusk) ya subah (dawn) mein karna behtar hoga.
2. **Surprise,Security aur Deception.** Raid ek akasmik hamla hone ke karan iski safalta haasil kiya gaya surprise ke upar munnasar hai.Objective tak chup- chap pahunch aur poshidgi se raid ki tajwij banane ke upar ziyada dhyan diya jaye. Dushman ke sentries alarm na kar saken aur is prakar dushman ko ek dam surprise diya ja sakta hai. Dhoka dene ki har mumkin tarikon ka istemal kiya jaye taki raid kiya jane wale objective se dushman ke dhyan ko kisi dusri taraf badli kiya jaye.

**Bandobast**

1. Raid ki tajwij banate samay normal administration ke alawa faltu ammunition ko le jane aur baki load ki theek baant, first aid aur casualty evacuation ka bhi khas dhyan rakhna chahiye.

**Alternative Plan**

1. Aam taur per dekha gaya hai ki har plan theek usi mutabik nahin chalta jaise ki socha gaya ho.Isliye yah zaruri hai ki plan ki safalta ke liye alternative plan bhi tafsil mein socha jayen aur mauka milne per usko amal mein laya jaye.

**Taiyari**

1. Raid ki taiyari initial briefing ke saath shuru hoti hai. Taiyari kaam ke karam is prakar se hote hain:-
   1. **Initial Briefing.** Yeh briefing commander,raiding party commander ko shuru shuru mein karta hai. Ismen yeh baaten shaamil hoti hain:-
      1. Task.
      2. Nafri aur addl resources.
      3. Task khatam karne ka samay.
      4. Aur koi khas baat commander agar batana chahta ho.
   2. **Recce.** Raiding party commander initial briefing ke baad, raid ke liye khabren ikatthi karta hai. Yeh khabren who nakshe aur air photo se haasil karta hai aur apni raid ke liye tajwij banata hai jismen woh yah baaten shaamil karta hai:-
      1. Infiltration plan.
      2. RVs.
      3. Cut off groups ki jagah.
      4. Raid ki sima.
      5. Withdrawal ke raaste.
   3. Yeh kam karne ke baad raid commander apni tajwij banata hai. Ismen alag alag groups ke commanders ko le jata hai.Recce ke dauran woh in baaton ka faisla karta hai:-
      1. RV aur alternate RV.
      2. Patrol base aur alternatepatrol base ki jagah.
      3. RV aur patrol base mein jane ke raste.
      4. Patrol base se withdrawal ka rasta.
   4. **Detailed Briefing.** Recce karne ke baad raid party commander apni tajwij banata hai aur phir raid party ki briefing karta hai. Briefing sand model se karna chahiye.
   5. **Taiyari aur Rehearsals.** 
      1. **Taiyari.** Is mein in baaton per vichar karna chahiye:-
         1. Hathiyar aur equipment aur unki testing ya nirikshan.

(ab) Demolition charges.

(ac) Casualty evacuation.

* + 1. **Rehearshal.** Jahan tak mumkin ho troops ko puri karwai ki rehearsal karwani chahiye. Rehearsal ke dauran gaur karne wali baaten yeh hain:-
       1. Rehearshal wastawik (realistic) honi chahiye.

(ab) Ilake ka chunao aisa ho ki objective ke ilake se milta julta ho.

(ac) Rehearsal ka samay usi tarah ki roshni mein kia jaye jaisa ki

asli raid ke dauran lagu kia ja sakta hai.

(ad) Contigency plan ki rehersal.

* 1. **Akhiri Inspection.** Raid ke liye rawangi se pahle raid ke commanders ko jawanon aur unke hathiyar aur equipment ka mulaaiza kar lena chahiye. Inspection karte wakt niche likhi baaton per dhyan dena chahiye:-
     1. Hathiyar agar ho sake to fire karke yakin kar lena chahiye.
     2. Jawanon ko inspect karke yah yakin kar lena chahiye ki:-
        1. Bimar to nahin hai.

(ab) Ahmiyat wale kagzaat to nahin le ja raha hai.

(ac) Theek na fit hue equipment to nahin le ja raha hai.

**Karwai(Execution)**

1. Raid ki puri karwai aam taur per teen phase mein hoti hai:-
   1. **Phase I.** Infiltration.
   2. **Phase II.** Raid.
   3. **Phase III.** Exfiltration (wapsi).

**Phase I : Infiltration**

1. Phase I mein kaam ke karam is prakar se hai:-
   1. **Objective ko Rawangi aur RV tak Harkat**. Harkat ke dauran puri koshish karni chahiye ki raste mein dushman se muthbher na ho taki puri raiding party bina dushman ko pata chale apne objective per pahunch jaye. Agar raiding party ek se zyade raste istemal kar rahi hai to puri party ko objective ke najdik munasib RV per ikattha hona chahiye.
   2. **Patrol Base Ko Pakadna.** Patrol base ko pakarne se pahle ilake ki search kar lena chahiye aur yakin kar lena chahiye ki us ilake mein dushman na ho. Agar search ke dauran pata chalta hai ki dushman us ilake mein maujood hai to alternatepatrol base mein chala jana chahiye. Alternatepatrol base ko bhi pakarne se pahle achhi tarah search kar lena chahiye.
   3. **Confirmatory Recce.** Patrol base mein pahunchne ke baad raid party commander ko objective ke ilake ki confirmatory recce kar lena chahiye. Lekin is baat ka dhyan rakhna chahiye ki aisa karne se surprise no toot jaye.
   4. **Antim Briefing.** Iski zarurat usi waqt parti hai jab confirmatory recce ke baad raid party commander ne koi tabdili karni ho. Antim briefing mein sirf tabdilion ka hi zikar kiya jaye.

**Phase II Raid**

33. Phase II mein kaam ka kram, jab raiding party ka patrol base ko chhorne se lekar patrol base mein wapas aane tak is prakar se hai:-

1. **PatrolBase se Deployment Area tak Harkat.** Patrol base mein raid party bhari saman chhorne ke baad chhott- chhote groups mein apne deployment area ko harkat karti hai.
2. **Sentry Silencing.** Is task ke liye pahle se aadmi detail kiye hote hain. Is task ko pura karte waqt surprise ka dhyan rakhna chahiye.
3. **Fire kholna aur cease fire.** Zaurat parne par fire ek dam kholna chahiye. Fire kholna aur band karne ke liye pahle se ishara mukarar kar lena chahiye.
4. **Assault aur demolition tasks.** Objective ke pass pahunchne per cut off aur assault group apne task ko pura karne ke liye laga dena chahiye.Iske baad assault group teji seharkat karke objective per raid karta hai.Objective per kabja hone ke baad demolition party barood lagakar apna task ko pura karta hai.Yah sab kaam bahut teji ke saath hona chahiye taki raid party ko RV mein wapas aane mein koi samay barbad na ho.Agar raid silent ho to assault nahin kiya jata hai .Sirf demolition party chhup kar apne task ko pura karti hai.Raid ki kamyabi ke baad Assaultgroup support ki madad se withdrawal karta hai. Support group cut off ki madad se with drawal karta hai.Agar raid kamyab na hua to Assault group pahle se hi mukarar kie hue ishare par die hue ek ya ek se zyada patrol base per ikattha ho sakte hain.Woh aadmi jinka dushman pichha kar raha hai, wapas patrol base mein sidha nahin aana chahiye.Usko patrol base se door le jaye aur phir dushman se lagav tor kar patrol mein wapas aaen. Agar koi aadmi alag ho jata hai to unko chahiye ki phir se raid party ki saath RV ya patrol base mein milne ki koshish karen. Agar yah no ho sake to wapas apne FDLs mein aa jana chahiye.
5. **Exfiltration.** Withdrawal ke dauran dushman ko dhoka dena bari ahmiyat rakhta hai. Raid ke muftalif hisse se mukarar kie hue raston se die hue RV per ikattha ho sakte hain. Dushman ko dhoka dene ke liye tartibwar pichha karne se rokne ke liye raiding party chhote hisson mein ulte raaston ka istemal karte hue RV aur samay per ikattha hone chahiye. Iske baad puri party pichha karte hue dushman ko ambush karne wali koi karwai kar sakte hain.

39. Agar raid kamyab na hua ho aur dushman pichha kar raha ho to niche likhi hui bachao ki karwai karni chahiye:-

1. Support/ cut off group ko assault group ke withdrawl ko fire aur move se cover karna chahiye.
2. Woh jawan jin ke pichhe dushman nazdik ho unhen RV per jane ki bajaye ulti jagah aur muskil raste ka istemal karte hue lagao torna chahiye.
3. Aisa jawan jo toli se dhoka dene ke liye alag ho gae hon unhen RV per jane se pahle toli se lagao karne ki koshish karne chahiye.

**CI Ops mein Raid**

1. Insurgency grast ilake mein insurgents ke hideout ya camps par raid karna fauj ka ek basic operations hai. Is operation ki safalta khas taur par sahi khabar, surprise aur deception aur tej karwai par nirbhar karti hai. Agar yeh op safalta poorvak kiya jaye to isse insurgents ki kafi tadad mein casualty ho sakti hai aur uska hathiyar aur saman bhi jabt kiya ja sakta hai. Saath hi insurgents ke morale bhi gir jayega.

**Aam Raid aur CI Ops ke Raid mein Antar**

1. Halanki ek aam raid aur CI operations mein kiye gae raid ke buniyadi usul kafi milte julte hai phir bhi donon mein kuch antar hain. Yeh is prakar se hain:-
   1. CI operations ke raid mein troops tab tak objective se nahin nikalta hai jab tak task pura nahin ho jata hai. Camp ya hideout area ki tafsil se search ki jati hai.
   2. Insurgents se lagao nahi tutna chahiye. Ek baar agar assault launch ho jaye aur insurgents agar bhag rahe hon to unka peecha kiya jata hai.
   3. CI operations mein raid ka mudda zyada se zyada insurgents ko maarna ya pakadna hota hai.

**CI Ops mein Raid ki Atirikt Parties**

42. CI operations mein raid ke antar aur insurgentski raid hone par karwai ko madhynazar rakhte hue kuch atirikt partion ki zarurat parti hai. Woh is prakar se hain:-

1. **Stops.** Insurgentske bhagne ke raston par ek ya do gharon (tiers) mein stops lagana chahiye taki bhagte hue insurgents ko maara ya pakra ja sake. Raid ki karwai shuru hone se pahle stops ko apni position par lag jaana chahiye.
2. **Stay Behind Parties.** Yeh amuman dekha gaya hai ki insurgents jab bhagte hai to woh apna saman chupa dete hain aur raid party ke chale jaane ke baad is saman ko lene ke liyen aate hain. Agar raid ke baad ek thik nafri ki stay behind party peeche chori jaye to safalta haasil ho sakti hai. Iske liye is party ke paas communication ke saadhan aur 72 hrs ke liye administration ka saman hona chahiye.
3. **Pursuit Party.** Raid hone par insurgents bhagne ki koshish karte hain. Security forces ka mudda zyada se zyada insurgents ko maarna ya pakadna hota hai. Isliyen yeh zaruri hai ki ek pursuit party pahle se hi detail ki jaani chahiye. Is party ke saath tracker dog bhi hona chahiye. Is party ka task bhagte hue insurgents ka peecha karke unhe maarna ya pakadna hai.

**CI Ops mein Raid ke Usul**

1. CI operations mein raid ke dauran kuch khas baaten dhyan mein rakhni chahiye, woh is prakar se hai:-
   1. **Surprise.** Kharab mausam, raat ka samay, kharab visibility aur kathin raaste ka istemal surprise kayam rakhne mein madad karta hai. Jahan tak ho sake raid unchai se neechai ki taraf karna chahiye. Post se nikalte waqt alag alag rasto ka istemal karna chahiye.
   2. **Secrecy.** Raid ki safalta secrecy aur deception par nirbhar karti hai. Raid ki tajwij, taiyari aur move ko civilian population se chupa ke rakhna chahiye.
   3. **Security.** Harkat ke samay security barkarar rakhna bahut zaruri hai. Harkat chhupav mein aur bound to bound honi chahiye. Gaon aur civilian population se dur harkat honi chahiye. Raaston ka istemal na kiya jaye kyonki in raaston par militants apne sentries laga kar rakhte hain.
   4. **Speed.** Ek baar muthbhed ho jaye ya surprise tut jai to sabhi karwai teji se karni chahiye.
   5. **Shock Action.** Camp/hideout milne par grenades ka istemal, bhari maatra mein fire aur assault karna chahiye.
   6. **Search.**Raid ke baad ilake ki tafsil se search karni chahiye.
   7. **Pursuit.** Bhagte hue insurgents ka peecha karna aur unhe pakadna bahut zaruri hai.
   8. **Anya Baaten.** CI operations mein raid ke talluk rakhne wali anya baaten:-
   9. **Khabar.** Hideout/camp ke bare mein khabar haasil karna bahutkathin hota hai. Iske liye zariye is prakar se hain :-

(aa) Pakre hue insurgents.

(ab) Pakre hue documents.

(ac) Agents ya sources dwara information.

(ad) Higher headquartersya civil agencies dwara di gai khabar.

(ae) Insurgentska saaman le jane wale civ ya unke pariwar ke sadasya.

(ii) **Guides.** Insurgentsapne camp ko bahut hi kathin aur chupao wale ilake me rakhte hai. Khaas taur par hideout, jo ki chote hote hain, unke dhoond paana kafi mushkil hota hai. Isliyen civilian guides ka istemal nihayat hi zaruri ho jata hai. Guides ka istemal karte waqt security ka dhyan rakhna zaruri hai.

1. Raid ek achanak hamla hone ke karan chhoti tolion se kiya jata hai. Iski kamyabi dushman se surprise haasil karne per nirbhar hai.Pahunch/a raste chhupaav wale hone chahiye aur puri tajwij ko poshida rakhna chahiye. Mukammal surprise haasil karne ke liye sentries ko khamoshi se barbad karne ka bandobast karna chahiye.

**BRIEFING RAID (MASHWARE KE TAUR PAR)**

1. Sand Model se wagfiat.
2. Zamini Nishan.
3. **Khabar.**
   1. **Dushman ke bare mein.** 
      1. Disposition aur depth.
      2. FDLs mein gap, rukawaton ki jagah aur qism.
      3. Dushman ke patrolon ki harkat.
      4. Reinforcement karne wall location aur rasten.
      5. Objective ke bare mein khabar:-
         1. Disposition aur nafri.

(ab) Automatic hathiyaron ki jagah.

(ac) Rukawaten.

(ad) Sentry ki jagah.

(ae) Aram karne ka ilaqa.

1. **Apne bare mein.** Mile hue task se sambandhit rakhane wall khabar.
2. **Task.** Hamara ghatak platoonkal\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_tarikh\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_bajeilaqa\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ mein shatru ke\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ par raid karke barbad karega (doharao aur check karao).
3. **Tariqa.**

* 1. **Bhag I**. Infiltration (Ghuspaith karna). Zarurat ho to infiltration groups mein kia jayega:-
     1. **Group-I.** 
        1. Nafri.

(ab) Support.

(ac) Commander.

(ad) Start time.

(ae) Rasta aur order of March.

(af) Raftar.

(ag) Bound tatha RV.

(ah) Navigation ki zirnmewari.

* + 1. **Group - II** (Group I ki tarah).

1. **Antim RV.** 
   1. Location.
   2. Pahunchne ka samay.
   3. Antim RV mein karawai.
   4. Alternative RV ki jagah.
2. **Patrol Base.** 
   1. Location.
   2. Antim RB se rasta.
   3. Patrol base pakarne se pahle recce.
   4. Patrol base pakarne ki drill.
   5. Alternative patrol base ki jagah.
   6. Alternative patrol base ke liye rasta.
   7. Alternative patrol base par jaane ke ishare.
   8. Alternative patrol base pakarne ka tariqa.
3. **Objective ki confirmatory Recce.** 
   1. Recce party ki nafri, jismein surveillance party shamil hai.
   2. Jane aur aane ka rasta aur samay.
   3. Rukawaton ko par karnke ka tariqa.
   4. Surveillance party ki jimmewari.
4. **Bhag - II Raid ki karwai.** 
   1. Cut off Group
   2. Commander.
   3. Nafri aur hathiyar.
   4. Task.
   5. Jagah.
   6. Milap ke sadhan aur ishare.
      1. Jagah par pahunchne ka.
      2. Jagah chorne ka.
5. **Support Group.** 
   1. Commander.
   2. Nafri.
   3. Task.
   4. Location.
   5. Assault line.
   6. Demolition party.
      1. Task.
      2. Commander.

* + 1. Nafri.
    2. shara-Charge lagane tatha aag lagane ke liye.
  1. Sentry silencing party.
  2. Surprise khone par karrwai.

1. **Raid ki karawai.** 
   1. Surprise kho Jane par.
   2. Surprise rahne par.
   3. Targetarea mein aur koi tabdili par (Tafsil mein brief karna chahiye).
2. **Raid ke baad karawai.** 
   1. Jagah chorne ka ishara.
   2. Jagah chorne ki tartib.
   3. RV par pahunchane ka samay.
   4. RV par group pahunchne par karwai.
   5. RV par group nahin pahunchta hai to uske liye hukum.
3. **Bhag III Exfiltration.** Command Control our surprise ke liye wapsi bhi unhi groupon mein hona chahiye jo Infantryiltration ke dauran kia gaya tha.
4. **Group - I.**
   1. Commander.
   2. Nafri.
   3. Order of March.
   4. Rasta.
   5. Raftaar.
   6. Bound tatha RV.
   7. Navigation ki zimmewari:
   8. Exfiltration.
5. **Group - II**  (No 1 group ki tarah).
6. Sabhi bhagon ke liye aam baten.
   1. Halt hone par karawai.
   2. Rukawat paar karne ki drill.
   3. Shatru ko dekhane par karawai.
   4. Roshni hone par karawai.
   5. Ambush hone par karawai
   6. Surprise rakhne ke liye karawai.
7. **Fire Plan.** 
   1. Infiltrationke dauran.
   2. Raid ke dauran.
   3. RV Tak withdrawal ke dauran.
   4. Wapasi ke dauran.
8. **Rehearsals*.*** 
   1. Samay.
   2. Jagah.
   3. Hathiyar test.
9. **Antim Inspection.** 
   1. Samay aur RV.
   2. Jagah.
   3. Kya-kya check kia jayega.
10. **Bandobast.** 
    1. Hathiyar aur ammunition.
    2. Demolition ka saman.
    3. Ration-paani.
    4. Medical.
    5. Casualty evaluation.
11. **Milap.** 
    1. Radio Set.
    2. Code Sign.
    3. Ishare.
12. Dusre milap ke sadhan.
13. Pass word.
14. Pehchan ke nishan.
15. Ghari Milao.

**CHAPTER -19**

**FAUJI TACTICAL SHABDON KA MATLAB**

## Army Glossary of Military Terms 2005

1. **Call Sign.**  Radio station ki pahchan ke liye istemal kia jane wala gupt akshar ya akshar tatha ankon ke group ko call sign kahte hain.

1. **Code Sign.** Aksharon ya akshar tatha ankon ke woh gupt group, jo kih formation our unit ke headquarter ko inki pahchan ke liye die jate hain.
2. **Code Word.** Pahle se chuna hua shabd, jo ki kisi sthan operation ya kisi plan ki security banaye rakhne ke liye istemal kia jata hai.
3. **All Round Defence.** Fauji daston ko is prakar zamin par lagana, jo kisi bhi direction se anewale hamle ko nakam kar saken. Yeh niche likhe anusar ho sakta hai :-
   1. **Organised for All Round Defence.** Ek unit ya sub-unit ko is tarah se lagaen ki uske zyadatar hathiyar dushman ke mumkin raston ko cover kar sakte hon, lekin kuchh fire kisi bhi disha se anewale hamle ko torne ke liye dala ja sake.
   2. **Sited for All Round defence.**  Ek unit ya sub-unit ko sited for all round defence tab kaha jata hai, jab ise is tarah se lagaya ho, jo kisi bhi disha se anewale hamle par taqriban barabar matra mein fire dal sake. Yeh formation ko lagu nahin hai.
4. **Mutual Support.** Ek defended post ya defended locality ka dusri defended post ya locality par kiye janewale hamle mein fire se dakhalandazi karne ki kabliat ko mutual support kehte hain.
5. **Arc of Fire.** Kisi hathiyar ya fire unit ka woh ilaqa hai, jismain anewale targeton ko engage karna is hathiyar ya fire unit ki zimmewari hai, yeh do hote hain:-
   1. **Primary Arc of Fire.** Yeh arc us hathiyar ya fire unit ki pahle zimmewari hoti hai.
   2. **Secondary Arc of fire.** Yeh arc hathiyar ya fire unit ki dusri zimmewari hoti hai. Is area mein tabhi fire kiya jayega, jab hathiyar primary arc mein koi fire na kar rahe hon.
6. **Field of Fire.** Yeh woh ilaqa hota hai, jismen woh hathiyar apna kargar fire dal sakta hai.
7. **Defiladed Position.** Dushman ke flat trajectory hathiyar aur dekhbhal se kisi kudrati ya banawati rukawaton, jaise pahari, uthi zamin ya katao se jo bachao mile use defiladed position kahte hain.
8. **Enfilade Fire.** Flank mein site kiye gaye hathiyar ka is tarah se fire karna jo ki targetko lambe rukh mein barbad kar sake, use enfilade fire kahte hain.
9. **Alternative Position.** Yeh pahle se recce aur taiyar ki hui aisi position hai jahan par koi unit ya sub-unit athwa gun ya mortar pit usi task ko pura karti hai, jo ki main position se kar rahi thi.
10. **Secondary Position.** Pahle se recce aur taiyar ki gayi woh position hai, jahan par koi gun, mortar secondary task ko pura karne ke liye jati hai.
11. **Temporary position.** Kisi unit ya sub-unit dwara dushman ko dhoka dene ke liye 'kisi zamini ilaqe ko kuchh waqat ke liye kabze mein rakha ya kisi hathiyar ka itsemal karna, taki Dushman hathiyar ki sahi location ka pata na laga sake.
12. **Overhead cover.** Dushman ke hawai dekhbhal se chupao ke liye, darkhton ke niche ya kisi aur chhupav ke niche morche banaye jisse dushman asani se dekhbhal na kar sake.
13. **Overhead protection.** Dushman ke air burst aur Spinter se bachao ke liye cement ya chhat ke saath bane morche hote hain. Amuman 18 inch mitti upar dalkar bhi banaya ja sakta hai.
14. **Positional Defence.**  Aisa defence, jismein zyada se zyada fauj ahmiyat wali jagah par laga di jati hai aur kewal chhota force counter attack ke liye rakha jata hai. Ismen zamin ki adhik ahmiyat hoti hai, jise har halat mein hold kiya jata hai.
15. **Mobile Defence.** Is prakar ke defence ka mudda dushman ko barbad karna hai na ki zamin pakadna. Is liye ismein kuchforce zamin par shatru ko killing area mein channelise karte hai aur bara force mobile resource ke taur par rakhe jate hai, jo shatru ke killing area mein ate hi counter attack karke barbad kar data hai.
16. **SupportAttack.** Yeh ek tactical harkat hai, jo dushman ke hamle ko betartib karne ke liye ek defender unit istemal karti hai. Amuman yeh jab dushman FUP mein ho ya hamle ke liye ikatha ho raha hai tab karte hain. Iska mudda zamin kabze mein karna nahin isliye yeh kai bar fire se bhi kia ja sakta hai.
17. **Local Counter Attack.**  Unit ya sub-unit dwara apne defence mein ghus aye ya ghusne ki koshish karne wale shatru ko barbad karne ke liye jawabi hamla karte hain, use local counter attack kahte hain, iske liye koi alag fauj nahin hota hai.
18. **Deliberate Counter Attack.** Yeh tajwiz, taiyari aur tartib sudha jawabi hamla hai, jo formation level par defended sector mein ghuse shatru ko mukarar reserve force ka istemal karte hue barbad kiya jata hai.
19. **Defensive Fire Task.** Pahle se plan kia hua woh fire, jo jaldi se dushman ke hamle ya shakia hamle ki jagah par giraya ja sake. Yeh teen kism ke hote hain:-

(a) **Defensive Fire in Depth.** Yeh dushman ke depth area mein uske mumkin assembly area tatha FUP aur wahan tak ke raste mein dushman ke hamle ki taiyarion mein dakhalandaji ke liye chune jate hain. Ise gahrai mein DF task kahte hain.

* 1. **Close Defensive Fire.** Yeh DF dushman ke hamle ko FUP, SL ya asli assault ko torne ke liye chune jate hain.
  2. **Defensive Fire SOS.** Yeh close DF mein se woh task hote hai jo sabse khatarnak hote hain. Amuman yeh us jagah chune jate hain jahan se dushman surprise hasil kar sakta hai. Jab gunen aur mortars aur kahin fire na kar rahi hon tab DF SOS par lay karke rakhi jati hain.

1. **Nest.** Jab minefield ko main defence ke hathiyaron se zyada gahrai ya dabi zamin, hone ke karan cover na kiya ja sake tab minefield mein jo daste lagaye jate hain unhe Nest kahte hai.
2. **No Man's Land.**  Do senaon ke beech ki woh jagah jis par kisi ka bhi kabza na ho, lekin donon sena apni patrol, dekhbhal ya fire se dominate karne ki koshish karte hain.
3. **Junction Point.** Unit ya formation ki darmyanboundry par aise zamini nishan jinki madad se defended locality aur mine field ki taqriban line zahir ki jati hai.In nishanon ka koi tactical matlab nahin hai, inko fire se cover ya pakarne ki zarurat hai.. Yeh advance aur withdrawal mein istemal mein laya jata hai.
4. **Re-organisation.** Kisi bhi action ke baad unit ya formation ke beech kiye jane wale readjustment jaise jawan aur equipment mein casualty ho jane ke karan karna parta hai. Yeh zamin ko kabje mein lene par nayi tartib kisi unit ya formation ko di jati hai.
5. **Delaying Position.**  Covering fauj ki tolion dwara defence ya withdrawal mein dushman ke advance ke bagair zyada ladai main shamil hue bina delay paida karne ke liye jo position lete hain use delaying position kahte hain. Yeh covering fauj ke age ya pichhe ho sakta hai.
6. **Lay Back Position.**  Woh ilaqa jis par Infantry ya Armour ki sub-unit lagav wale daston ki harkat ko din ke waqt fire se cover karne ke liye pakarti hai, aur unhen dushman se lagav home mein madad deti hai.
7. **Van Guard.**  Advance guard ka woh hissa jo main guard ko bachao dene ke liye age chalta hai aur iski hifazat karta hai.
8. **Axis.** Advance ke rukh ko zahir karne wali woh aam rekha jiske saath koi formation ya unit ke Headquartersharkat karti hai.
9. **Bound.** Advance mein woh tactical ahmiyat wali jagah jahan pahunchne par sub unit ya formation apne commander ko report deti hain taki commander is par kabu pa sake aur co-ordinate kar sake. Yahan dushman hone ka andesha ho sakta hai. Is jagah ko tactically occupy karte hain aur yahan halt kia jata hai jab tak dusra adesh na mila ho.
10. **Report Line.** Woh farzi line jo zamin aur nakshe par asani se pahchani ja sake. Yeh advance ke dauran control pane ke liye bare commander mukarar karte hain. Yahan pahunchane par unit ya formation apne pahunchne ki report dete hain. Yeh tactical ahmiyat wali jagah nahin hoti aur yahan troops rukte bhi nahin hai.
11. **Assembly Area.** Woh area jahan hamlawar daste imdadi daston ke saath mel-milap karte hain aur hamle ke Iiye taiyar hote hai. Yeh jagah shatru ka mumkin artillery targetna ho. Assembly area aur FUP ke beech fasla zyada hone par forward assembly area chuna jata hai.
12. **FUP (Forming Up Place).** Hamlawar fauj assembly area ke baad yahan aa kar hamla karne ke formation mein tartib se lag jate hain. Yeh FUP kahlata hai. Yahan se platoon ya section commander jawan ko objective dikhata hai. Yahan bhari saman chhora jata hai aur yahan fauj bahut kam rukti hai.
13. **Start Line.** Amuman FUP ke agle kinare ko kahte hain. Yeh farzi ya zamin par mark ki gayi objective se square line hai jisko hamlawar fauj H hour par paar karte hain, jisse harkat aur fire plan ka milap kia ja sake.
14. **Assault Line.** FUP our objective ke beech woh line jahan per hamlawar daste assault formation ikhtiyar karte hain. Yeh objective se jitna ho sake utna nazdik hota hai.
15. **Mopping up.** Hamle mein bache hue dushman ko barbad karne ki karwai ko kahte hain jin par apni sena dwara ghera dal dia ho, ya jahan se sena inko barbad kiye bina guzar gayi ho.
16. **Exploitation.** Hamle ke baad shatru ki kamzori ka faida uthate hue aise jamin ko apne kabze mein karna jo bilkul khali ho, jisse shatru uska counter attack mein faida na utha sake.
17. **RV (Rendezvous).** Yeh alag alag operations mein alag tarah se niuqt kiya jata hai, lekin sabhi mein unit ya subunit jo alag alag groupon mein ati hain, inse mel-milap kiya jata hai. Yeh patrol, ambush, attack by infiltration, raid our withdrawal mein nishchay kiya jata hai.
18. **GTI (Ground of Tactical Importance).**  Defence ke andar woh Tactical Ahamiyat wali jagah jis par dushman ka kabza ho jane par defender ko kamyab larai larna mushkil hota hai.
19. **Firm base.** Tactical ahmiyat wali woh zamin jisko kabza karke commander apne plan ho pura karte hain. Hamle ke dauran na kamyabi par daste yahan wapas aakar agli tajwiz bana sakte hain.
20. **H Hour.** Operation shuru karne ke waqt ko H hour kahte hain. Hamalawar daste isi samay par Start Line paar karte hain. Us operation ki har karawai ka samay isse mukarar karte hain.
21. **Patrol Base.** Shatru ke ilaqe ya no man's land mein woh jagah hai jahan zarurat ke anusar bachao haasil karne, age ki patrolling karne tatha patrol plan ko pura karne ke liye kabza kar liya ho.
22. **Minefield Lane.** Minefield ke beech woh rasta jis mein mines na lagi ho ya nikali gayi ho, jismein se Infantry garian, tank paar ho sakte hain. Iski chaurai alag-alag hoti hai aur yeh mark ki hoti hai.
23. **Minefield Gap.** Minefield ke beech woh khuli jagah jismein mine nahin lagate taki apni fauj tactical formation main rahte hue isse guzar sake, jaise counter attack. Iski chaurai 100 mtr se adhik hoti hai.

**CHAPTER – 20**

#### DEFENCE

(a) GS publication, Ops of war, Vol I, Defence 1975.

(b) GS Publication, Inf Trg Vol IV, Inf Sec Leading and PL Tac 1985.

**Glossary Of Military Terms**

1. Glossary of military terms is prakar se hain :-
   1. **All Round Defence.** Ek sainya dal ki kabiliyat ki woh kisi bhi ore se ane wale hamle ko rok sake.
   2. **Organised for All Round Defence.**  Kisi bhi unit ya sub unit ko charon taraf se raksha ke liye tab sangathit kiya jata hai jab kisi sambhavit disha se dushman ko rokna ho. Aur iske liye bhari sankhya mein hathiyar laga diye hon, lekin kisi bhi dusri disha se ane wale dushman par bhi kuch fire dala ja sakta hai .
   3. **Sited for All Round Defence.** Kisi bhi unit ya sub unit ko charon taraf ki raksha ke liye us samay nirdharit kiya jata hai jab uske hathiyar kisi bhi disha se ane wale hamle par barabar fire dal sakein.
   4. **Covering Troops.** Ek formation ya tukri jise sabhi sena angon se taiyar kiya jata hai. Iska task dushman par nazar rakhna, pareshan karna aur age badne se rokna, jisse dushman pichhe hat rahi ya taiyari kar rahi hamari sena ki karwai mein badha na dale.
   5. **Covering Position.**  Ek prarambhik sthan jahan covering troops tainat kiye jate hain. Iska uddesh covering position ke age ya piche ki delaying position par niyantran rakhna hai.
   6. **Defence Post.** Chotti sub unit jaise Infantry section dwara ki gayi rakshit vyavastha.
   7. **Defence Locality.** Ek aisa chetra jise charon taraf defence ke liye organised ya sited kiya jata hai jaise ki Platoon ya Company. Ismen sub uniton ko depth mein sangathit kiya jata hai. Jahan par dushman ka contact pahle ho unhen forward defended locality kaha jata hai.
   8. **Defended Area.** Ek zimmewari ka ilaka jismen depth mein kai mutually supported defended locality hoti hai jaise Battalion Defended Area.
   9. **Defiladed Position.**  Ek aisa sthan jo prakritak taur se dushman ki observation aur flat trajectory hathiyaron se bachata hai.
   10. **Defensive Fire (DF).** Fire jiski taiyari ki hoti hai ya jo jaldi se dushman par giriya ja sake, uske hamle ko barbad karne ke liye aur uske assault ko torne ke liye:-
       1. **DF (Close).** Weh task jo defence location ke nazdik hon jaise ki FUP ya SL mein, jinka uddesh dushman ke hamle ko nakara karna hai.
       2. **DF (Depth).** Weh task jinka uddesh dushman ke hamle ki taiyari mein badha dalna hai.
       3. **DF (SOS).** Weh task jahan par gun, Mor aur ho sake to MMG ko lay karke rakha jata hai, jab weh fire nahin kar rahe hon. Yeh apne location ke pas hote hain taki dushman ke hamle ko barbad kiya ja sake. Jyon hi SOS ka call ata hai to jaldi se fire giriya jata hai. Field Artillery mein yeh ek Battery ko ek hi diya jata hai par zarurat parne par ek troop ko ek DF SOS diya ja sakta hai.
2. **Defended Position.** Defence ke liye taiyar kiya gaya woh kshetra jismen uski seema aur usmen sainya dal ke bare mein koi sanket nahin diya jata.
3. **Dummy Position.** Dushman ko dhoka dene ke liye taiyar ki gayi position.
4. **Enfilade Fire.** Kisi bhi hathiyar ko bagal se fire karna, jisse tgt par fire karte samay iske lambe aksh/rukh par fire girta hai.
5. **Field Fortification**
   1. **Bunker.** Ek khai (trench) jismen hathiyar ko fire karne ke liye loop hole hote hain. Splinter etc se bachne ke liye isko upar se dhak diya jata hai.
   2. **Communication trench.** Chhup kar harkat aur communication karne ke liye taiyar ki gai khai ko communication trench kahte hain. Kam gehrai wali khai jismen aadmi kewal reng sakta hai use crawl trench kahte hain.
   3. **Fire Trench.** Zamin ki satah se niche khodkar banai gai khai/ trench jismen ek ya adhik sainik raat mein rah kar apne hathiyar ko prabhavi dhang se fire kar sakte hain.
   4. **Pill Box.** Ek choti si kilabandi jo aam taur se concrete ki bani hoti hai jo kisi hathiyar ki sidhi mar ko sah sake. Ismen MMG ya tank mar hathiyar rakhe jate hain.
   5. **Shelter Trench.** Ek trench jo splinter ityadi se bachav ke liye banaya jata hai. Yeh fire trench ya weapon pit ke saath hona chahiye.
   6. **Slit Trench.** Zamin ke nichhe khudi sankri khai jo hawai hamlon ya kam samay ke plan ke dauran banai jati hai. Jab fire trench aur weapon pit ki zarurat nahin hoti.
   7. **Weapon Pit.** Zamin ki satah se niche khude hue ghadde jisse personal hathiyar ke alawa dusra weapon ka fire diye hue tgt par dala ja sake.
   8. **Harassing Fire.** Ek prakar ka fire support jiske antargat:-
   9. Dushman ka morale niche karna aur uski troops ki harkat mein badha dalna aur koi bhi samay rest ke liye na dena.
6. Dushman ko jaldi deploy karne ke liye mazboor karna taaki woh late ho jaye.
7. **Vital Grnd.**  Woh kshetra jiske kabza hone par ek defender us ilake mein ek kamyab raksha yudh nahin kar sakta.
8. **GTI.** Important shetra jiske kho jane se defence par theek vaisa asar padega jaise ki vital grnd ke kho jane par Divison ya uske upar ke level par padega.
9. **Mutual Support.**  Kisi bhi defended post ya locality ki kabiliyat ki woh padosi location par aane wale hamle par fire dal sake.
10. **Reverse Slope Position.** Ek aise ilaka jismen troops ka bada bhag kisi feature/ pahadi etc ke niche aur apni taraf lagaya jata hai.
11. **Screen.** Ek tukri ka gathan jo ki aam taur par sabhi sena angon se hota hai aur jo ki aage ke ilake mein defence leta hai taaki woh dushman ke hamle ki taiyari mein rukawat paide kar saken. Iska uddesh dushman ko pareshan karna, recce na karne dena aur use zarurat se pahle deploy hone par mazboor karna.

**Defence Ke Bare Mein Aam Jankari**

1. Defence in halaton mein liya ja sakta hai:-
   1. Desh ki suraksha kayam rakhne ke liye.
   2. Koi zaruri zamin dushman ke kabze mein na jane dena.
   3. Kisi aur jagah par hamlawar operation karne mein madad dena.
   4. Hamlawar operation mein sena ki flanks ki hifazat karna.
   5. Samay haasil karna ho.
   6. Hamlawar operation ke dauran reorganisation ya dubara tartib dene ke liye samay chahiye ho.
   7. Dushman ko dhoke se aisi jagah le ana jahan use barbad kiya jaye. (h) Jab dushman mazboor kar de.

**Defence ki Kismen**

1. Defence do kism ka hota hai :-
   1. Positional defence.
   2. Mobile defence.
2. **Positional Defence.** Iska mudda hai kisi khas zamin par kabza rakhna. Is liye, zyadatar troops zamin par lagaye jate hain jisse commander ke pas bahut kam troops Counter Attack ke liye rehte hain. Is kism ke defence ki kamyabi pahle se taiyari shuda position, rukawatein aur bhari tadad mein fire support par munahsir hai. Counter Attack sirf dushman dawara kabza kiye gaye zamin ko dobara haasil karne ke liye kiya jata hai.
3. **Mobile Defence.** Is kism ke defence ka mudda hota hai dushman ko barbad karna na ki zamin ko kabze mein rakhna. Koshish ki jati hai ki dushman ko aise zamin pakarne par mazboor karein jahan ham use apni bhari taqat ki harkati resource se Counter Attack kar ke barbad kar de. Mobile defence kafi gahrai mein liya jata hai, kam se kam troops zamin par lagaye jate hain jinka task hai dushman ko pahle se maqarrarshuda zamin mein ane ke liye mazboor karna phir harkati resource se attack karke dushman ko barbad kiya jata hai. Is kism ke defence mein pahle darje mein zamin khona manjoor hai kyonki ek bar dushman ke barbad ho jane par puri zamin dobara apne hath mein aa jati hai.

**Defence ki Kism Taiyari ke Lihaj Se**

1. Defence ki taiyari ke lihaj se do kismen hain.
   1. **Deliberate Defence.** Jab ki shatru ke saath lagao na hua ho ya shatru ko defensive position taiyar hone tak apne troops se roka ja sake. Ismen position apni chuni hui zamin par li jati hai aur recee aur taiyari ke liye kafi samay hota hai.
   2. **Hasty Defence.** Jab shatru se lagao ho chuka ho ya jaldi lagao hone ki ummed ho us halat mein hasty defence ikthiyar kiya jata hai. Ismen taiyari ke liye kam samay hota hai aur zamin bhi (jahan par defence lena hai) marzi ke mutabiq nahi hoti.
2. **Siting of Defence.** Delibrate defence ke dauran defences ki siting, 2 down karte hain. Yani ke ek Brigade Commander Company ko site karte hain aur Battalion Commander Platoons ko aur ek Company Commander section ko. Lekin hasty defence ke dauran yeh hona muskil ho sakta hai. Isliye har commander ko na kewal apne sub unit ko site karna balki ek upar wale sub unit ko site karna bhi aana chahiye. Defence ko site karte waqt agar dushman ke mechanised aur armoured forces wahan par aa sakte hain to siting Anti tank weapons ko madhya nazar rakhte hue hoga. Agar pahar ya aisi jagah hai jahan sirf paidal sena aa sakti hai to siting MMG aur LMGs ko madhya nazar rakhte hue hoga. Section level par pahle LMG ko site karna chahiye aur phir baki trenches ko.
3. Defence ke dauran dhyan mein rakhne wali batein.
   1. Akarman kari ho.
   2. Zyada se zyada dushman barbad ho is prakar se:-
      1. Delay.
      2. Resist.
      3. Limit.
      4. Weaken.
      5. Destroy.

1. **Defensive Ladai ke Stages.** Defensive ladai ki kamyabi coordination aur vistar se ki gai tajwiz par nirdharit hai. Is ladai ke teen stages hain:-
   1. **Preparatory Stage.** Jab hum taiyari karte hain aur dushman hamle ki taiyari kar raha hota hai.
   2. **Resistance Stage.** Jab dushman ki hamlawar faujen hamare defence ko todne ki koshish kar rahi hoti hain.
   3. **Counter Attack Stage.** Jab GTI ko khatra hota hai aur use door karne ko Counter Attack kahte hain. Jab dushman apni kisi zamin par kabza kar le aur GTI ke liye khatra ban jaye to us zamin ko dobara haasil karne ke liye launch kiye gaye attack ko Counter Attack kahte hain.

14.**Preparatory Stage.** Company Commander ke hukum ke baad PlatoonCommander yeh karwai karega:-

* 1. Zimmewari ke ilake ki recee.
  2. Section Commander ko hukum dena.
  3. Apni Platoon mein aur bagal ke Platoon se coordination karna.

1. **Resistance Stage.** Is waqt dushman ka lagav defence se ho chuka hota hai.
   1. Forward elements se lagav, BOP screen etc.
   2. DF ka istemal.(Depth, Close aur SOS).
   3. Akaramak patrolling.
   4. Mine field/ obst ko covering fire.
   5. Nest ki karwai.
   6. DF SOS.
   7. Spoiling Attack.
   8. Own MMG, SA fire No withdrawl.
2. **Counter Attack Stage.** Sthithi ko samanya karne ke liye local commander Counter Attack ki karwai karte hain.
   1. **Counter Attack jab khud kiya jaye yani Local Counter Attack.** 
      1. Ek Section apne khoye hue morche ko wapas leta hai.
      2. Ek Platoon do/ teen bunker wapas leta hai.
      3. Ek Company dushman dwara captured platoon ke morche wapas leti hai.
   2. **Counter Attack jo reserve karen.** 
      1. Battalion ke reserve company ki location ko wapas lete hain.
      2. Bde reserve Battalion ke ander ya anya Counter Attack task pura karte hain.
      3. Yaad rahe ki Counter Attack karne wale troops us ilake se ayen jahan se dushman ka khatra na ho .

**Section Level Par Defence Ki Taiyari**

1. **Section Commander ka battle procedure.**
   1. Platoon Commander dwara di gai LMG position ko madhya nazar rakhte hue zimmewari ke ilake ki recee.
   2. Zamin par dekhta hai.
   3. Trenches ko spit lock karta hai.
   4. Alarm post taiyar karta hai.
   5. Arc of fire chunta hai, gren fire task deta hai.

(f) Bagal ke Section se milap karta hai.

1. **Section Commander ke hukum ke hisse.** 
   1. Land marks.
   2. General sit.
   3. Mission.
   4. Task.
   5. Alarm post.
   6. Sentries (OP/LP if any).
   7. Kaam ki tartib.
   8. Defence taiyar karne ka samay.

(j) Track discipline.

1. **Stand to mein jate waqt yaad rahe ki.** 
   1. Awaz na ho.
   2. Dhire dhire position pakri jaye.
   3. Har admi apni jagah mein jaye.
   4. Harkat cover mein ho.
2. **Stand to ke dauran check karne wali baatein.** 
   1. Har jawan ko apna Arc of fire pata ho.
   2. LMG fixed line par ho.
   3. Magazine bhari ho.
   4. Grenade primed ho.
   5. Password sabko pata ho.
   6. Sanchar ke sadhan ho.
   7. Sentries ko apne task ki jankari ho.
   8. Padoshi Section ki jankari ho.

(j) Din aur raat ki latrine ka pata ho.

24. **Routine in defence ka uddesh.**

1. Post ko dushman surprise na kar sake.
2. Durust taiyari aur discipline barkarar rahe.
3. Jyada harkat ya kam discipline se hamari post dushman ko jahir na ho. (d) Hathiyar, equipment aur ammunition har waqt taiyar rahe.
4. **Din ke samay routine.**
   1. Sentries har samay duty par hon aur Section Commander unki samaysamay par badli kare.
   2. Hathiyar fire trench mein honge aur istemal ke liye ready rahein.
   3. Ek time mukarar kiya jaye hathiyar, equipment etc ki inspection/checking ke liye.
   4. Dushman ki harkat ka report.
   5. Koi bhi post chorkar nahin jayega.
   6. Koi aag nahin jalayi jayegi.
   7. Weapon pit saaf rakhe jayenge.
   8. Din ke samay rest diya jayega.
   9. Sentries chupao aur cover mein hone chahiye.
   10. Sentry ko malum ho ki kis prakar se baki section ko bina awaz stand to mein kaise la sakte hain.
5. **Raat ke samay Routine.**

* 1. Sentries jori mein aur chupao mein.
  2. Rest karne wale troops apne equipment ke saath rest karenge.
  3. Hathiyar fire karne ke liye taiyar hon.
  4. Track discp rakha jayega.
  5. Laute hue patrol ki jankari sentri ko di jayegi.
  6. Shor nahin kiya jayega.
  7. Roshni nahin ki jayegi.

1. **Defence ke dauran ek Section Commander ki Adm problem.** 
   1. Supply of food.
   2. Pani ki purti.
   3. Ammunition ki purti.
   4. First aid.
   5. Post ki saaf safai.
   6. Rest.
   7. Hathiyar ki safai.
   8. Sentries aur unki badli.
2. **Rest karte waqt dhyan mein rakhne wali baten:-**
   1. Hathiyaron ki security
   2. Sahi jagah par sona taaki:-
      1. So rahe jawan ko koi bhi galat femi na ho.
      2. Aramdayak ho aur dusron ko tangi na ho.
   3. Raat ko PT shoe ka istemal taaki:-

(i) Koi shor na ho.

(ii) Aram dayak ho.

* 1. Digging tool ek jagah par camouflage mein hon.
  2. Ilake ki safai ho taki bichhu ityade na rahen.
  3. Din mein dhuwan aur raat mein roshni na ho.
  4. Harkat kam se kam ho.

1. **Defence jahan tak ho sake akarmak hona chahiye.** Defence mein kam pura tartib se karna chahiye aur saath mein troops ko pura rest diya jana chahiye. Apne section ke jawano ko dushman ke bare mein puri jankari dete rehni chahiye. Defence kabhi bhi mukamal nahi hota , ismen hamesha improvement karte rehna chahiye.

**DEFENCE KE LIYE SECTION COMMANDER KE ZUBANI HUKAM**

**Zamini Nishan**

1. Wahi zamini nishan diya jayenge, jo hukumon mein shamil hon.

**Khabar**

1. **Dushman**
   1. Aam Halat.
   2. Hamala kab tak our kitni nafri ke saath ho sakta hai.
   3. Hawai target.
   4. Hamle ki mumkin direction.
2. **Apni**
   1. Commander ka irada.
   2. Sabhi Company ki jagah.
   3. Company ki deployment.
   4. Dayein-bayein wali Section ki jagah.
   5. Support hathiyar agar apke Section mein hain.
   6. Section ke age wale daste, agar hain :- (i) OPERATION.
      1. LP.
      2. PP.

**Irada**

1. No\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_Section ilaka\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_mein\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_tarikh\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ baje tak defence akhtiyar karega.

**Tariqa.**

1. Aam Defence\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_up mein hoga.
2. **LMG.** 
   1. Morchon ki jagah.
   2. Arc of fire
      1. Primary.
      2. Secondary.
   3. Fixed line.
3. **Rifle.** 
   1. Morche.
   2. Arc of fire.
4. Hathiyaron ki jagah aur task Section Commander jawanon ko morche ki jagah par jake bataye.
5. **Fire kholne ki had.** 
   1. **LMG.** 
      1. Din.
      2. Raat.
   2. **Rif.** 
      1. Din.
      2. Raat.
6. Bomber ke task.
7. **OP/LP (Agar section se jane hain).**
   1. Nafri.
   2. Equipment.
   3. Jane/Ane ka samay.
   4. Milap ka sadhan.
8. **Sentry.** 
   1. Jagah.
   2. Zimmewari.
   3. Equipment.
   4. Samay.
   5. Warning ke signal.
9. **Rukawaten.** Agar Section ke samne lagai ho.
10. **Kam ki tartib.** 
    1. Fire trench. (b) Field of fire ki safai, (c) Crawl trench.
    2. Mine field aur sar lagayen.
    3. Over head cover/protection.
    4. Communication trench.
11. **Camouflage aur Concealment.** 
    1. Track Discipline.
    2. Khudi hui mitti.
    3. Cheejon ka istemal.
12. **Stand To.** 
    1. Prectice \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ baje.
    2. Subah \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ baje se \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_baje tak.
    3. Sham \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ baje se \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_baje tak.

**Bandobast**

1. Ammunition Kitna aur kahan rakha jayega.
2. Khana/Pani. Kahan se aur kahan lava jayega.
3. **Latrine.** 
   1. Din ka.
   2. Raat ka.
   3. Khudai ke hukum.
4. **Nahane.** 
   1. Jagah.
   2. Samay aur Tartib.
5. **Rest Area.**

**Milap**

1. Platoon Head Quarter ki jagah.

23 Company Head Quarter ki jagah.

1. Password.
2. Stand to ka ishara.
3. Hawai hamle ka ishara.
4. Koi sawal.
5. Ghari Milao.

**CHAPTER – 21**

**PLATOON KE HATHIYARON KA SITING AUR EMPLOYMENT**

**Paribhashayen**

1. **Primary Position.** Woh position jahn se hathiyar/sub unit ka primary task poora kiya jata hai.
2. **SecondaryPosition.** Pahle se recce aur taiyar ki gayi woh position hai jahan par gun/ mortar apne secondary task ko pura karne ke liye jati hai.
3. **Alternative Position.** Yeh pahle se hi recce aur taiyar ki hui aisi position hai jahan par koi unit ya sub-unit athwa gun ya mortar usi task ko pura karte hain jo ki main position se kar rahe the.
4. **Temporary Position.** Kisi unit ya sub-unit dwara dushman ko dhoka dene keliye kisi zamini ilaqe ko kuch waqt ke liye kabze mein rakhna ya kisi hathiyar ka istemal karna taki dushman hathiyar ka sahi location ka pata na laga sake.
5. **Field of Fire.** Yeh who ilaqa hota hai jismen woh hathiyar apna kargar fire dal sakta hai.
6. **Arc of Fire.** Kisi hathiyar ya fire unit ka woh ilaqa hai jismen ane wale targets ko engage karna us hathiyar ya fire unit ki zimmewari hai. Yah do hote hain:-
   1. **Primary Arc of Fire.** Yah arc us hathirar ya fire unit ki pahili jimmewari hoti hai. Yahan se dushman aane ka jyada andesha hota hai, aue hathiyar ka fixed line bhi primary arc ke andar hota hai.
   2. **Secondary Arc of Fire.** Yah arc hathiyar ya fire unit ki dusri zimmewari hoti hai. Is area mein tabhi fire kiya jayega jab hathiyar primary arc mein koi fire na kar raha ho.
7. **Mutual Support.** Ek defended post ya defended locality ka dusre defended post ya locality par kiye jane wale hamle mein fire se dakhalandazi karne ki kabiliyat ko mutual support kahte hain.
8. **Defiladed Position.** Dushman ke flat trajectory hathiyar aur dekhbhal se kisi kudrati ya banawati rukawaten jaise pahari uthi zamin ya katav se jo bachao mile use defiladed position kahte hain. Yeh disha par bhi nirbhar karta hai.
9. **Enfilade Fire.** Kisi hathiyar ko flank se site karne par kiya gaya aisa fire joki target ke lambai ke rukh ek sire se dusre sire tak fire gira sake.
10. **Observed Fire.**  Aisa fire jiske lagne, girne ya fatav ki jagah ko achhi tarah se dekha ja sake aur is jagah ko dekhte hue fire par dekhbhal se durusti dekar kabu pa sake.
11. **Fire Trench.** Zamin ki satah se niche khuda hua morcha jahan se ek ya ek se jyada jawan apne hathiyar aur LMG ka kargar fire dal sakte hain.
12. **Weapon Pit.** Zamin ki satah ke niche khoda hua morcha jahan se automatic weapon apna task pura kar sake.

**Hathiyaron ki Khubian, kamiyan aur Siting ke Usul**

14. **5.56 mm INSAS LMG.**

1. **Khubian.**

(i) Wazan mein halka hathiyar. 7.62 mm LMG se takriban 45% halka hai.

(ii) Kam recoil ki wajah se kam dhakka lagta hai.

(iii) Is hathiyar ka muzzle velocity zyada hone ke karan trajectory chapti banti hai isliye target hit probability bhi zyada hai.

(iv) Kargar range zyada hai.

(v) Achhi ballisitics, kam recoil aur sighting system (telescopic sight, PNVD and beta light sight ) hone ke karan marne ki kabliyat zyada hai.

(vi) Achhi ballistics hone ke karan bullet ko zyada sthirta aur marne ki kabliyat zyada.

(vii) Raat ke samay PNVS, Beta light sight aur monopod ka prayog karke rat mein bhi dushman par bhari casualty kar sakte hai.

1. **Kamian.** 
   1. Shola paida hota hai.
   2. Awaaz hoti hai.

(iii) Garda urta hai.

1. **Siting ke usul.** 
   1. Chhupaav mein ho, Agar kudrati chhupaav na ho to banawati chizon ka istemal karke camouflage aur concealment ka bandobast karna chahiye.
   2. Field of fire kargarrange tak saaf ho.
   3. Mile hue task ko pura kar sake.
   4. Mutual support mein hon, yani ek LMG dusre LMG ke front ko cover kar sake.
   5. Defiladed position ho.
   6. Agar pahari ilaka ho to supporturs ko cover kare aur dusri gun, saath wale section ke frontage ko cover kare.
   7. Sky line par na ho.
   8. Plunging fire kam se kam ho.
   9. Zarurat ho to alternative position chuni jaye.

(x) Enfilade fire ho.

.

1. **84 mm RL.** 
   1. **Khubian.** 
      1. Jhatka nahin hai.
      2. Kandhe par rakhkar fire kiya ja sakta hai.
      3. Ghusao ki taqat lohe ki chadar mein 400mm.(HEAT Round)
      4. Multi role, dhuan ka parda aur roshni paida karne ke liye bhi istemal kiya ja sakta hai.
      5. Fauji daste aur tankon ke khilaf bhi istemal kiya ja sakta hai.
   2. **Kamian.** 
      1. Shola paida hota hai.
      2. Crew ke liye awaz bahut hoti hai.
      3. Back blast hota hai.
   3. **84 mm RL Ke Siting Ke Usul.** 
      1. Chhupaav mein ho.
      2. Back blast ka area saaf ho.
      3. Enfilade fire kar sake.
      4. Defiladed position ho.

(v) Local protection ho.

(vi) Field of fire saf ho.

(vii) Tank ke ane wale mumkin raston ko cover karta ho.

(viii) Alternative aur secondary position.

(ix) Mashoor nishan ke pas na ho.

1. **51mm Mortar.** 
   1. **Khubian.** 
      1. Halka hathiyar hai.
      2. No 2 ki madad se bhari tadad mein fire giraya ja sakta hai.
      3. Dhuan ka parda aur roshni paida karne ke liye istemal kiya ja sakta hai.
      4. Direct aur indirect fire kar sakte hain.
      5. Jahan flat trajectory wale hathiyar kargar na hon us jagah fire gira sakte hain.

(vi) Dial sight se accuracy.

* 1. **Kamian.** 
     1. Shola deta hai.
     2. Uran ka rasta saf hona chahiye.
     3. Dial sight ka tutna.
  2. **51 mm Mortar Ke Siting Ke Usul.** 
     1. Chhupaav mein ho.
     2. Hifazat mein ho.
     3. Task pura kar sake.
     4. Bomb ke udan ke raste mein koi rukawat na ho.

(v) Mashoor nishan ke pass na ho

(vi) Local protection ho.

1. Kisi bhi hathiyar ka poora faida tabhi uthaya ja sakta hai jab ki kisi bhi commander ko un hathiyaron ko alag alag zamin ki halat ke mutabik lagana ata ho. Yeh usul kewal Platoon commander ya det commander ke liye hi nahin balki platoon ke tamam jawanon ko malum hone chahiyen.

**CHAPTER-22**

**DITCH CUM BUNDH (DCB) PAR DEFENCE**

## SATM No 21

1. Plains ka ilaqa khula aur kam kudrati obstacle wala hone ke karan, Mechanised faujen kam samay mein jyada duri tay karke border ke nazdik ke shahron ko contact kar sakti hain. Maidani ilaqe mein is karan dushman ko rokna ya delay karna mushkil ho jata hai. DCB, maidani ilaque mein banai hui ek aisi banawati rukawat (man made obst) hai jiski madad se dushman ke adv ko roka ya delay kiya ja sakta hai, uske mechanised daston ko uski infantry se alag kiya ja sakta hai aur uske hamle ke bhar ko bhi kam kiya ja sakta hai.

**DCB Ki Zarurat Aur Banawat**

2. DCB kyon banaya jata hai (Zaroorat):-

* 1. Defence kam samay mein occupy karne ke liye.
  2. Zamini nukshan bachane ke liye.
  3. En armourer ko Infantry se alag karne ke liye.
  4. En ko jaldi deploy karne ke liye aur uske attack ki disha ka pata lagane ke liye.
  5. Defence ko outflank hone se bachane ke liye .
  6. Ladai mein samay haasil karne ke liye taki defences ko readjust kiya ja sake aur counter attack launch kiya ja sake.

1. **Banawat.** DCB ki banawat is prakar hoti hai:-
   1. **Ditch.**
      1. **Chaurai.** 27.5 m se kam nahi, taki dushman do Bridge Laying Tank na laga sake.
      2. **Gehrai.** 4 m se kam nahi taki A veh cross na kar saken.
      3. **Pani.** Gahrai grnd level se 1.2 m se jyada taki amphibious vehicle ko entry aur exit point na mil sake. 1.8 m se kam nahi taki amphibious vehicle chal kar paar na kar sakein.
      4. **Sukha Ditch.** DCB ka ditch sukha bhi ho sakta hai. Aise ditch mein mines, booby traps aur wire obstacle aadi laga kar rukawat ki kabliyat aur barahi ja sakti hai.
      5. **Slope.** Ditch ki diwaron ka dhalan (slope) 60 degree se adhik rakha jata hai taki A veh aur B vehicles ditch paar na kar sakein.
   2. **Maint Track.** Yeh track bund aur ditch ki maintenance ke liye istemal mein aane wali crane (Drag line) ki harkat ke liye hota hai. Is ki chaurai kam se kam 6 m hoti hai.
   3. **Bundh**
      1. Height - 3 - 4.5 m
      2. Dowel ki chaurai - 2.5 - 3 m
      3. Slope - 60 degree se kam nahin.
   4. **ATGM Track.** Is par ATGM/RCL jeep harkat karte hain. ATGM ke firing positions bhi isi track par hoti hain.
      1. **Height.** Dowel ki upari satah se 1.5 m neeche taki harkati jeep ko dushman dekh na sake.
      2. **Chaurai.** 2.5 m to 3 m.
      3. Is par apne tk ya bari garion ko harkat ki izazat nahi hoti hai.
   5. **Service Track.** Yeh class 9 track hota hai. Chupao main hone ke karan is par bari garian (3 Ton/ALS etc) harkat karti hain. Iska istemal reinforcement, Counter Attack party aur administration ki garion ki harkat ke liye kiya jata hai.
   6. **Fortifications/Ramps.** Bundh par nimn banaye hote hain:-
      1. Pill boxes and bunkers (MMG/LMG ke liye).
      2. RL aur 51 Mor ke liye weapon pit.
      3. ATGM aur RCL ke liye emplacements/ firing positions.
      4. LMG, Gren, Rif aur Small Arms ke liye khule morche (Open trenches).
      5. Apne tankon ke liye ramps.
   7. **Anya Batein.**
      1. **Kink (DCB mein mod)**. Kink, lambi range ke hathiyaron ki siting aur killing area ke chunao ke liye achhi jagah hain.
      2. **Uncut Gaps**. Ditch mein chodi hui woh jagah hain, jin ke upar se raste gujarte hain. Pul ki tulna mein yeh saste sadhan hain.
2. **DCB Par Defs Ki Visheshtaen.** DCB type ki rukawat par adharit defs ki mukhya visheshtaen is prakar hain :-
   1. **Anti-Tank Defence.**
      1. **Ditch ek kargar Anti-Tank rukawat hai.** Iske apni taraf bane hue bandh meinbahut mazboot pill box aur weapon pit bane hote hain, jin par defenders mobilizehone par kam se kam samay mein (short notice) defence le sakta hai. Is prakarhamlawar ke mechanised daston dwara surprise attack ki sambhawana kam ho jaati hai.
      2. DCB ko hamlawar ke Armour aur Infantry ek saath nahi paar kar sakte. DCB, hamlawar ke Armour aur Infantry ko bakhoobi alag-alag kar deta hai. Is prakar bridgehead apne aap akele banana padta hai. Bridge-head banane wali is Infantry ko defender ki Counter Attack force asani se barbad kar sakti hai.
   2. **Delay Karne ki Kabiliyat.** Aam rukawaton ki tulna mein DCB ko paar karne mein Infantry aur mechanised daston ko jyada prayas ki zaroorat hoti hai. Jab DCB ke saath minefields aur wire obstacles ka istemal kiya jata hai, tab DCB ki dushman ko, delay karne ki kabliyat aur bhi barh jaati hai.
   3. **Observation aur Field of Fire.** DCB ka bundh, aam zamin se uncha hone ke karan dushman ke aane ke raston (aage aur peeche) par acchi nigrani (observation) rakhne mein madad deta hai. Bundh ki unchai small arms aur anti tank hathiyaron (RL/ATGM) ko max range tak fire karne mein bhi sahayak hoti hai.
   4. **Chupav aur Security.** Bund defender ko dushman ke zamini observation se bachav deta hai. Is se readjustment/reinforcement ki karwai asaan hoti hai. Saath hi defender ko apne defence ki taiyari mein bhi saamne ki taraf se suraksha (security) milti hai.
   5. **Security Elements.** IB aur DCB ke beech mein duri kafi kam hoti hai. Is liye covering troops ka istemal nahi kiya ja sakta hai. Yeh kaam nigrani aur hifazati daste (surveillance and protective elements) jaise PP, FZDLs, tatha Recce aur Support Battalion ke daston dwara kiya jaata hai.
   6. **Frontages.** DCB type ke defence mein lambi frontages hone ke karan troops ko kafi bada zimmewari ka ilaka milta hai. Aam taur par ek Infantry Battalion 10 se 12 km ka frontage occupy karti hai (Large frontage with lesser troops).
   7. **Depth.** Lambi aur seedhi linear defences hone ke karan aam defences ki tulna mein DCB mein kam depth milti hai. Is liye DCB ke piche kai contingency position banane ki zarurat hogi jisko baad mein bhi akhtyar kiya ja sakta hai.
   8. **Gaps/Crossing Places.**  Civilians ke aane jaane ke liye DCB par kafi gaps aur crossing places hote hain. Kai jagah par paani ke channel (aqua duct) bhi DCB ko cross karte hain. Inko bhi choti toliyono ke aane - jaane ke liye kaam mein laya ja sakta hai. Gaps/Crossing places ka istemal apne Surveillance/EW daston ke aane jaane ke liye kiya jaata hai.

(j) **Arty/Mor Fire Ka Asar**. Hamlawar fauj ke Arty/mor fire ka asar DCB type ke defences par kafi kam hota hai kyon ki defences kafi mazboot aur linear hote hain. Defender ki Arty gun/mor position ko kafi bara frontage cover karna parta hai. Is liye ek se jyada mor/gun position ki zaroorat hoti hai.

**Hamlawar Fauj ke Operation ki Tartib**

1. **Hamlawar Fauj ke Operation ki Tartib**.
   1. Hamlawar apni Mechanised forces (Armour aur Mechanised Infantry) ke dwara chaure front par advance karega aur hamare DCB ko contact karega (Lean on Operation).
   2. Lean on Force direct shooting dwara DCB par bane defences ko barbad/kamzor karegi.
   3. Hamlawar fauj ki Infantry firm base banayegi.
   4. DCB par hamle ke saath-saath road axis par mauzooda FZDL ko clear karne ki karwai bhi shuru ho sakti hai.
   5. DCB par Infantry formation hamla karke bridge head banayegee aur usko gahrai aur chaurai dono mein expand karegi.
   6. Engineers minefield ko breach karke bridging ki karwai karenge.
   7. Iske paschat bridge head mein bridge head protection armourer induct hoga.
   8. Hamlawar bridge head banane ki karyawai mein HB/AB force ki madad bhi le sakta hai.

(j) Bridge head se hamlawar ke mechanised forces depth objective ke liye break out karenge.

**DCB Par Defence ki Tartib**

1. **DCB Par Defence ki Aam Tartib**.
   1. Defence akramak (aggressive) banaya jata hai. Is karyawai mein har sambhav tariqa shamil hota hai, jaise ki hawai takat, tanks, arty, infantry aur rukawaton se lagatar dushman ki harkat ki khabar haasil karna, delay karna, usko nuksan pahunchana aur barbad karna .
   2. In sab ke bavjood bhi agar dushman kuch ilaqe par kabza kar leta hai to readjustment, reinforcement aur shoulder sealing action se usko seemit kiya jata hai.
   3. Ant mein yadi dushman Bridge Head banane mein kamyab ho jata hai to Counter Attack dwara use barbad kiya jata hai.
2. **DCB Par Defence Ka Tariqa**.
   1. DCB ke aage (Forward Zone).
   2. DCB par defence (Main Defs).
   3. DCB ke pichhe.
3. **DCB Ke Aage.**
   1. Forward zone mein nigrani aur hifazati daston ko lagaya jata hai. Inka mukhya task dushman ko surveillance mein rakhna, delay aur nuksaan pahunchana hai.
   2. Forward zone mein kaun se element hone chahiye yeh IB aur DCB ke beech ki doori aur zamin par nirbhar karta hai.
   3. Guide line ke taur par defender ko apni fauj ka 1/3 bhag aage forward zone mein lagana chahiye. Forward zone ke daston ko withdraw karna aur unko peeche deploy karne ka plan bhi hona chahiye.
   4. DCB ke age bheje janewale daston ko hum do bhagon mein baant sakte hain:-
      1. **Static.** Re-organised BOP, FZDL, PP, Stay Behind Party (SBP) aur Nest.
      2. **Mobile.** TBP, HHMT/ATMT, THT, Recce aur Support Battalion ke daste, Armr aur radar dets.
4. **DCB ke Aage Lagne wale Static Daste.** 
   1. **Re-org BOP.** Aman ke dauran border par taskari, ghuspeth tatha anya harkaton par rok lagane ke liye border ke nazdik BSF dwara post banayi jati hain. Yeh aam taur par kisi road/track/gaon par lagayi jati hain. BOPs mein kuch bunkers, trenches aur observation tower hote hain. Larai shuru hone se pahle zyada ahmiyat wali BOPs ko re-inforce/re-organise karke use larai ke liye taiyyar kiya jata hai:-
      1. **BOP Ko Re-organise Karna.**

(aa) **Re-siting.** Agar zarurat ho to dushman ke khatre ko dekhte huye BOP to kisi unchi zamin/gaon/chhote bund/anya kudrati rukawat par re-site kia jata hai.

(ab) **Reinforce Karna.** BOP par lagi BSF toli ko sena dwara reinforce kiya jata hai. BOP par Anti-tank hathiyar aur zarurat ho to kuchh additional auto hathiyar bhi deploy kiye jate hain.

(ac) **Rukawatein Lagana.** Minefield aur taar ki rukawatein lagayi jaati hain.

(ad) **Mor/Arty, OP Dena.** Zarurat ke anusar re-organised BOP ko Arty OP ya Mor OP bhi diya jaata hai.

(ae) **Milap ke Sadhan.** Aman ke dauran BOP ka milap apne BSF ke HQ se hota hai. Re-organised BOP ka main defences tatha controlling Army unit ke Head Quarter se line aur radio par milap ka bandobast kiya jata hai.

(af) **Stocking.** Dushman ka hamla shuru hone ke baad BOP ko main defences se maintain karna mushkil hoga is liye re-organised BOP mein ammunition, ration, pani ityadi Army units ki stocking policy ke mutabik stock kiya jata hai.

(ii) **Task.** Re-organised BOP ko nimnlikhit task diye ja sakte hain:-

(aa) Dushman ki EW dena.

(ab) Upar wale commander dwara nischit kiye gaye samay tak dushman ko delay (deri) karna, aur dushman ko zyada se zyada nuqsan pahunchana.

(ac) Forward Zone mein kaam karne wale mobile daston ke liye operating base dena.

1. **FZDL (Forward Zone Defended Locality).** Is tarah ki defended locality mein DCB ke aage kisi gaon ya kudrati/banawati rukawat par company/company minus defence leti hai. FZDL ke anya pahlu is prakar hote hain:-
   1. **Jagah.** Forward zone ke andar.
   2. **Task Aur Larne ka Tariqa.** FZDL ke task aur larne ka tariqa anya company defended locality ki tarah hi hota hai. Defences achhi tarah taiyyar aur co-ordinated hote hain. Zarurat parne par ise re-inforce bhi kiya jata hai. Ise withdraw nahin kiya jata hai.
   3. **Comd Aur Cont.** Anya company ki tarah FZDL ko bhi Battalion Commander control karte hain.
2. **Protective Patrol(PP).**
   1. **Jagah aur Nafri.** PP ko aisi jagah lagaya jata hai jo dushman ki mumkin approach par ho. Ise kisi unchi zamin/kudrati rukawat/built up area par lagaya jata hai taqi isko defence potential mil sake. Iski nafri ek Section se lekar Platoon tak ho sakti hai.
   2. **Tasks.**

(aa) Dushman ko apni defences ki khabar haasil karne se rokna.

(ab) Dushman ki Eearly Warning dena.

(ac) Dushman ko delay karna aur us par casualty karna.

(ad) Minefield breeching aur trawling mein rukawat dalna.

(ae) Battalion ke gaps ko cover karna.

(af) Adesh milne par SBP chhodna.

* 1. **Command/Control aur Communication.** 
     1. PP ka company/Battalion HQ ke saath RS aur line par milap hoga.

(ab) Agar PP ko Battalion ki taraf se bheja jata hai to Battalion Commander isko control karte hain. Agar company ki taraf se bheja gaya hai to company commander command karte hain.

* 1. **Larne ka Dhang**.
     1. PP mein proper defences(bunkers ityadi) banaye huye hote hain aur protective minefield bhi lagaya jata hain.

(ab) ATMT/HHMT, Armr, Recce aur Support battalion ke datse aur ATGM dets ke liye PP "Base ya Pivot" ka kaam bhi karti hai.

(ac) Kargar range mein aane par dushman ko auto hathiyar aur Anti-tank hathiyaron se engage kiya jata hai taki use PP par hamla karne ke liye mazboor kiya jaye aur delay paida ki jaye.

1. **SBPs (Stay Behind Parties).**
   1. **Banawat.** Iski banawat ek offr/JCO aur do se teen OR hoti hai. Inhe Arty/Mor ka fire control karne ki training bhi di jaati hai. Inke paas pers hathiyar aur milap ke liye radio set hota hai.
   2. **Tasks aur Kaam Karne Ka Tariqa.** Inka sab se important task lagatar surveillance karke dushman ki khabar dena hai. Inko dushman ke upar mor/artyfire dalne ka task bhi diya jaa sakta hai. Yeh 48 se 72h tak operation kar sakte hain. Inki briefing aam taur par Brigade HQ mein hoti hai.
2. **Nest.** DCB ke ilaque mein protective minefield ki gaharai 1000 se 1200 m tak ho sakti hai jiske kaaran mine field ko main defence se fire se cover karna mushkil hota hai. Is liye minefield mein nest lagaye jaate hain.
   1. **Jagah**. Minefield strips ke beech mein.
   2. **Banawat**. Nest ki banawat mile hue task ke mutabiq is prakar ho sakti hai.
      1. LMG/MMG det.

(ab) 84mm RL det.

(ac) Company HQ ke saath milap ke sadhan (RS aur line)

* 1. **Tasks.**

(aa) Dushman ki early warning dena.

(ab) Mine field ki hifazat (recce, breeching/trawling rokna).

(ac) Assault kar rahi Infantry/reserve echelon par fire karke casualty aur deri karna.

(ad) Re-organisation stores uthanewale partion ko barbad karna.

(ae) Task pura hone par nest wapis main defence mein ja milta hai.

* + 1. **Comd aur Cont.** Kyon ki nest company se bheja jata hai islie iska command aur control company commander ke paas hota hai.
    2. **Larne Ka Tariqa.**

(aa) Chuninda location mein nest fire trench banate hain, aur use camouflage rakhte hain.

(ab) Agar assaulting Infantry ko casualty karne ka task mila hai to use engage karenge. Agar task dushman ke tank trawls itiyadi ko barbad karne ka mila hai to tank trawls/bridging equipment ityadi ko engage karte hain.

(ac) Ek se jyada position chuni jaati hain aur nest leap frogging ke tarique se position badalte rahte hain.

10. **DCB ke Aage Lagne wale Mobile Daste.**

(a) **HHMT/ATMT**

* 1. **Jagah.** HHMTs/ATMTs ko dushman ki mumkin tank runs par lagaya jaata hai.
  2. **Banawat.** Kyon ki HHMTs ko mechanised daston ke khilaf kaam karna hota hai is liye yeh daste mobile hone chahiye. Zamin aur task ko dekhte hue inki banawat is prakar ho sakti hai:-
     1. RL det ya Fagot missile det.

(ab) MMG/LMG det aur 51 mm Mor (sector store) det.

(ac) Jeep/Jonga/1Ton.

(ad) RS.

* 1. **Tasks.**
     1. Dushman ke mechanised daston aur troops ko casualty karna aur minefield breeching na karne dena.

(ab) BOPs, FZDLs aur PPs ke beech ke gap ko cover karna.

(ac) Dushamn ke bare mein Early Warning dena.

(ad) Zarurat parne par spoiling attack mein madad dena.

(ae) Forward Z se wapis aakar main defence mein pahale se mukrar jagah par deploy hona.

1. **Comd aur Control.**

(aa) Yeh Battalion Commander ke control mein kaam karte hain.

(ab) HHMTs ka nazdik ki BOP/FZDL/PP se bhi milap hona chahiye.

1. **Larne ka Tariqa.**

(aa) HHMTs ko jimmewari ka ilaqa diya jata hai jismein dushman ko engage karke casualty tatha delay paida ki jaati hai.

(ab) Re-organised BOP/FZDL/PP in HHMTs ke liye 'Operating Base' ka kaam karte hain.

(ac) HHMTs aapas mein mutual support mein rahti hain. Yeh dushman ko engage karte hue "Leap Frogging" ke tariqe se peeche hatkar agli position mein aakar larti hain. Jab ek HHMT peeche hat rahi hai ho to uske mutual support mein kaam kar rahi dusri HHMT dushman ko engage karti hai.

1. **Tank Hunting Team (THT).** Yeh, hamlawar dushman ke tankon ko nuksaan pahunchane wale Anti tank aur auto hathiyaron ke daste hote hain. Ye forward zone mein HHMT aur ATMTs ke saath mil jul kar operation karte hain:-
   1. **Jagah.** In ko dushman ki mumkin tank runs par lagaya jaata hai.
   2. **Banawat.**
      1. 84mm RL aur 51 mm Mor (sector store).

(ab) LMG det.

(ac) RS.

* 1. **Tasks**.
     1. Dushman ke bare mein khabar dena.

(ab) Dushman ke mechanised daston ko casualty karna.

(ac) PPs ke gaps ko cover karna.

(ad) Forward Z se wapis aakar main defence mein pahle se mukarrar jagah par aakar deploy hona.

* 1. **Comd aur Cont.** THT company commander ke comd mein kaam karti hain. THT ka nazdiki FZDL/BOP/PP/THT tatha Battalion HQ se bhi milap hona chahiye.

1. **Armour, Mechanised Infantry tatha Recce aur Support Battalion Ke Daste**. Yeh bhi forward Z mein lagaye ja sakte hain. Inka deploy IB aur DCB ke aapsi duri par nirbhar hota hai.

1. **Radar Dets.** Forward Z mein alag-alag tarah ke radar deploy honge jaise Infantry battalion ke BFSRs, Recce aur Support battalion ke radars, arty ke SATA radar bases ityadi.

**DCB par Defence (Main Defence)**

1. Mote taur par DCB par ek battalion ka deploy is prakar hota hai:-
   1. Battalion frontage - 10 se 12 km.
   2. Company frontage - 2.5 se 3 km.
   3. Inter company gap - 600 se 800 m.
   4. Platoon frontage - 600 se 800 m.
   5. Inter platoon gap - 300 se 400 m.
   6. Section frontage - 75 se 100 m.
   7. Har 75 to 100m par ek bunker aur beech mein open trenches, hote hain.
   8. ATGMs aur MMG lambi range ke hathiyar hone ke karan, inhe kinks par lagaya jata hai. Inki ek se jyada positions hoti hain.

(j) DCB par platoon contingencies banayi jaati hain aur gaps ko surveillance mein rakha jata hai.

**DCB ke Peeche Defence.**

1. DCB par maujood defences ko depth dene ke liye DCB ke 1 se 1.5 km peeche kisi kudrati rukawat/uthi zamin/built up area par company level ka defence lagaya jata hai. Yeh contingency positions bhi ho sakti hain. In defences ko minefield laga kar aur mazbooti di jaati hai.

**Sankshep.**

1. Is lec ke dauran aap ne DCB ki banawat, hamlawar ke operation ki tartib aur DCB par defence ki tartib ke bare mein jaankari haasil ki hai. DCB ka defence akramak defence hona chahiye. Is larai mein samay ki pabandhi hone ke karan hamara defence ka mudda dushman ke time plan ko nakara karna hota hai. Yadi ham yeh kar sake to hum DCB ki larai ko zaroor hi jeet sakte hain.

**CHAPTER - 23**

**DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS ON LINE OF CONTROL**

## Operations of War Volume -1 Defence 2005

**Parichay**

1. Bharat aur Pakistan do padosi desh hai jinke bich mein kafi lambi International boundary jo Gujarat se shuru hokar Jammu aur Kashmir tak faili hue hai. Iske alawa Jammu aur Kashmir mein Chenab nadi ke north se NJ 9842 tak dono desho ko lagbag 775 km lambi LC se alag hai jo pahadi ki ridgeline, aur ghatiyon se hokar gujarti hai jiske karan defender ke upar kafi dabav bad jata hai. Isliye har commander ko LC ke terrain aur wahan hone wali defenders ki problem ke bare mein pata hona chahiye.

**LC ka nirman**

2. LC ka matlab line of control hota hai. Yah Northwest border par Bharat aur Pakistan Occupied Kashmir ke bich Jammu aur Kashmir rajya se gujarti hai. Yah ek kalpanik rekha hai joh kisi bhugolik aakriti ka anusaran nahi karti, Dono desho ne hi iski alignment tah ki hai. LC ka nirman Pakistan ke avaidh kabje ko rokne ke liye hua. LC ka athihasik sandarbh nimnilikat hai:-

(a) **1948.** Jab Pakistan ne Kashmir ke Maharaja Hari Singh par hamla kiya tha us samay par Maharaja Hari Singh ne Bharat ke saath rahne ka nirnay liya.

(b) **1949.** Jab 1949 mein Bharat aur Pakistan ke bich yudh samapt hua us samay par Karachi Samjaute ke adhin donon desho ne yeh mana ki jis position ko wah hold kar rahe hai wahi position cease fire line ban jayegi.

(c) **1965.** 1965 ke yudh mein bhartiya sena ne Hajipir se Uri – Poonch ke ilaqe mein Ceasefire Line (CFL) se bhi age tak ke ilaqe par khabja kar liya tha lekin jawab mein bharat ne bhi Chhamb–Jhurian ke ilaqe ko koh diya tha isleye Tashkent Samjaute mein donon desho ne nirnay liya ki 1949 mein jo CFL ki jo position thi wahi rahegi.

(d) **1971.** 1971 ke yudh ke baad Shimla Samjauta mein 1949 ke Karachi Samjaute ko raddh kar diya gaya aur is samay yudh ke bad joh position thi wahi LC mani gayi. Is Samjaute ke baad LC par concrete defences iktihar kiye gaye jisse ane wale samay mein koi vivad na ho, lekin us samay se ab tak LC par kai baar vivad ho chuke hai.

3. **LC ki Kashushiyat.**

(a)Vivadhit Seema (disputed boundary), joh ki anterrashtriya samuday se manayata prapt ho.

(b) Dono desh ek dusre ke rajyashetra( occupied territory) ke kabje ko galat mante hai.

(c) Adhikrit rajyashetra mein basse gaon ki bant mein mushkil pesh ayi hai hai.

(d) Dono desho ki sena amne samne deployed hoti hai.

(e) Dono desho ke bich koi No Man land nahi hota.

**LC par Defence**

4. LC kisi bhugolik aakriti ka anukaran nahi karti hai balki 1971 ke bad ground par dono desh ki senao ke dwara liye gaye defence ke anusar hai. Isliye LC ke ilaqe mein ground ke har hisse ko physically dominate karne ki jarurar padti hai chahe us ilaqe ki tactical importance ho ya na ho. LC mein defence lene ki khasusiyat:-

(a) **Defence Paristhiti(Posture).**

(i) Ghusbhaint aur Athikraman(encroachment) rokne ke makshad se.

(ii) Jyadatar Linear Defence ikthar kiye jate hai.

(iii) Unit lambe frontage par defence ikthihar karti hai us mein ho sakta hai us kam depth haasil ho ya depth bilkul na ho.

(b) **Dominating ground.**

(i) GTI nahin hoti.

(ii) Defence KDL par based hote hai.

(c) **Picquets/Post**.

(i) Picquet/Post achi tarah sited hone hai aur ek dusre ke saath mutual support mein hote and aur coordinated hote hai.

(ii) Defence mein concrete pill boxes hote hai saath hi communication trenches se apas mein jude hote hai

(iii) Wire obst aur mine field ka lage hote hai.

(iv) LC par post/picquets kai attack sah sakthi hai.

(d) **Reserves.**

(i) Kam se kam ya koi reserves nahi hote hai. Reserves pahle hi mahatvapoorna ilake mein rakhe jate hai.

(ii) Agar aur reserves ki jarurat pardhi hai toh use us prasupt(dormant) ilake se nikala jata hai.

(iii) Agar reserves ko harkat karne ki jarurat pardhi hai toh wah bada frontage hone ke karan samay adhik lege.

(e) **Artillery.**  LC par ghuspet rokne ke liye kuch artillery ko permanent deploy kiya jata hai jisse zarurat ke samay aise ilake par fire dala ja sake.

(f) **Administration aur Logistics.**

* + 1. Kharab mausam hone ke karan aur dushman ki shelling ke karan lagatar LC ka maint jaruri hai.
    2. Zaruri post/picquet ko road ya operational track ke saath jora jata hai.
    3. Posts ka eye ball to eye ball contact hone ke daily maint aur routine task mein kafi dikhat ati hai
    4. Heavy monsoon ya snowfall ke karan post kamjhor ho jati hai aur maint na hone karan tutne ka dar rahta hai.
    5. Store dumping mein kafi samay lagta hai isliye Animal Transport /Porter /helicoper ka istemal kiya jata hai.
    6. Store ho sake post ke pass aur utna age dump kiya jata hai.
    7. Defence ko maint aur improve karne ke liye local resources ki kami.
    8. Engineer efforts ki kami ke karam jyadatar kam khud ke troops ko hi karna padta hai.

(g) **Casualty Evacuation**. LC ke ilaqe mein evacuation bahut hi ahamiyat rakhta hai. Har post par first aid dene ki suvida hona chahiye aur cas ko RAP/field ambulance tak evacuate karne se pahle kuch samay rakne ki kabliyat hone chahiye. Jahan tak ho sake air evac ki koshish ki jani chahiye.

(i) Zyada duri hone karan shuru shuru mein evac mein taklif kyuki post ke RAP tak duri jyada hoti hai, bich mein staging post hone chahiye.

(ii) Jyada MO/NA/BFNA ki jarurat hoti hai.

(iii) Air Evacuation ke liye helipad ka maint jaruri hai.

(iv) Har post par casualty holding bunker hona chahiye.

**LC Par Surveillance, Domination Aur Counter Infiltration**

5. LC par ek battalion 14 -16 km ke ilaqe aur ek company 3 – 4 km ke ilaqe par defence iktiyar karti hai. Itne bade ilaqe par defence ikhtiyar karte samay gap rah jate hai isliye in gap ko surveillance karna parta hai, dominate karne ki zarurat parti hai kyonki inhi gaps mein se infiltration hota hai.

(a) **LC par Surveillance aur Domination.**

(i) Patrol aur ambush ke dwara physical domination.

(ii) Border fencing(AIOS) se infiltration ko kafi had tak kaam kiya ja sakta hai aur surveillance rakne mein bhi madad milti hai.

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  |  |  |  | (iii) | Surveillance devices ke dwara Surveillance, jaise |
|  |  |  |  |  | (aa) BFSR. |
|  |  |  |  |  | (ab) HHTI. |
|  |  |  |  |  | (ac) UGS. |
|  |  |  |  |  | (ad) Spotterscope. |
|  |  |  |  |  | (ae) High resolution binocular. |
|  |  |  |  |  | (af) Anya optronic upkaran ke dwara. |
|  |  |  |  | (iv) | Adhik mine strips lagakar. |
|  |  |  |  | (v) | IED, claymore mine aur booby traps lagakar. |
|  |  |  |  | (vi) | Andesit(speculative) firing kara kar. |

(vii) Permanentt defence banakar.

* 1. **Counter Infiltration Measures.**

* + 1. OPs/LPs, patrols, electronic surveillance upkaran ke dwara pute AOR ka surveillance aur in sab ke saath behtrin communication pradan karke.
    2. Sabhi Intelligence agencies ke saath behtrin talmel sthapit kar kargar intelligence network.
    3. AOR mein terrorist/OGW ke family, blacklisted individual par Surveillance.
    4. Sabhi dushmano ke agent aur unke madat karne wale ki pahchan aur unke hides ki barbadi kar kar.
    5. LC fence par lighting system aur saath mein effective obstacle system.
    6. Population aur resource control measures.

**Key Defended Locality (KDL)**

6. LC ke ilaqe mein Ground of Tactical Importance (GTI) ko na toh nominate kiya jata hai aur na hi defence ko GTI ke adharit site kiya jata hai. Kyonki LC par ladai forward ridge line par hi ladi jati hai isliye dushman ko forward ridge line par hi engage kiya jata hai, joh LC ko dominate kar rahi ho. LC par zaruri ground/locality ko KDL ke liye jaruri reinforcement aur Counter Attack plan pahle se hi bana liye jate hai. KDL forward ridge line par us ilaqe/locality ko nikuyat kiya jata hai jahan se dushman ke ane ke mumkin raste/route ho. KDL ki vishestaen:-

* 1. KDL ko puri strength ke saath hold kiya jata hai, agar mumkin ho to KDL ke liye apchs ko be occupy kiya jata hai
  2. KDL ke layout mein 100% reinforcement rakhne ki kshamta honi chahiye
  3. KDL ko road/operation track ke saath jora jata hai. Helipad bhi banaya jata jai.

(d) Agar KDL capture ho jaye toh use recapture ke liye CA plan hota hai aur troops niyukt pahle se hi hote hain

**Sankshep.**

7. LC par operations mein kafi dikhaten ati hai isliye har ek commander ke liye yah nihayati zaruri hai ki woh, wahan hone wali mushkilon ko samjhe aur unhe kaise dur kiya hai uske bare mein pata ho, yah tabhi sambhav hoga jab har level par commanders ko wahan ke terrain, mausam aur hadbandtion ke bare mein jankari ho jo unke operations par farak dal sakti hai.

**CHAPTER - 24**

**DESERT MEIN DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS**

**Special Ops Part - III**

**Parichay**

1. Hamare desh ke pashchim ilaqe mein vishal registani ilaqa hai. Iske do mukhya hisse hain, Thar aur Rann of Kutch. Registani ilaqe ki kuchh khasiyat hain, jinka asar hamari tactics aur logistics par padta hai. Isliye yeh zaruri hai ki hum deserts ke bare mein vistar se jane taki aise ilaqe mein kamyab operations karne ke liye unit, sub unit ko train kiye ja sake.

**Sand Dunes**

2. Sand dunes desert ilaqe mein paye jaane wali ret ke bare bare tila hota hai jinki khubiya is parkar se hai:-

(a) Yeh stationary (sthayi) ya shifting (jagah badly karne wale) hota hai.

(b) Sand dunes ka alignment NE disha se SW disha ki taraf hota hai.

(c) Unche wale side ko “Knuckle” aur dusre side ko “Finger” kahte hai. Knuckle NE aur Finger SW ki disha mein hote hain.

(d) Size bhi alag alag parkar ke hote hai, jaise ki:-

(i) 20 se 100 mtr uncha ho sakta hai.

(ii) 3 se 5 km lamba ho sakta hai.

(iii) 400 mtr se 1200 mtr duri par.

3. **Spot Height aur Relative Height.** Spot height sea level aur zameen ke satah ke duri ko kaha jaata hai jabki Relative height zameen ki satah se napa jaata hai.

**Desert mein Operations ki Khasusiyat**

4. Desert ki banawat, zamin, mausam aur tapman ke karan sena ki tactics aur administration ki karwai mein badlav hota hai. Desert mein operate karte samay kuchh tactical aur administration ki mushkilen pesh ati hain, jinhe samjhna aur door karna zaroori hai.

(a) **Desert mein Tactical Problem.**

(i) **Navigation**. Mashhoor zamini nishan, pehchan ke nishan, kam aabadi aur roads&tracks ki kami ke karan, desert mein navigation muskil hota hai. Yeh zaruri hai ki individual training mein din aur raat ke samay navigation training shaamil ho. Iske saath GPS par training bhi zaruri hai.

(ii) **Camouflage & Concealment.** Cover ki kami hone ke karan troops aur equipment ka bada jamawada chhupana muskil hota hai.

(aa) Gadion ka sahi paint kiya jaye.

(ab) Troops ka uniform sahi ho.

(ac) MSCN (Multi Spectra Camouflage Nest) ka istemal.

(ad) Sahi Garnish ka istemal ho.

(ae) Tracks discipline achha hona chahiye.

(af) Din ke samay kam se kam harkat ho.

(iii) **Movement (Harkat).** Cross country harkat mein kafi muskil hoti hai. Wheeled vehicles ki harkat mein muskil hoti hai. Sabhi harkat tracks par hi ho sakti hai, jiske liye maujuda tracks istemal kiye jaye ya engineers dwara naye tracks banaye jate hai.

(aa) Tactics harkat slow aur deliberate hoga.

(ab) High Mobility Vehicles(HMV) ka istemal.

(ac) Helicopters, aircrafts ka istemal.

(iv) **Obstacles.** Desert mein kudrati rukawatein ya obstacles hone ki sambhawana nahi hai. Isliye defences ko artificial obstacles par nirdharit kiya jata hai.

(aa) Anti/ tank minefields.

(ab) Anti personnel minefields.

(ac) Wire obstacles.

(ad) Anti/ tank ditches.

(ae) Artificial canal ka istemal.

(v) **Signal Communication.** Desert mein operations ka ilaqa vishal hone ke karan Headquarters ki apsi doori adhik hoti hai, jiske signal equipment apni adhiktam range par kaam karte hain. Yeh zaruri hai ki communications ko dohra kiye jaye aur alag - alag zariye(media) dwara communication kiya jaye. Repeaters aur relay stations ko secure kiye jaye. Lines ko mausam ke prabhav se bachaya jaye.

(vi) **Security.** Bade frontage hone ke karan, defences mein gaps hote hain, jahan infiltration ke khatra hota hai. Hamare administration areas aur gun areas ko aise mein khatra ho sakta hai. Gaps ka surveillanceaur recce nihayet hi zaruri hai.

(aa) Patrols.

(ab) Ambush.

(ac) Air recce.

(ad) Anya surveillance sadhan.

(vii) **Defence works.** Defences banane ke liye local resources ki kami hoti hai. Sabhi defence stores ko lambi doori tak transport karke lana padta hai. Sandbags, balli, CGI sheets adi ka istemal zaruri hai. Mukhya defence localities mein pahle se permanent defences (PDs) banaye hain.

(b) **Desert Mein Administration Problems.**

(i) **Water (Pani).** Desert mein pani ki kami aur atyadhik garmi ke karan pani ka bandobast ek mukhya problem hai. Pani ka sahi storage aur istemal aur jawano ko hard scale ki training dena bahut zaruri hai.

(ii) **Health*.*** Atyadhik garmi aur pani ki kami ke karan troops ki sehat par bura prabhav pad sakta hai. Yeh zaruri hai ki sabhi ko in bimarion se bachav ke liye train kiya jaye. Iske alwa, snake bite, scorpion bite aur mosquito (malaria) se bhi bachav kiya jaye.

(iii) **Eqpt ka maint.**

(aa) Gadion, hathiyar aur eqpt par ret ke kanon se bura prabhav padta hai.

(ab) Preventive maint bahut zaruri hai.

(ac) Hathiyar ke muzzle hamesha covered hon, mag lagi ho. Barrel aur chamber ko dry (khushk) rakha jaye.

(ad) Repair aur recovery ka bandobast ho.

5. Desert mein pesh ane wali administration aur tactical problems ko dhyan mein rakhte hue operations mein jo asar hota hai who iss parkar se hai :-

(a) Operations water sources aur communication centres mein kendrit hota hai.

(b) Administration area operations maint karne ke liye jaruri.

(c) Defence Anti/Tank layout aur minefields par nirbhar karta hai.

(d) Geographical features ki kami ke karan navigation karna muskil.

(e) Cover kam hone ke wajah se bara harkat ko chupana muskil hota hai.

(f) FOL aur pani ki khapat jyada hota hai.

(g) Samay par milne wali sahi int.

(h) Air support ki zarurat.

(j) Water supply mein dikkat.

(k) Terrain aur mausam ke karan troops ki larai ki kshamata kam ho jata hai.

(l) Vehicles ki repair aur recovery mein zyada effort (taqat) lagta hai.

(m) Logistics backup mein dikkat.

**Desert mein Operationsse Pehle Training**

6. Desert ke operations ke zarurat ko samajhte huye troops ko ushi parkar se training dena zaruri hota hai. Training di jaane wali karwaiyan ish parkar se hai:-

(a) Mobility.

(b) Navigation.

(c) Mine warfare.

(d) Trans Border Patrol/ Stay Behnd Party.

(e) Anti tank weapons/missiles ka istemal.

(f) Surveillance

(g) Air Ddefnce ke liye infantry weapons ka istemal.

(h) Artillery fire control ke orders.

(j) Tracking.

(k) Survival.

(l) Health aur hygiene.

(m) Logistics support.

**Node aur Strong Point**

7. Nodal point ek tactically important ground ya zameen hota hai jisko ek unit ya formation independently occupy karta hai, jaise ki communication centre, water source adi. Battalion ya brigade ki nafri se occupy kiya jata hai aur self contained hota hai. Nodal point mein defence compact hota hai jismein sited for all round defence ka tariqa apnaya jaata hai. Support Arm, logistics aur administration units andar hi sited hota hai.

8. Strong point, nodal point jaisa hi hota hai parantu iska size aur tactics importance nodal point ke muqable kam hota hai. Battalion ya Battalion minus ke dwara strong point ko occupy kiya jata hai.

**Desert mein Defence ki Karwai**

9. Desert mein defence ki karwai nodes ke concept par adharit hai. Nodes teen parkar ke hai:-

(a) **Forward Node.** IB ke sabse pass lagbhag 20-40 km.

(b) **Intermediate Node.**

(i) IB se 40 - 60 km peeche.

(ii) Dushman ne capture kiya to axis of maint khul jayega.

(iii) Depth mein operations ke liye firm base.

(c) **Depth Node.**

(i) Important jagah/shahar hote hai.

(ii) IB se 80 - 120 km peechhe sthit hota hai.

(iii) Kisi bhi halat mein khona nahi hai.

10. IB aur Forward nodes ke ilaqe ko Forward Zone kahte hai. Forward defended zone ki larai ka maksad hota hai ki larai shuru hone tak infiltration nakam karna aur IB ki sanctity maintain karna. Larai shuru hone par dushman ki concentration ko pata karna, saath hi unke thrust lines ko locate karke jyada se jyada nuqsan aur delay karna aur dushman ko forward mine field tatha nodal point contact karne mein delay karna hai. Saath hi nodal point ko bhi depth milta hai. Yeh larai ke liye jo daste uplabdh hai woh ish parkar se hai:-

(a) Recce aur support company.

(b) Recce troop ke daste.

(c) Surveillance dets jaise SATA.

(d) Armour.

(e) ATGMs.

(f) Artillery.

(g) Air aur attack helicopters.

(h) BOPs.

(j) Nodes ke pass.

(i) Anti Tank Mobile Teams.

(ii) Protective Patrols.

(iii) Patrols.

(iv) Early Warning dets.

(v) Tank Hunting Teams.

(vi) Nest.

11. **Node/ Strong Point mein Defence.**

(a) Battalion sited for all round defence, company organised/sited for all round defence hota hai.

(b) Battalion mein 3 coys FIELD’s ke rup mein aur ek company as reserve istemal kar sakte hain.

(c) Company compact hota hai, company gaps supportweapon aur mines se cover kiya jaata hai

(d) BSF sabse kam khatre ke ilaqe mein deploy kiya jana chaiye.

(e) Kam se kam do company contingency positionsBattalion mein, ek platoon contingency position harcompany aur section contingency platoon level mein hota hai.

(f) Administration sambandhit daste core mein hote hain.

(g) Automaticweapons ke liye alternate postion banaya jata hai.

(h) Adhiktam1/3 supportweapons ko forward zone mein deploy kiya jata hai lekin main defence mein compromise nahi kiya jata hai.

(j) 7 se 10 din ke liye atmanirbhar hota hai.

(k) PPs aur EW ka sahi location hona chahiye.

(l) Har defence loc 50% reserve receive karne ke liye kabil hota hai.

(m) Kam se kam do ya teen attack nakam karne ka maksad hota hai.

(n) Node mein artillery location ek se jyada rakha jata hai.

(o) Ammunition aur administration jarurat ka stocking mahatwapurna hota hai.

(p) Gaps ka security zaruri hota hai.

12. **Core.** Core node ka madhya hota hai, jismein support arms aur attached elements rakhe jate hai. Artillery ki batteries aur second line ammunition, 7 se 8 din ka ration, 3 se 4 jagah mein pani, MT fleet, FOL aur helipad hota hai.

13. **Obstacle Layout.** Minefields ke saath hi platoon/company ke aage wires aur defensive minefields lagaya jaata hai. Minefield density outer tier ki density Anti/tank 2/3 aur Anti/personnel 1 tatha inner tier ki density Anti/tank1/3 aur Anti/personnel1 hota hai.

**Desert mein Survival**

**Pani**

14. Aap ke pass paryapta matra mein bhojan upalabdh hone ke bavjood bina paani ke jinda rahpana sambhav nahi hai, aap ko kam se kam partidin 5 litre paani ki aavsykta hota hai. Agar aap apne pasine par kabu kar sakte ho to aap registani thandi raat mein 30km tak chal sakte ho parantu din ki garmi mein ye doori ghat kar 16 km ho jati hai.

15. Paani ki matra ko bachaye rakhne ke liye nimn karan faidemand ho sakte hai:-

(a) Badan ko pura dhak kar rakhen. Kapde poore badan ko dhak kar shareer se wasp ke jariye nikalne wale pani ki matra ko kam karte hai, aap ke bina kamij ke thanda to jarur lagega parantu aapko pasina bhi adhik hoga jis ke karan aapke sharer ki nami kam hoti jayegi aur aapki twacha par dhoop ke karan chhale ubhar sakte hai.

(b) Apne aap ko ek ya do ltr pani aur ashrit karna aapko khatre mein dal sakte hai. Kyuki is karan aapko pani ki kami (dehydration) ho sakta hai. Aap apne pasine ko bachaye na ki pani ko.

(c) Pasine ko bachane ke liye koi bhi kaam jaldi mein na kare, agar aap apne bahne wale pasine ko bachate hai to aap kam pani mein adhik samay tak gujara kar sakte hai.

(d) Paani ki badhi ghoot na lekar chhoti chhoti ghoot le, agar paani ki behad kami ho to kewal apne hotho ko gila karne ke liye uska istemal kare.

(e) Namak ke karan adhik pyas lagte hai isliye uska istemal tabhi karen jab aapke paas pani upalabdh ho.

(f) Chhote kan muh mein lene ya ghas ko chabane se aap apni pyas ko kabu kar sakte hai.

(g) Naak se swash lene aur kam se kam nahane se kafi had tak paani ki barbadi ko kam kiya jaa sakta hai.

(h) Chhav mein khade rahe aur, agar sambhav ho to jamin par baithe, ret ka tapman aas paas se thoda kam hota hai.

16. Pani ki short (source) ko khojne mein nimn karan madadgar hote hain:-

(a) Kyonki kuwe jal ka shrot hote hai isliye registan mein unhe khojne ke liye bane huye raste ke saath saath chale.

(b) Agar aapko kahi ret ka dher dikhe to uske niche paani hone ki sambhawana hoti hai.

(c) Ons bhi pani ki shrot hote hai. Thande pathar ya khuli dhatu ki plate Ons ko ikatha karne ke liye istemal ki jaa sakti hai, unpar lagi ons ko kapde ki madad se sokh le aur kapde ko nichhodkar paani ka istemal kar sakte hai. Ons ko ikatha suryoday se pahle kar ke anytha wo bhap banker udh jayega. Khayi(trench) ke upar polythene daal kar bhi raat ke samay padne wali ons ko ikhatha kiya ja sakta hai.

(d) Khara paani swad mein karab lagte hai par woh paani jahreela nahi hota hai, isliye zarurat padne par use piya ja sakta hai.

**Bhojan**

17. Registan mein bhojan milna kathin hai. Paani ke baad khana dushri jaruri vastu hai. Iske kami ke karan bhi aapke sharir par bura prabhav pad sakta hai, bhojan ki bachat shuru se hi karen. Agar sambhav ho to pahle 24 ghante kuchh na kaye aur jab aap ke paas pani jo tabhi khana khaye, in baton par dhyan den:-

(a) Registan mein janwaron ki kami hoti hai, parantu chinkara (hiran ki prajati) kabhi kabhi mil jati hai. Inhe pakadne muskil hota hai. Chuhe, chhipkali aur saap pani ke srot ke najdik paaye ja sakte hai. Kabhi kabhi khargosh bhi mil sakti hai.

(b) Gorriya ya registani chidya bhi mil sakta hai, inhe apni taraf aakarshit karne ke liye apni hatheli ke ulte bhag ko choom kar aawaj nikalne aur unhe pakadne ke liye fande, hook aadi ka istemal karen.

(c) Amuman jaha pani paye jata hai waha paudhe bhi paaye jate hai, adhiktar paudhe sukhe aur bhuk mitane layek nahi dikhte isliye unke mulayem bhag ko khaya ja sakta hai. Zamin se upar lagne wale mulayem bhag ko khaen jaise ki, phool, fal, beej, naye tane aur chhaal. Kam se kam use chakh le, chakhne se mirtyu nahi hogi agar paudha jahreela bhi hoga to khejadi ke paudhe se khane layek bean mil sakta hai.

**Aag Jalana aur Pakana**

18. Registani jhariyan, unth ka sukha gobar aur anya janwaron ka gobar uplabdh indhan hai. Sabse kargar tariqa aag jalane ko lense ki madad se suraj ki roshani ko ekatrit karke bina dya salai ke aag jalaye ja sakte hai. Uttal sisha, durbin ya flash light ki madad se bhi aag jalaya ja sakta hai.

**Pahnawa**

19. Suraj ki sidhi roshni se apne aap ko bachana hoga. Atyadhik matra mein pasina bahav aur makhiya se bhi apne aap ko bachana padta hai, iske liye nimn upay karen:-

(a) Din ke samay apne sharir ko puri tarah dhak kar rakhe. Lambhi pajama aur puri aastinwale kamij pahne, raat ke samay thand se bachne ke liye bhi kapdon ki aawaykta hoti hai.

(b) pni gardan ko dhoop se bachane ke liye muffler ka istemal Karen.

(c) Dhile kapde pahne.

(d) Kapde tabhi utare jab aap chhao mein ho.

**Yaatra**

20. Chalte samay in baton par dhyan den:-

(a) Atyadhik garmi aur pasine nikalne se bachne ke liye raat ko thande samay par chalna chahiye. Din ke samay chhao mein baithe aur garmi hone par rest karna chahiye.

(b) Sabse aasan raste ka istemal karen, ret ke teelon ya retile raaste ka upayog na karen. Raaston ka upayog kare taki aap retile teelon aur pathrile ilaqon se bach sakte hai.

(c) Ret ke teelon ke bich bani khayi wale raste ka upayog na karen ya teelo ke kinaron par chalen.

(d) Ret par chalne ke liye ankle boot kafi madadgar hote hai isliye unka istemal par vichar karen.

(e) Kahi par rukne par joota utar kar kide makaude ko saaf kare.

(f) Agar aap chhao mein aram kar rahe ho to apne jute aur jurab utaren parantu dhyan de ki aap ke pairon mein sujan aasakti hai aur aap ko jute dobara pahnne mein kathinai aasakti hai. Ret par nange pair se na chale ret ke kanon se paon ke chhale chhil sakta hai.

(g) Registani toofan ke dauran kisi pahadi ke aad lekar aashya len, agar drishty saaf na ho to bilkul yaatra na kare.

(h) Registani ilaqe mein nishan aasani se nahi dikhai dete isliye fasle ka anuman lagana bhi kathin hai. Isliye apne anumanit fasle ko hamesha 3 se guna kare.

(i) Apne aap ko sakriya rakhne ke liye hamesha sansadhano ke istemal ki sooche, unth, gaadi ghora, ya gadhon ke istemal se bhi yatra ko jari kiya ja sakta hai.

(ii) Adhik se adhik pani apne saath rakhen.

21. Dhoop, garmi aur retile toofan se bachne ke liye nimn batein madadgar sabit honge:-

(a) Sharir ko suraj se bachane ke liye us par ret se dhake, dopahar ke samay satah se kuch centimeters neche wali ret thandi hoti hai, ret apne upar dalne se pani kharch (pasine ke roop mein) kam hoga. Ret ke karon se sharer par padhne wale dabav se muscles ko bhi kafi rahat milti hai.

(b) Agar aapje paas ground sheet, machhardani ya suvidhajanak koi kapre ho to zamin mein chhota khadda khode aur uske upar kapde ko daal le, jaha par jhariya ya ped ho to unhe kapdon se dhak de aur use ashrya ke taur pe istemal karen.

22. Defence chahe jaha par bhi ekhtiyar kiya hua ho, jahan tak ho sake akramak hona chahiye. Defence mein kam pura tartib se karna chahiye aur saath mein troops ko pura rest diya jana chahiye. Apne troops ko dushman ke bare mein puri jankari dete rehne ke saath hi desert mein operations ke tariqe ke bare mein vistar se waqfiyat karana chahiye.

**CHAPTER – 25**

**TANK HUNTING**

## Tank Hunting 1987

**Tank se Waqfiyat**

1. Tank aane wale kafi lambe samay tak larai ka sarwadhik aakramak aur nirnayak hathiyar bana rahega. Yeh teji se harkat karte hue bhari tadad mein accurate fire daal sakta hai. Crew ko fire se bachao ke liye isme lohe ki chadar ki protection di gai hai. Tank ke mukhya hisse purje is prakar se hain (Explain with diagram of a tank).

2. **Driver Compartment.** Isme driver ke liye seat, driving control aur dekhne ke yantar hote hain.

(a) **Fighting Compartment.** Isme turret aur ammunition bin hoti hai. Isme shamil anya cheejen:-

(i) Tank ke hathiyar.

(ii) Fire control yantra.

(iii) Wireless.

(iv) Ammunition rack.

(v) Turret crew.

(vi) AA role mein MMG.

(b) **Engine aur Transmission Compartment.** Yeh pichhe ki taraf hota hai. Isme engine aur gear box shamil hote hain.

(c) **Running Gear aur Suspension.** Yeh hull ke bahar lage hote hai. Iske hisse purje nimnalikhit hote hain :-

(i) Suspension.

(ii) Boggie wheel.

(iii) Idler wheel.

(iv) Sprockets.

(v) Track.

3. **Tank ki Simaen/Hadbandiyan.** Adhunik tank mein bahut sari khubiyan hote hue bhi, chand ek hadbandiyan hain jiska faida utha kar ek tank killer asani se tank ko barbad kar sakta hai.

* 1. **Tk ke Najuk Hisse Purje.** 
     1. Tracks.
     2. Drive sprocket.
     3. Road aur idler wheel.
     4. Periscope.
  2. **Tk ke armour mein chinks.** 
     1. Air intake aur outlet.
     2. Weapon pistol ports.
     3. Hatch ke jodo mein cracks.
  3. **Dead space.** Tk ki gun ko kewal ek seema tak hi jhukaya aur uthaya ja sakta hai.
  4. **Anya Semaen.** 
     + 1. Anti tank gun, RL aur trench ko pehchanne mein mushkil.
       2. Anti tank team ek chhotta, mushkil target banti hai.
       3. Dense jungle, jhari dar ilake aur BUA mein simit field of view.
       4. Tk ki main gun, dhalan (reverse slope) par lage hathiyaron ke liye be asar.

(v) Hamle ke samay raftar kam hone par tank bada asan target.

(vi) Khare rukh wali 1 m ki kudrati aur banawati rukawat tank ki gati mein baadha dalti hai.

(vii) Sainikon ke pairon ki awaz, tank ki awaz se dab jati hai, isse tank ke karib pahuchne mein asani.

**Tank Hunting Team ki Banawat**

4. **Nafri.**

(a) Ek RL Det.

(b) Ek LMG Det.

(c) Total - 04 OR

5. **Hathiyar.**

(a) 84mm RL - 01

(b) INSAS LMG – 01

(c) Pers Weapon.

(d) On Weapon Ammunition.

6. **Equipment.**

(a) RS.

(b) Bino/ NVD.

**Tank Hunting ka Tariqa**

7. Tank hunting team pahle se apne liye vibhinn tank runs par ambush site mukarar karti hai. Ambush site mukarar karte samay dhyan dein:-

(a) Chuppao mein ho.

(b) Tank par aade rukh se fire ho sake.

(c) Fire karne ke baad ambush site se nikalne ka rasta covered ho.

8. Tk hunting team ambush site mein ane ka intezar karti hai. Tank range mein aane par RL se us par fire kiya jata hai. Yadi tank se troops dismount hote hain to LMG se unhe barbad kiya jata hai. Jald se jald bhari matra mein fire dal kar tank hunting team apne ambush site se nikalkar anya ambush site par chali jati hai.

9. Tank hunting team apne task ko pura karke FDL mein wapas aate wakt minefield nest ka kaam bhi kar sakti hai.

10. Tank hunting teams No mans land par chhaye rahte hain aur dushman ke tankon ki harkat par ankush dalte hain.

11. Anti tank operations mein kamyabi ke liye ek jawan ko pakke irade ke saath, nazdiki range par dushman ke tank ke samnne dat kar larne ke liye train karna chahiye. Ek jawan ko tank ki visheshtaon ko dhayan mein rakhte hue, tank ki kamjorion ka faida utha kar use barbad karne mein mahir hona chahiye.

**CHAPTER - 26**

**ATTACK**

**GS publication ops of war vol 2 Attack part 1.**

**Attack ke Fauji Tactical Shabd**

1. Attack op mein mukhya taur par kaam ane wale tactical shabd hain:-

* 1. Concentration Area.
  2. Assembly Area.
  3. Firm base.
  4. Forming Up Place (FUP).
  5. Start Line.
  6. H hour.

**Attack ki Qismen**

2. Ladai ka akhri uddesh shatru ke ladne ki kabliyat ko barbad karna hai, taaki woh hathiyar dal de. Lekin fauri uddesh aisi jagah par kabja karna hota hai, jo ki shatru ke liye zaruri hai. Aisi jagah par kabja karne ke liye commander ko attack karna hoga. Attack ki do qismen hoti hain:-

(a) The Quick attack (Jaldi ka hamla).

(b) The Deliberate attack (Taiyari ka hamla).

**Quick Attack**

3. Quick attack shatru ke jald taiyar kie hue defenceposition ke khilaf kiya jata hai aur shatru ka defence puri tarah viksit aur coord nahi hone ka faida uthaya jata hai.

**Deliberate Attack**

4. Deliberate attack dushman ki aisi position ke khilaf kiya jata hai jo ki puri tarah viksit aur coordinated ho- fire plan, obst, communication aur administration ki taraf se.

5. In donon qism ke hamlon mein koi khas farq nahin hai. Quick attack mein samay sabse jyada ahimihyat rakhta hai kyon ki samay jyada lene se shatru ko apna position majboot karne ke liye aur mauka mil jata hai. Bhale hi hamari taiyari kam kyon na ho parantu tezi se hamla karne se hamen bahut accha natija haasil ho sakta hai. Recce aur orders mein kam-se-kam samay lagana zaruri hai. Kamyabi junior commanders ki pahal, netritva aur hunar par jyadatar nirbhar hota hai.

6. Deliberate attack ke liye ahtiyat aur tafsil (bade dhyan aur detail) mein tazviz banana aur tamam mile hue support arm ko achhi tarah coordinate karna zaruri hai. Shatru aur zamin ke bare mein detail mein khabar hona nihayat hi zaruri hai, yeh khabar lagatar patrol karne se mil sakti hai.

7. **Hamle Mein Mool Roop Se Gaur Karne Wali Batein.**

(a) **Yudh Shresthta (Combat superiority).**

* + - 1. Shresthta force ko nirnayak sthan aur samay par ektra karna.
      2. Yudh shresthata kewal kisi ek Arm se sambandhit nahi balki sabhi Arms ka samanvit roop hai.
      3. Bhari sankhya mein sena ka ekatrit hona, surprise ko banaye rakhne mein muskil paida kar sakta hai. Surprise aur yudh shresthata mein samanway ki aavashyakta hoti hai.

(b) **Surprise.**

* + - 1. Hamlawar ko pura surprise haasil karne ki kosis karni chahiye.
      2. Dushman ko hamle ke samay aur disha ke bare mein hamesha bhramit karte rahna.
      3. Surprise se hamlawar, dushman ko uske pratikul paristhitiyon mein yudh larne par mazboor karta hai.
      4. Dushman ko bhramit karne ke liye deception plan uchch star par banaya jata hai.
      5. Purn surprise karna muskil hota hai.
      6. Surprise haasil karne ke kuch tariqe is prakar hai:-

(aa) Samay aur disha ka istemal.

(ab) Bare frontage par attack.

(ac) Nayi unit ki pahchan aur ammunition dumps, gun position ki location ko chupakar rakhna.

(ad) Radio traffic ka simulation (swang).

(ae) Dummies ka istemal.

(c) **Firm Base.**

(i) Hamla hamesha firm base se launch kiya jana chahiye. SL (FUP) bhi firm base ka hissa ho sakta hai.

(ii) Firm base dushman ke supportoiling attack ke virudh suraksha pradan karta hai aur hamlawar ko pahal banaye rakhne mein madad karta hai.

(iii) Hamla asafal hone par hamlawar troops firm base par wapis laut sakte hain aur apne hamle ki tazwiz dobara se bana sakte hain.

(iv) Firm base ko objective ke aas paas ki dominating jagah par kabza karke establish kiya jata hai.

(v) Firm base mein rakshatmakta (defensibility) hone chahiya.

(vi) Ph-I mein kabza kiya huwa objective ph-II ke liye firm base ka kaam karta hai.

(d) **Chota Frontage aur Zyada Gehrai.** Attack hamesha chhota front aur gehrai mein kiya jaye kyonki aisa karne se nimn faide hote hain:-

* + - 1. Apne troops ko ikatha karke istemal kar sakte hain.

* + - 1. Kuch troops pichhe hone ki wajah se gehrai wale objective par kabza kar sakte hai.
      2. Hamle ka zor kayem rakha ja sakta hai.
      3. Kuchh troops pichhe hone se mopping up jaldi kiya ja sakta hai.

(e) **Hamle ka Zor**.

* + - 1. Defender hamle ko dhire karne/ rokne ki kosish karta hai taki hamlawar ko rok kar usey barbad kar sake.
      2. Hamlawar ko akhari objective par kabza hone tak hamle ke zor ko lagatar bana kar rakhna chahiye.
      3. Hamle ka zor nimnalikhit prkar se banakar rakha ja sakta hai:-

(aa) Nirnayak sthan aur samey par ekatrit hokar.

(ab) Gahrai mein hamla karke.

(ac) Exploitationaur dushman ke CA ko nakara karke.

(ad) Reserve ki location aur uska sahi istemal.

(ae) Achha logistic backup haasil karke.

(f) **Reserve.**

* + - 1. Pratyek stage ke liye paryapt sankhya mein reserves ka hona jaruri hai.
      2. Reserves ki uchit positioning jaruri hai taki sahi samay per uska istemal kiya ja sake.
      3. Reserves ka istemal hone par reserve ko punah ekatrit karna jaruri hai.

(vi) Firm base holding troops bhi reserveka kaam kar sakte hain. (v) Asaflta ko reservese reinforce nahi karna chahiye.

(g) **Fire Support.**

* + - 1. Jyaida se jyaida Fire support hona chahiye.
      2. Fire support puri tarah coord hona chahiye.
      3. Hamlawar troops ki suraksha ka dhyan rakhte huye fire support ko objective ke nazdik se nazdik tak dena chahiye.

(h) **FUP aur SL ki Hifazat.**

(i) FUP aur SL puri tarah se surakshit hona chahiiye.

(ii) Isse dushman hamla hone se pehale hi hamare hamle ki tartib nahi bigad sakta.

(j) **Axis of Maintenance.**

* + - 1. Axis of Maintenance ko jaldi se jaldi khola jana jaruri hai taki hamlawar troops ko jaruri logistic backup pradan kiya ja sake, aur hamle ko agey badhaya ja sake.
      2. Axis of maint op tr bhi ho sakta hai.

(k) **Reorganisation.** Reorganisation jaldi kiya jaaye jisse ki hum dushman ke CA se bach sake.

8. Hamla kamiyab hone ke liye kuch zaruri baten is prakar hai:-

(a) Netritva aur dhrid-nischay.

(b) Leader/ commander mein bharosa.

(c) Puri/ acchi taiyari.

(d) Sada aur asan plan.

(e) Sade aur saaf orders aur briefing.

**Hamle ke Darje**

9. Hamle ki karwai ko teen bare darjon mein baanta ja sakta hai:-

(a) **Taiyari ka Darja(Preparatory Stage).** Is darje mein Start Line tak pahuchne ki karwai shamil hai.

(b) **Hamle ka darja (Assault Stage).** Is karwai mein Start Line se objective tak pahuchne ki karwai shamil hai.

(c) **Dubara Tartib ka Darja (Reorganization stage).** Ismein wah karwaiyan shamil hain jin se hum objective ko pakre rakh sakte hain/ jo hamein objective ko pakre rakhne mein madad dete hain.

10. **Taiyari ka Darja.** Is darje ke andar hamle ki tamam taiyari puri ho jani chahiye. Battalion ke darje par karwai ki tartib niche di gai hai:-

(a) Warning order (WO).

(b) Khabar ikatha karna.

(c) BattalionCommander ki recce aur sochvichar.

(d) Ek commander ke shuru shuru ke hukam.

(e) Sub unit commander ki recce:-

* + - 1. Objective.
      2. Hadden.
      3. Reorganisation.
      4. Fire Support.
      5. Rukawat par karna.

(f) Battalioncommander ki detail mein recce aur pure hukam.

* 1. Sub unit commander ki recce aur pure hukam.
  2. Troops ko brief karna.

(j) Assembly Area se FUP tak harkat aur deployment.

(k) H hour par Start Line ko par karna.

11. **Warning Order.** Task milne par Battlene commander WO issue karte hain

jismen niminalikhit shamil hota hai :-

(a) Task

(b) RV aur time 'O' group ke liye.

(c) Assembly Area.

(d) No Move Before ka time.

(e) Administration ke liye khas hidayten.

WO milne par company/platooncommander ko apna WO turuant issue karna zaruri hai.

12. **Khabar haasil karna.** Hamla karne se pehle zamin aur dushman ki puri khabar hona zaruri hai. Kuch khabar higher Headquartersaur anya zariyon se milti hai lekin yeh kafi nahi hoti hai. Zyada khabar patrol/ dushman ke saath milap wale troops se milti hai.

13. **Battalion Commander ki recce aur soch vichar.** Order group milne ke baad CO saab apne 'R' group ke saath initial recce karte hain aur plan ke kuch pehlu par nirnay lete hai.

14. **Battalion Commander ke shuru shuru ke hukam.** Initial recce ke baad CO saab apne initial orders issue karte hain, in mein wahi pahlu hote hain jo companycommander ko apne order banane mein madad dete hain.

15. **Sub-Unit Commander ki Recce.**  Initial orders milne ke baad companycommanders apni initial recce karte hain. Isi dauran CO saab apni detailed recce karte hain. Companycommander nimnalikhit pahlu par khas dhiyan dete hain :-

(i) **Objective.** Company commander, company ko diye hue objective ko padhta hai aur uske hisse platoons ko banta hai. Yeh zaruri hai kyon ki woh hamle ke dauran assault karne wale platoons ke thoda piche rahte hai. Prantu platoon level par isi samay objective bantna zaruri nahi hai kyon ki platoon commander hamesha kisi assault Section ke saath hi hoga. Section Commanders aur puri platoon ko bhi platoon ka objective ka pata hona chahiye.

(ii) **Inter-Platoon hadden.** Company commander inter- platoon boundaries baant deta hai. Yeh asani se pehchane jane wale zamini nishanon ke saath honi chahiye aur objective se bhi aage tak di jani chahiye. Platoon commander ko inter platoon boundary dena zaruri nahi hai parantu Section Commanders aur puri platoon ko platoonobjective ka failav pata hona chahiye.

(iii) **Re-Organisation.** Company aur platoon commander apne sub-unit ke liye re-organisation ke duran location aur tasks chunte hain. Company level par Support weapons ki location di jati hai.

(iv) **Fire Support.** Company commander, CO saab ko apni nzarurat ke mutabik, fire plan banane mein salah dete hain. Iske mutabik FOO/MFC ke saath milkar zamini nishan chune jate hain taki fire girane mein asani ho. Issi parkar baki Support arms se bhi madad li jati hai. Dushman ke surveillance ko bhi neutralize karne ka tarika shamil hota hai.

(v) **Rukawat par karna.** Rukawat paar karne ka tarika aur sadhan CO saab taiyar karte hain. Company commander objective ka area din mein dekhta hai aur har sambhav halat par gaur karta hai aur unke khilaf koi upay sochta hai.

(vi) **BattalionCommander ke detail Orders.** CO saab apni detailed recce, support arms commanders aur company commanders se salah mashaura karne ke baad apne detail orders issue karte hain.

(vii) **Sub-Unit commander ke detailed Orders.** Battalion commander se detailed orders milne ke baad company commander detail recce karta hai aur detailed orders company'O' group ko issue karta hai. Isi parkar platoon commanders apne detailed orders taiyar karte hain aur apne platoon ko issue karte hain.

(viii) **Troops ki briefing.** Aam taur par jawanon ko briefing company commander / platoon commander dete hain, parantu Battalion commander bhi kabhi kabhi troops ko brief kar sakte hain. Jawanon ko brief karne se unka vishwas badhta hai aur weh adhik nidar ho jate hain.

16. **Assembly Area.** Hamlawar troops Concentration Area se Assembly Area harkat karte hain jahan par hamle ki taiyari ki jati hai. Assembly Area mein nimnalikhit karwai ki jati hai:-

(i) Support arms ke saath mel-milap.

(ii) Administration bandobast eg ration, pani aur ammunition.

(iii) Weapon aur equipment ki taiyari.

(iv) Radio net sthapit karna.

17. Assembly Areamein larai ki halat, troops aur objective se fasle ko dhyan mein rakhte hue 2-24 hrs tak ruka ja sakta hai. Agar Assembly Area objective se kafi dur ho ya FUP aur Assembly Area ke bich kudrati rukawat ho to Forward Assembly Area bhi chuna ja sakta hai.

18. Assembly Area aam taur par objective se 7-8 km duri par hota hai aur usmein niminlikhit khubiya honi chahiye:-

(a) Secure ho aur hawai dekhbhal se cover upalabdh ho.

(b) Artillery ka mumkin target na ho.

(c) InfantryMortarrange se bahar ho.

(d) Tamam troops, gari(veh) aur stores ke liye upayukt jagah ho. (e) Veh ane jane ke raste sectionure ho.

19. **FUP.** Hamalawar troops Assembly Area se FUP mein harkat karte hai. Zarurat parne par route ko mark kiya jata hai aur guides bhi diye jate hain. Order Of March is tarah hona chahiye ki sub-unit apas mein mix na ho aur na hi ek dusre ke andar se jane ki zarurat pare. FUP mein company, platoon aur section apne objective ko madhya nazar rakhte hue lagte hain aur woh us formation mein lagte hain jis mein hamla karna ho ya dushman ki rukawat paar karni ho.

20. FUP securing ke liye battalion level par aam taur par ek company deployment ki jati hai aur yeh company FUP ko un dishaon se secure karti hai jahan se mumkin khatra ho sakta hai, har khatre ko talne ke liye woh taiyar aur equiped hota hai. FUP ko kam se kam samay mein paar kiya jaye, aam taur par FUP ko 10-15 min mein paar karna chahiye.

21. FUP mein niminlikhit khubiyan honi chahiye:-

(a) Secure ho aur dushman ki dekhbhal se bachao ho.

(b) Dushman ka mumkin DF na ho.

(c) SL ke nazdik ho aur usse samanantar ho.

(d) Forming-up ke liye jagah ho.

(e) Dushman ke small arms range se bahar ho.

22. **Start Line.**  Yeh ek farzi line hai jo agar mumkin ho to zamini nishano se ya banawati nishanon se zahir ki jati hai. Yeh FUP ka agla kinara ho sakta hai. SL; FUP ka agla kinara ya usse bhi aage ho sakti hai.

23. **H Hour.**  Aage wale troops jis samay SL par karte hain use H hour kehte hain. H hour ko Battalion commander dwara niyukt kiya jata hai. Platoon level par H hour dene se behtar hai ki koi ishara mukarar kiya jaye.

**Hamle ka Darja (Assault Stage)**

24. Is darje ki karwai niche di gai tartib mein puri ki jati hai:-

(a) **Objective tak Advance.** SL se objective tak advance karte samay mukarrar ki gai raftar par khas dhyan dena chahiye warna fire support itna kargar nahin hoga. Asaulting troops artillery fire ke itna nazdik hona chaiye ki arty fire ka asar kam hone se pehle hi dushman par chadhai/ hamla kar sake.

(b) Dushman ke apne kinare wale defencelocation par kabza karte hi fighting through the-objective ka jokhim bhara kaam shuru hota hai. Yeh hamle ka bahut samvedan-sheel stage hai aur uski safalta adikhtar jr ldrs ke initiative, kabiliyat aur dhrid-nischay par nirbhar hoti hai. Arty aur Mortar ki safety range mein troops ane ke baad inka fire support shayad nahi mil sakta, isi liye subunit ko apne hi hathiyaron ka istemal karke age badhna hoga

(c) **Mopping up*.*** Mukhya objective paar karne ke baad bhi kuch dushman ke troops objective par jame reh sakte hain. In dushman troops ko clear karne ki karwai ko mopping-up kehte hain. Aam taur par har company apne objective ki mopping-up ke liye khud jimmedar hai parantu kabhi-kabhi yeh task kisi dusre troops ko bhi mil sakta hai.

(d) **Success Signal.**  Objective par qabza ho jane par Platoon commander apni kamyabi ki report Company Commander ko deta hai.

25. **PlatoonLevel par Dhyan Dene wali Baten.**

(a) Puri platoon ko hamle mein jane se pehle apna objective achhi tarah pata hona chaiye.

(b) SL cross karne ke baad platoon ko rukna nahi chahiye jab tak dushman ka kargar fire na aa jaye. Yeh samajhna chahiye ki dushman par close in karna aur use nasht karna platoon ka task hai.

(c) Platoonko chahiye ki, bina apne hathiyar ka istemal karte hue, kewal Arty, Mortar itayadi ka support fire lete hue dushman ke nazdik se nazdik pahuncha jaye. Jab support fire uth jata hai tab apne hathiyaron ka istemal karke dushman par assault karna chahiye.

(d) Kabhi-kabhi dushman hamare support fire uth jane ke baad apni tazwiz bana sakta hai; ya koi chupa hua hathiyar hamare upra fire kar sakta hai. Aisi halat mein fire aur move taknik ka istemal karte hue dhird-nischay se hamle ka jor jari rakha jaye. Is halat mein niminlikhit karwai kar sakte hain:-

* + - 1. Dakhal-andazi karne wale dushman ki location ka darust pata lagaen.
      2. Platoon ke 51 mm Mortar se HE/ Smoke ya nazdiki LMG/ RL ka fire giraen.
      3. Agar Arty/ Mortar fire target par giraya ja sakta hai to platoonradio ki madad se company commander ko is ke liye request/ gujarish karen. Lekin Arty aur Mortar ka fire support akhri 200m aur 150m tak hi liya ja sakta hai warnah apne hi troops ko nuqsan ho sakta hai.
      4. Agar armour ka support hai to target ko indicate karke Armr ka fire support lein.
      5. Fire aur move technique ka istemal karte hue advance karen. Dakhal-andazi karne wale dushman ki position ka sahi pata nahi chal paya ho, to gen area mein fire dal kar advance jari rakhen.

(e) Fir bhi kisi bhi halat mein advance jari nahi rakha ja sakta to platoon ko is tarah deployment karen ki platoon dushman par adhik se adhik cov fire dal sake. Aisi halat mein bhi platooncommander ko chahiye ki woh platoon ko age badhane ke tariqe dhundh nikale.

(f) Platoon ko assault line par pahunchate hi grenade aur bayonet se dushman par dhawa bol dena chahiye. Dhawa kamijab hone ke baad objective ko achhi tarah search karen aur sare dushman ko clear karen. CQB ki larai mein platoon ki tazwiz bigar sakti hai, platoon commander ko chahiye ki jaldi se jaldi platoon par control haasil kar sake.

26. **Section Level par Hamle Mein Dhyan Mein Rakhne Wali Baten**. Section commander hamle ke dauran niche likhi baton par khyal karega:-

(a) Section ka har jawan objective janta ho. Section commander ki puri koshish honi chahiye ki woh jis disha se hamla hone wala ho us disha se pure Section ko objective dikhae.

(b) Agar dushman ke kargar fire se section ruk jaye to section commander apne hathiyar khaskar LMG ka istemal karte hue fire aur harkat se aage badhne ki koshish karega, Smokegrenade ka labh uthate hue Section ko aisi jagah pahunchaya ja sakega, jahan se woh shatru par kargar fire gira sake ya agar kafi nazdik ho to hamla bol sake.

(c) Yadi kewal uski hi section aage barh sake, is halat mein woh aage badhne se shayad baki platoon ko rokne wale hathiyaron ko nakara kar sakega, jisse ki platoon ka aage badhna mumkin ho sake.

**Dobara Tartib Ka Darja (Re Organisation)**

27. Hamle ke fauran baad zamin ki banawat ya aadmion aur equipment mein barbadi hone ki wajah se re-organisation karne ki zarurat parti hai.

28. Jaise hi objective par kabja ho jata hai to shatru ke jawabi hamle se bachne ke liye aur dusre troops ko aage badhane mein madad dene ke liye fauran defence ke liye tartib banana chahiye. Shuru mein Infantry hi is defence ko majboot banayegi. Re-organisation do prakar ka hota hai i.e. imdt Reorganisation aur Final Reorganisation. Re-organisation mein karwai is prakar hoti hai:-

(a) **Imdt Re-organisation.**

* + - 1. Command aur control ko haasil karna.
      2. Sub unit ke andar pers ko re-adjust karna.
      3. Sub unit ke andar ammunition ko redistr karna.
      4. Auto hathiyaron ki siting karna.
      5. Casualty ko first aid dena.
      6. OP/LP, surveillance dets aur patrols bhejna.
      7. Morchon ka rukh badli karna.
      8. Sub unit dispositions ko adjust karna.
      9. Success signal dena.
      10. DFs ka chunao karna.

(b) **Final Re-organisation.**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  |  |  |  | (i) | Close supportweapons ko aage karna. |
|  |  |  |  | (ii) | Close supportweapons ki siting karna. |
|  |  |  |  | (iii) | Auto weapons ki location readjust karna. |
|  |  |  |  | (iv) | Ammunition ko replenishment karna. |
|  |  |  |  | (v) | Re-organisation stores ko aage lana. |
|  |  |  |  | (vi) | Casualty ko evacuate karna. |

* + - 1. Morchon ki digging aur resiting karna.
      2. Anti/Tank, MMG, Mortars aur Artillery DFs ko co-ordinate karna.
      3. Flanking sub-units ke saath liaison karna.
      4. Line communication lay karna.
      5. Prisoners of War ko evacuate karna.

(c) **Re-organisation dauran dhyan mein rakhne wali baten.**

* + - 1. Re-organisation ki karwai teji ke saath aur samanvit honi chahiye.
      2. Close supportweapons ko jaldi se jaldi aagge lana chahiye.
      3. Objective par kabja hone ke baad sub unit ko relax nahi karna chahiye aur dushman ke local counter attack ka samna karne ke liye teji se Re-organisation ki karwai karni chahiye.
      4. Re-organisation ke dauran bunching up (ek saath ikaththa hona) se bachna chahiye.
      5. Close supportweapons aur Re-organisation stores ko aage lane ke orders detail mein hona chahiye aur sabhi sambandhit partiyon ko pata hona chahiye.
      6. Commander ko objective par jaldi se jaldi pahunchna chahiye.
      7. Communication ka duolication hona chahiye.

29. **Reorganisation Mein Platoon Commander Ki Zimmedari.**

(a) Apni position ki tez recce karenge aur daen baen ki sub units se milap karenge. Agar platoon ki locality mein koi support arms ho to uski hifazat ka khyal rakha jaye.

(b) Apni section ki position aur tartib durust karega

(c) Hukam ke mutabiq OP lagaega, patrol bhejega aur baki hifazat ka bandobast karega.

(d) Khudai shuru karwaega.

(e) Ammunition ki kami ko pura karega.

(f) Qaidion ko apne Companyheadquarters mein bhejega.

(g) Mile hue hukam ke anusar reorganisation store ko mangwaega aur istemal karega.

30. Attack operation ek jokhim bhara op hai. Kisi bhi hamle ki safalta juniorleaders ki kushalta, pakka irada, apne commanders par bharosa, puri tayari, simplatoone plan aur clear order/ briefing par nirbhar karti hai.

**HAMLE KE LIYE PLATOON COMMANDER KE HUKUM**

**Zamini Nishan**

1. Wahi zamini nishan bataye jayen jo apke hukumon mein kaam ayenge.

**Khabar**

1. **Dushman.** 
   1. Position aur nafri.
   2. Hathyiar aur jagah (Agar malum ho).
   3. OP/LP jagah (Agar malum ho).
   4. Rukawatn aur qism.
   5. DF task (Agar malum ho).
2. **Apani.** 
   1. CompanyCommander ka Irada.
   2. Dayen, Bayen wali sub-uniton ki jagah.
   3. lmdadi Daste agar mile hon.
3. **Iraada.**  No\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_PLATOON Imdadi daston ke saath aj rat\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_baje tak ilaqa \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_par kabza karega. (Dohraho aur check karo).

**Tariqa**

1. Am hamla\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ up ya assault lane mein hoga.
2. **Section Aur Objective.**
   1. Bayen No\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_Section Objective\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.
   2. Dayen No.\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Section Objective\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. (c) Pichhe No\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_Section Objective\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (Zarurat parhane par kisi Section ki madad karega).
3. **Boundaries (Hadden).** Zamini Nishan dwara bataya jaye.
4. **Assembly Area.** 
   1. Jagah.
   2. Chalne ka samay.
   3. Order of March.
   4. Rasta.
   5. Navigation.
   6. Guide.
5. **FUP.** 
   1. Jagah.
   2. Pahunchane ka samay, (c) Guide.
   3. Formation.
   4. Navigation.
   5. FUP Chhorne ka samay.
   6. FUP Chhorne ka Ishara.
6. **Start Line.**  FUP ka agla kinara.
7. **Formation.** 
   1. FUP se Assault line tak.
   2. Assault line se objective tak.
8. **Raftar.**  FUP se objective tak.
9. **Rukawaten.** 
   1. Jagah aur par karne ke tariqa.
   2. Gap banana ki zimmewari.
   3. Formation mein badli.
   4. Fire support ka tariqa.
10. **Kargar fire ane par.** Section/Platoonbattle drill ko samjhayen.
11. **Mopping up ki karwai.** Zimmewari banten.
12. **Mopping up ki karwai.** Zimmewari banten.
    1. Section ki zimmewari.
    2. Patrol, OP/ LP bhejne ke liye nafri, task aur bhejne ki zimmewari.
    3. Support hathiyaron ki jagah aur task.
    4. Reorganisation stores.
       1. RV.
       2. Zirnmewari.
       3. Guide.

**Bandobast**

1. **Casualty.** Zakhmi hone par khas hida yaten aur uneh uthane ka tariqa.
2. **BFNA.** Inki baant aur jagah.
3. RAP ki jagah.
4. Khana/Pani.
5. **Ammunition.**
   1. Kitna carry kiya jayega.
   2. Re-organisation par bant.

**Milap**

1. **PlatoonCommander ki Location.**
   1. Assualt mein.
   2. Re-organisation mein.
2. **Company Headquarters ki Location.** 
   1. Assualt mein.
   2. Re-organisation mein.
3. Pahchan ke Nishan.
4. Pass word.
5. Koi Sawal.
6. Ghari milao.

**CHAPTER - 27**

**QUICK ATTACK**

## Ops of War V-II part-1 2005

**Quick Attack (Jaldi ka hamla)**

1. Quick aur deliberate (Tayari ka hamla) attack mein koi buniyadi farq nahin hai. Quick attack ke bare mein chand zaruri baten is prakar hai :-

(a) **Samay ka Mahatva.** Samay ka bahut mahatav hota hai. Jaldi aur tezi se kiya gaya hamle dushman ko apna defence aur mazboot karne se rok dega.

(b) Is hamle ke dauran niche wale commanders ko kafi choot mil jati hai.

(c) Recce aur plan banane mein kam samay istemal kiya jaata hai.

(d) Hamla tezi se karne ke liye achhe battle procedure aur drills ki zarurat parti hai.

(e) Recce ke liye samay ki kami ke karan dushman ka sahi andaza lagana zaruri hai.

(f) Samay ki kami ke karan Arty ka puri tarah deployment nahin ho sakega is liye apne hi hathiyaron ke istemal par zyada zor hoga.

2. **Quick Attack ke Darje.**

(a) **Taiyari ka Darja (Preparatory Stage).** Aage badkar dushman ka pata lagana, fire se use wahin rokna aur lagao banakar rakhna. Uske bad uske bare mein khabar haasil karna. Lagav hone ke baad dushman ko imdadi fire se engage rakha jaye aur saath hi hamlawar tukri ek taraf se assaultposition tak pahunch jaye.

(b) **Hamle ka Darja (Assault stage).** Hamla pure taqat ke saath kiya jaye. Hamla chotte failav paruntu gahrai tak jane wala ho. Dushman ke saamne chune hue hamle ki disha nahin badli jai.

(c) **Reorganisation.** Yeh hamle ka teesra aur antim darja hai. Ismen ki jane wali karwai ko bhag III mein vistar se bataya jayega.

**SECTION AUR PLATOON BATTLE DRILLS**

**Zaruri Baten**

3. Kisi bhi battle drill ke niminlikhit buniyadi zaruri baten hain jo aap ko age samjhaye jayenge :-

* 1. Fire and move.
  2. Soch vichar.
  3. Hukum.

**Fire and Move**

4. Section/ platoon ko fire aur move se advance karna sikhana nihayat zaruri hai.

Fire aur move ke nimnalikhit faide hain:-

(a) Yeh tactics ka mool siddhant hai aur junior leaders ke liye upari tactics ka parichay hai.

(b) Yeh adhiktar mool infantrytactics sikati hai jo ki is prakar ke op ke liye zaruri hai. eg:- FC, weapon handling, fire control, command aur leader-ship, team work aur physical fitness.

(c) Yeh ek sipahi mein aggressive spirit paida karta hai.

(d) Yeh platoon hamle ke liye adhik marak (offensive) aur adhik kargar fire support paida karta hai.

(e) Kisi bhi larai mein section ko dushman ki koi position clear karne ka task mil sakta hai; is samay leading section ko apne axis of advance se hat kar dushman ko clear karna padega. Section ko swatantra rup se bhi mopping up ke dauran koi chhota task mil sakta hai.

(f) Yeh jungle aur CI operations mein bhi mool battle drill hai.

**Fire and Move ki Basic Considerations**

5. Section/ platoon fire and move ke char basic considerations hai:-

(a) Khule/ exposed ground par bina covering fire ke koi harkat nahi honi chahiye.

(b) Commander dwara control.

(c) Covering fire ka angle zyada se zyada chauda hona chahiye (90 degree tak) lekin control kam nahi hona chahiye na hi samay barbad hona chahiye.

(d) **Ground.** Sabhi aad ka istemal karen. Jahan aad kam hai smoke ke istemal ke bare mein socha jaye.

**Battle Drill ka Appreciation**

6. **Section Battle Drill Ka Appreciation.** Section commander ko do paristithion ka samna karna par sakta hai:-

(a) Agar open section phans jata hai aur dushmanassault karne ke range mein hai to shayad ek hi sambhav faisla ho sakta hai- fire aur bayonet se assault.

(b) Agar normal range par dushman small arms fire se section ko rokne mein kamyab hota hai to sectioncommander ko nimn baton par faisla lena padega:-

(i) Assault ki disha.

(ii) LMG group ki position.

(iii) RL det ki position.

7. LMG aur RL ki position ka faisla ground ke upar nirbhar karta hai. Lekin LMG/ RL det agar kisi ek flank par pahle se deploy ho gaya hai to unhe usi flank par fire position ikhtyar karni paregi. Dushman ki kargarrange mein dets ko ek flank se dusre flank harkat karna shayad mumkin na ho paye.

8. **Platoon Battle Drill Ka Appreciation.** Detailed appreciation ke liye kafi samay ki zarurat parti hai, platoon level par itna samay mil pana durlabh hai. Dushman ke saath jab milap (contac) ho jata hai to platooncommander ko tezi se badalne wali paristithi ka samna karna parta hai aur use turant plan banana parta hai. Plan banane ke liye use appreciation (soch-vichar) ka ek chota rup apnana parta hai:-

(a) Aim.

(b) Ground.

(c) Plan.

9. **Aim.** Platoon level par irada aam taur par companycommander dwara diya gaya task hota hai.

10. **Ground.** Apne soch-vichar mein platooncommander ko kewal ground ka jaldi se nirikshan karna parta hai. Yeh sequence (kramasha) mein nimn heading mein karen:-

(a) Objective.

(b) Route (Rasta).

(c) Fire support(imdadi fire).

11. **Objective.** Dushman ki dispositons(failav) ko dhyan mein rakhte hue objective ko chuna jaye. Point section ki dushman ko location karne ki karwai aur platooncommander ki recce ke baad, platooncommander ko objective chunne mein dikkat nahi honi chahiye.

(a) Dushman kahan par hai.

(b) Dushman ki tadad aur maujud hathiyar kon kon se hain.

(c) Kya yeh Platoon ki kabiliyat mein hai.

12. **Rasta.** Ground ko LEFT (BAEN), CENTRE (MADHYA) AUR RIGHT (DAEN) bhagon mein bato aur har bhag mein nimn muddon par gaur karo:-

(a) Objective tak rasta.

(b) Move (harkat ) ke liye cover (aad).

(c) Obstacles (rukawaten).

(d) Distance (fasle).

(e) Assault ki positions (platoon fire aur move mein FUP nahi hoti).

(f) Kis disha se objective par hamla asani se kiya ja sakta hai.

(g) Annya raste objective tak kon kon se hain.

(h) Nimnlikhit ke liye in raston ke faide aur nuksan kon kon se hain.

(j) Suraksha.

(i) Nazar aur fire se bachav.

(ii) Par karne wale obst(badhaen).

(iii) Har raste se lagne wala samay.

(iv) Assault position ka milna.

13. **Fire Support.** Covering fire ke liye position chune. Nimn soch vichar karen:-

(a) Dushman ko beasar karne ke liye kis prakar ke fire support ki zarurat hai.

(b) Hamle ke dauran milne wala dushman ke nai position ko beasar kaise karenge.

(c) Harkat aur kabza karne ke liye kis samay adhik fire support ki zarurat hogi.

(d) Platoon mein kitni fire support hai aur kya yeh kafi hai.

(e) Hamle ke darje ke dauran kon kon se hathiyar adhik kamyab honge.

(f) In hathiyaron ko kahan par lagaya jaye.

14. **Plan.** Platoon level par plan ground par nirbhar hota hai aur platoon commander ko kewal situation (halat) ke mutabik upayukt/ sabse achha battle drill ka chunav karna hota hai.

**Battle Drill Ke Orders**

15. Pointt section ke liye pahle se hi mana jaa sakta hai :-

(a) Section ko yeh pata hota hai ki dushman kahan hota hai. Isi liye dushman ki khabar section dene ki zarurat nahi paregi.

(b) Advance ke hukum dete samay section ne yeh bataya hoga ki section ka irada jaldi se jaldi advancekarna aur chote virodh ko dur karna hai.

16. Isi liye section level par quick attack ke orders (hukum) mein kewal nimn zaruri hai:-

(a) LMG-RL group (supportgroup) ke kis taraf se Riflegroup harkat karega? udaharan ke taur par 'LEFT FLANKING (BAEN SE HAMLA)' MEIN Riflegroup LMG-RL group ke left/ baen se move/ harkat karega.

(b) Pahle kaunsa group harkat karega. Agar LMG-RL group pahle move/ harkat kar raha hai to woh kis jagah par harkat karega.

**AnyaSection**

17. Yadi koi sectionplatoon ki hamle ki battle drill mein shamil hai to kewal nimn orders ki zarurat hai:-

(a) Dushman ki location/ failav;

(b) Hukumon mein batayi gayi platoon battle drill

(c) Route (rasta) aur assaultposition.

**Platoon level Par Orders**

18. Platoon ko short cut orders (hukum) ke liye taiyar aur trained hona chahiye. Platoon level par nimn orders se zyada ki zarurat nahi padni nahi chahiye:-

(a) Dushman ka disposition (kis type ka dushman hai, uski nafri;weapons, location etc.).

(b) Irada.

(c) Platoon battle drill jo istemal mein lai jane wali hai.

(d) Route (rasta) aur assault position.

(e) Larai ki halat ke mutabik battle drill mein koi tabdili.

**Section Battle Drill**

19. Duhsman ke fire ke andar ane se lekar dushman ki location ko clear karne tak section ki karwai ek drill ke mutabik ki jati hai aur ise char bhag/ parts mein banta gaya hai:-

(a) **Bhag I.** Dushman ka kargar fire ane par section ki karwai/ reaction.

(b) **Bhag II.** Dushman ki location ka pata lagana aur use neutralize/ nakara karna.

(c) **Bhag III.** Assault / hamla.

(d) **Bhag IV.** Re-organisation.

Battle drill mein Bhag I aur II milkar section ko 1-2 minute se zyada samay nahi lagna chahiye.

**Dushman ka KargarFire Ane Par Section ki Karwai/ Reaction**

**Aam**

20. Advance ke dauran SectionCommander lagatar nimn ke liye nazar rakhega:-

(a) Fire control orders ke liye naye reference points. Jaise-jaise section advance karta rahta hai section commander yeh reference point section ko describe/ indicate kar sakta hai aur har jawan ishare uska izhar kar sakta hai ki reference points 'seen'. Reference points samajh mein na aye to 'not seen' pukara ja sakta hai.

(b) Dushman ka kargar fire ane par section ke groups ke liye aad lene ki position/ jagah. Jab bhi sambha ho sectioncommander in position ko section ko indicate karega. Yeh orders HO-SAKTA-HAI ke rup mein diye jayenge e.g. "*Agar hamare upar kargar fire samne se aata hai to support group dahine patharon mein aad lega aur rifle group uthi hui zamin ke saath aad lega*".

**Drill**

21. Adhiktar jawanon ki kargar fire ane ke baad zamin par let jane ki pravirtti hoti hai. Lekin yeh galat hai kyon ki dushman target saaf honepar/ target ko aad na/ kam hone par hi fire karega. Sabse achha marg hoga daurna; kyon ki daurta target engage karne ke liye bahut mushkil hai. Lekin isse section par ka control kho sakta hai agar nimn drill nahin kai jaye to:-

22. Section commander aad pakarne ke liye order dega "aad pakdo".

(a) "Aad pakdo" ke hukum par section ka har jawan section commander ke HO- SAKTA-HAI orders mein di gai position mein ya koi nazdiki aad pakrega. Lekin koi bhi jawan section commander ke itna dur nahi jayega ki uski awaz na sun sake magar section commander ki indicate ki gai position par jaa sakte hain.

(b) Har jawan aad pakadna se pahle zamin par diye lagaega/ tezi se gir padega aur crawl karke alag hatega taki jab woh jawan aad se dekhbhal karega aur shist lega to dushman ki shist us par nahi hogi.

(c) Har jawan dekhbhal/ observation karne ke liye position lega. Jis ko bhi section commander ki awaz sunai nahi deti woh sectioncommander ke nazdik crawl karke jayega.

(d) Jis bhi jawan ko dushman dikhai dega woh sectioncommander ke hukum ka intezar na karte hue jawabi fire karega.

(e) Usul ke taur par jab dushman se lagav ho jata to aisa nahi hona chahiye ki kisi samay koi jawan kuch bhi nahi kar raha ho. Har jawan mein ladai ki bHavildarna honi chahiye aur use nimn mein se kuch na kuch karte rahna chahiye:-

(i) Firing; ya

(ii) Dekhbhal;ya

(iii) Dekhbhal karne ke liye nai position ke liye harkat; ya

(iv) Firing karne ke liye nai position ke liye harkat; ya

(v) Hamle ke liye harkat.

(f) Ikattha hona (bunching) hamesha tala jayega. RL aur LMG group zarurat padne par ek saath/ nazdik/ munasib duri par ho sakte hain, baki koi bhi jawan din ke dauran khule ilake mein ek dusre ke 5 m se kam ke fasle mein nahi hoga-woh bhi aad ke mutabik.

(g) Sankshep mein, Sectioncommander se "aad pakdo" ka hukum milne ke baad DAUDO- LETO- RENGO- AAD PAKDO- DEKHBHAL KARO- SHIST LO- (dushman dikhai dene par) FIRE KARO.

**Dushman ki Location ka Pata Lagana aur Use Neutralize/ Nakara Karna**

23. Dushman ki location ka pata lagana aam taur par asan nahi hai. Dushman ki location ka pata nahi laga to bina casualty ke section shayad hi age badh payega (bina smoke ke). Section apni pahal bhi kho sakta hai aur Platoon ka advance bhi ruk sakta hai.

**Dushman ki Location ka Pata Lagane ki Drill**

24. Dushman ki location ka pata lagane ki drill teen star/ stgs mein puri hoti hai:-

(a) **Dekhbhal karke.** Fire ki awaz jis disha se aayi us disha mein dekho. Awaz se fasle ka anuman lag jayega. Lagbhag 30 second ke baad bhi kuch dikhai na de to dekhbhal se dushman ki location ka pata lagana bahut hi durlabh hai.

(b) **Fire karke.** Section commander do riflemen ko dushman ki sabse zyada sambhav location mein do-do round fire karne ka hukum dega. Baki section apne-apne arc of observation mein bade dhyan se dekhbhal/ obs karenge. Dushman ka koi jawabi fire nahi ane par section commander do aur riflemen ko fire karke dekhne ki koshish kar sakta hai. Yadi phir bhi dushman ka koi jawabi fire nahi aya to yato dushman achhi training paya hua hai ya woh withdraw ho gaya hai (piche hat gaya hai).

(c) **Harkat karke.** Section commander ek ya do jawanon ko age lagbhag 10 m agli aad tak uth kar daurne ka hukum dega. Agar phir bhi dushman fire nahi karta hai to yeh karwai dobara bhi ho sakti hai. Yadi wahan dushman hai to woh bahut achhi training paya hua hai aur is mushkil target ko engage karne ki galati nahi kar raha hai (ek aad se dusri aad 10 m ka fasla tezi se cover karta hua admi ek bahut mushkil target hai). Dushman ka koi jawab na milne par section ko advance jari rakhna padega.

**Target ko Indicate karna**

25. Jis bhi jawan ko dushman Sectioncommander se pahle dikhai dega woh turant ek tracer round load karega aur jor se pukarega "mera tracer dekho" aur fire karega aur tab tak fire karta rahega jab tak sectioncommander use Fire Control Order na de. Is dril ke nimn faide hain:-

(a) Ek sadharan jawan ko hum Fire Control Orders dene ki ya kewal target ka durust/ hu-ba-hu description jaldi se dena ki umeed nahi rakh sakte.

(b) Tracer ki maar dekhne ke baad sectioncommander asani aur jaldi se Fire Control Order de sakta hai; isse samay ki kafi bachat hogi.

(c) Location kiye gaye dushman par turant fire dal jata hai.

**Target/ Dushman ko Neutralise/Barbad Karna**

26. Target ko neutralise/barbad karne ki sujhav ke taur par drill iss prakar ho sakti hai:-

(a) Jaise hi sectioncommander ko dushman ki location ka pata lagata haiuse turant ek Fire Control Order dena zaruri hai taki woh section ke Fire Power ki takat us par dal kar use neutralisekar sake. Agar kuch jawan pahale hi fire kar rahe ho to section Commander Fire Control Order jari karne se pahle "stop" lagaega/ pukarega.

(b) Yeh Fire Fight jeetne ke baad sectioncommander ko dushman par lagatar fire dalwakar pahal/ initiative kayam rakhna chahiye. Isi dauran use section ko Tarkibi, chalaki, tactic se move karke dushman ke nazdik pahunchna chahiye taki use assault kiya ja sake.

**Assault/ Hamla**

27. Section level par aam taur par do tariqe se hamla kiya ja sakta hai:-

(a) **Left flanking (Bayen Se).** Jis mein Rifle Group LMG-RL Group

(Support Group) ke BAYEN SE karwai karta hai:-

(b) **Right flanking (Bayen Se).** Jis mein Rifle Group LMG-RL Group (Support Group) ke DAHINE SE karwai karta hai:-

***OBJECTIVE***

***SP GP***

*FIG 1 : LEFT FLANKING ASSAULT*

***OBJECTIVE***

**RIF GP**

**SP GP**

*FIG 2 : RIGHT FLANKING ASSAULT*

(c) Assault ke liye sectioncommander ke hukum nimn hote hain; isse adhik ki zarurat nahin hai:-

(i) Assault kis side se hoga LEFT ya RIGHT SE (support- groupse LEFT ya RIGHT ki disha).

(ii) Kaun sa group pahle harkat karega riflegroup ya supportgroup.

(iii) Agar LMG-RL group pahle harkat karta hai to woh kis position par harkat karega.

28. Dhyan mein rakhne wali mukhya baten:-

(a) Section commander rifle group ko khud lead karega. Woh LMG aur RL group ko unki antim position tak jahan se ye groups riflegroup ke assault cover karenge awaj ke control (voice control) mein rakhega.

(b) Khule ilake mein covering fire ke bina koi harkat nahi hogi. Covering fire ka angle zyada se zyada hona chahiye.

(c) Jab riflegroup ek bound se dusre bound par fire position ikhtyar karta hai, to LMG aur RL group ko nai fire position ikhtyar karne ke liye age badhna chahiye jahan se woh rifle group ko achha fire support de sakte hain. Jaise hi LMG aur riflegroup apni nai position mein aa jate hain rifle group ko ek bound age badhna chahiye.

(d) Assault mein jane se pahle jin riflejawano ki rifle par grenade projector chadha ho use zarurat padne par hukum dekar utarwa dena chahiye.

(e) Assault ki raftar aur charge ka fasla ground, jawanon ki condition aur section commander ke control ke upar nirbhar karega. Aam taur par final/ antim assault shuru- shuru mein paidal chal se hoga aur fire kandhe ya hip position se kia jayega ise kahte hain marching fire. Jab riflegroup dushman ke lagbhag 45 m - 18 m pahunch jata hai to section commander hukum dega "CHARGE".

(f) LMG aur RL Group ko itna ammunition carry karna chahiye ki ek section ke normal hamle ko support kar sake.

(g) LMG aur RL No 2 magzine/container drill karenge:-

(i) Re-organisation hone par.

(ii) Jab section ka advance ruk jata hai aur section; Platoon ke liye fire section niyukt kiya jata hai.

(iii) Section Commander ke hukum par ya zarurat ke mutabik anya maukon par.

(h) Jaise assault ho jata hai LMG aur RL Group jyada se jyada der tak fire support denge aur rifle group ke safety angle/safety distance mein ane ke baad fire ko rifle group ke age objective par switch/shift karenge.

**Reorganisation**

29. Objective par assault karne ke baad Section reorganisation ki nimn drill karega:-

(a) Jaise hi support group yeh dekhta hai ki rifle group assault ke baad cover lene laga hai to woh double se rifle group ke saath aa kar milega.

(b) Section commander objective ke area ka search karwaega chupe ya ghayal dushman ko pakadne ke liye. Jo rifle-men is task ke liye detail hote hai unhe dusre rifle-man se cover kiya jayega.

(c) Section commander nimn check karega:-

(i) Section Commander har rifle-man, LMG aur RL Group ki position check karega aur zarurat pade to unhe re-site karega. Section commander arc of observation aur fire, aur reference points bhi niyukt/ detail karega.

(ii) Casualty.

(iii) Ammunition kitna kharch hua hai.

(iv) LMG mag ki re-filling/ bharna.

(d) Pura section apne platoon commander ke agle aadesh ke liye chaukanna rahta hai.

(e) Reorganisation ki anya karwai platoon ke bandobast ke niche ki jati hai.

**Platoon Battle Drill**

30. Platoon Battle drill teen bhagon mein puri hoti hai. Yeh drill ek saral tarike ki banai gai hai taki Platooncommander chhote virodh ko dur kar sake. Yeh drill fire and move ke mul siddhant par nirdharit hai. Platooncommander ke die hukum ke mutabik chahe woh zabani ya fieldsignal se diye gaye hon SectionCommanders karwai karte hain. Durust fieldsignal ka istemal karna chahiye. Jab sikhlai mein bataye field signals ke alawa anya fieldsignals ki zarurat parti hai to unhe improvise karna chahiye parantu ek battalion mein yeh fieldsignals sabko pata hone chahiye.

31. **Platoon Battle Drill.** Platoon battle drill ko teen bhagon mein banta jata hai:-

(a) **Bhag I**: Dushman ka kargar fire ane par Point Section ki karwai.

(b) **Bhag II** : Flanking attack (ek taraf se hamla).

(c) **Bhag III** : Reorganisation.

**Dushman ka Kargar Fire Ane par Point Section ki Karwai**

32. Dushman ka kargar fire ane par Pointsection ki karwai nimnlikhit Do darjon mein puri hoti hai:-

(a) **Pahla Darja.** Jaise hi point Section zamin pakarta hai, pura platoon niche likhe tarike se hamle ki taiyari karta hai:-

(i) Platoon commander apni party ke saath aise sthan par jata hai jahan se halat ka sahi jayza le sake aur Company Commander ko dushman se milap ki khabar radio ke zariye de sake.

(ii) PlatoonHavildar baki platoon ki harkat ko jari rakhwata hai jis se ki age se age lekin pointsection ki ladai se alag rah kar all round defence haasil kiya ja sake. Lekin use yeh achhi tarah pata hona chahiye ki Platoon ka koi bhi hissa dushman ke fire ke andar ata hai to Platoon ko safal Fire aur Move karna kafi mushkil hoga. Platoon ko Halt ka hukum dete hi woh bache hue donon section commandes, 51 Mortar aur 84mm RL (agar ek/ donon RLs ko section se alag karke Fire base mein istemal karna ho to) dets ke commanders ko iktha karke 'O' Group RV par bhejne ke liye taiyar karta hai. Agar Platoon Havildar Mortar/ RL ko fire karte hue sunta hai to woh apneaap No 2 ko No 1 ke paas bhejta hai.

(b) **Dusra Darja.** Jaise hi Platooncommander yeh andaza/ idea lagata hai ki point Section apne fire aur move se dushman ki location par kabza nahi kar sakta to woh ek jaldi ka soch-vichar karta hai aur nimn karwai karta hai:-

(i) `O' Group ke liye RV ka chunav karta hai.

(ii) `F' Group ke liye RV ka chunav karta hai.

(iii) PlatoonHavildar ke liye orderly/ runner dwara message bhejta hai - 'O' group aur 'R' group ke liye RV.

(iv) Age wale section ko hukam ya ishara karta hai.

(aa) Fire section ki karwai karne ke liye.

(ab) Platoon kis taraf (flank) se hamla karega.

(v) Yadi avashyak ho to smoke screen ke madad se fire section ko aachi position haasil karwata hai. Yadi point Section fire Section ki karwai karne ke liye achhi location mein nahi hai to Mortar/ RL ka smoke dalwa ta hai taki point Section commander apni Section ko kisi achhi location par le ja sake.

(vi) Jaise hi Platoon commander fire Section ki location se santusht ho jaye woh 51mm Mortar ko HE aur Smoke fire ka task deta hai.

(vii) Radio set dwara CompanyCommander ko puri khabar deta hai.

(viii) Platoon commander RV par jata hai aur RV par `O' group ko hukam deta hai.

33. PlatoonCommander ka WO (orderly/ runner dwara ) milne par PlatoonHavildar nimn karwai karta hai:-

(a) 'O' Group (do Sectioncommanders, RL det commander - Mtns mein) ko 'O' group RV ke liye hukum ke mutabik rawana karta hai.

(b) Bache hue Mortar det ko Mortar det commander ke saath milne ke liye rawana karta hai.

(c) Bache hue Platoon ko batai gai RV par tartib waar harkat karata hai. RV par pahunchne par Sections ko All Round Defence mein tartib waar lagata hai.

**Flanking Attack**

34. Hamle ke liyePlatoonCommander hukam deta hai jinmen yeh shamil hote hain:-

(a) Dushman ki Khabar.

(b) Irada.

(c) Hamle ki disha (dahine ya baen se).

(d) Fire section aur fire supportweapons ki jagah aur task (agar pahle se clear na ho).

(e) Rasta aur alternateposition.

(f) Battle drill se hatkar ki jane wali karwai (rear Section se LMG/ RL leading Section ko dena).

35. Order dene ke baad Platooncommander aur Platoon 'O' groupPlatoon RV mein jaa kar apni- apni toli se mil jayenge.

36. Flank hamla karte samay dhyan mein rakhne wali baten:-

(a) Assaultposition tak harkat karne ke liye leading Section woh Section hai jo Platoon ki harkat ke dauran us disha mein thi jis disha se flank hamla hone wala hai. Udahran ke taur par LEFT rear Section leading Section hoga agar Platoon LEFT flank hamla kar raha hai isi tarah RIGHT rear Section; Platoon ke RIGHT flank attack ke liye leading Section hoga.

(b) Assaultposition mein leading Section; Platooncommander ke bahar ki taraf form-up hota hai. Yani jab LEFT flank hamla ho raha hai tab leading Section Platoon commander ke LEFT (BAEN) ki taraf form - up hota hai aur jab RIGHT flank hamla ho raha hai tab leading Section Platoon commander ke RIGHT (DAHINE) ki taraf form - up hota hai.

(c) Mortar (aur RL; jab RL det Platooncommander ke saath hota hai) ko koi task nahi diya jata aur woh Platooncommander ke saath harkat karta hai.

(d) Assaultposition ke liye harkat ke dauran yadi Platoon usi flank ki taraf se kisi virodh ka saamna karta hai to drill is prakar hogi:-

(i) Leading Section LMG/ RL/ donon LMG aur RL apni Section se hatenge aur is nae virodh ko neutralize karenge.

(ii) Agar dushman ka fire bahut bhari (severe) hai to assault karne wale Section ko halt karna padega.

(iii) Issi dauran PlatoonHavildar ko Mortar/ RL det ke liye rawana kar diya jayega taki woh assaultSection ke line of Advance aur nae virodh ke bich mein ek fire ka parda bana sake.

(e) Assaultposition ke liye harkat ke dauran Platoon ko cover raste ke upar hi virodh ka saamna karna pada to dushman ko clear karke hi hamle ko jari rakha jaa sakta hai. Iss ke liye drill nimn hogi:-

(i) Leading Section ab pointSection ka kaam karega.

(ii) Agar yeh Section dushman ki iss nai location ko clear karne mein saksham nahi hai to Platoon commander iss leading Section ko fire Section ka kaam karne ka hukum dega, aur dushman ki nai location par teesre Section se assault karega.

**Reorganisation**

37. **Reorganisation.** Hamla ho jane ke baad Platoondefenceposition ikhtyar karega jo objective se age bhi jo sakta hai iss position mein all roundfield of fire hone chahiye. Yeh karwai ek drill ke taur par ki jayegi:-

(a) Ek tarfa hamle ke liye jate samay age wala section (leading Section) madhya men lag jayega (Platoon ki pahli axis of advance).

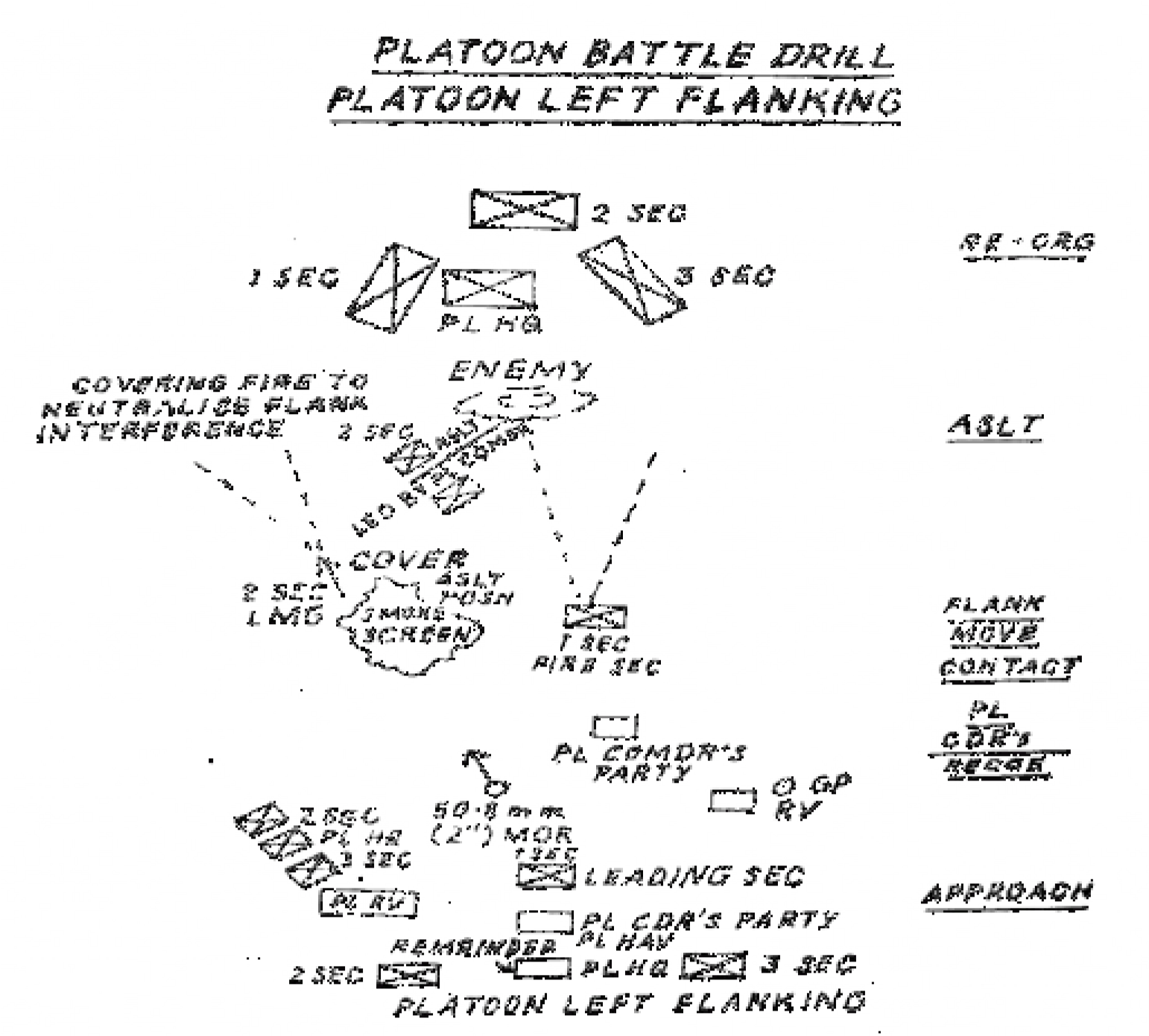
(b) Dusra assaultSectionobjective ke upar se ho kar uske paar jayega aur dur wale flank par position lega.

(c) Fire Section khule hue flank ko cov karne ke liye position lega.

(d) Platoon headquarters madhya mein jayega.

(e) Platooncommander tamam posnon par jayega aur sare Section arcs check karega.

(f) Platoon Havildar ghayalon ki dekhbhal, PW ko kabu mein karna, ammunition ke kharche ka hisab aur zarurat parne par uski dubara bant karta hai.Platoon Commander radio par Company Commander ko report deta hai.



Note:

38. Guide ke taur par Sections ke bich ka fasla 100m sezyada nahi hona chahiye.

Yeh fasla khuli zamin mein badh sakta hai aur close ilake mein kam ho sakta hai.

39. Bahut close ilaqe mein (jungle) rear Sections ek dusre ke piche file/ single file formation mein chalenge.

40. **Larai ki taiyari.** Larai mein ane se pahle Platoon aur Sectioncommander ko larai ke liye taiyari karna zaruri hai jis mein nimn check kiya jata hai:-

* 1. Pers camouflage.
  2. Larai ke liye hathiyar ke upar sights.
  3. Hathiyar aur ammunition ki serviceability.
  4. Hathiyar aur ammunition ko asani se istemal mein laya ja sakna.

41. Achha battle drill karne ke liye kuch zaruri karwaiyan:-

(a) Har Jawan ko tracer roundscarry karna chahiye taki woh zarurat parne par unhe istemal kar sake (Tarcer ammunition alag se rakhna chahiye).

(b) Commanders ko ground ka lagatar soch vichar karte rahna chahiye aur formation ko ground ke mutabik badalna chahiye. Commanders ko yeh lagatar sochte rahna chahiye ki LMG aur RL groups ko formation mein kis side rakhna sab se faide mand hoga.

(c) Jawanon ka dhyan aakarshit karne ke liye ek simple/ sada ishara niyukt karna chahiye taki orders asani se pass kiye jaye. Durust Fieldsignal ka istemal karna chahiye. Jab sikhlai mein bataye Field signals ke alawa anya fieldsignals ki zarurat parti hai to unhe improvise karna chahiye parantu ek Battalion mein yeh Fieldsignals sabko pata hone chahiye.

(d) Fieldsignals tab dene chahiye jab Platoon/ Section commander zabani hukum nahi de sakta.

(e) Section aur Platoon itna trained hona chahiye ki har zawan apne Section/ Platoon commander ko ya uske ishare ko dekh kar yeh jaan jaye ki use age kya karna hai.

(f) Zawan itne trained hone chahiye ki ve chhitt-put fire se na dare jo unke ird-gird gir raha ho. Jaise hi dushman ka small arms fire itna kargar ho jata hai ki hamara casualty ho jaye tab Section commander ko apne Section ko battle drill mein lana chahiye.

42. Section aur Platoon ko Battle drills ki taknik mein mahirta haasil karni chahiye aur larai mein akal mandi se unka istemal karna chahiye. Yah battle drills lacheele hain aur zamin aur dushman ki halat ke mutabik un mein tabdili karni chahiye. Bagair larai ki halat ko samjhe/ har situation mein ek hi drill istemal mein nahi lani chahiye.

43. Battle drills ki agar sahi training di jaye to yeh atmawishwas, initiative/ pahal, team work, aur akramak karwai ko larai ki halat mein badhawa dete hain aur juniorleaders ko lambe orders dene ki zarurat nahi parti hai.

**CHAPTER - 28**

**BUNKER BURSTING DRILL**

**Bunker ki Jankari**

1. **Paribhasha.** Yeh ek prakar ka field fortification hai jo ki zamin ke saath, ander ya upar bana ho sakta hai. Is mein hathiyar fire karne ke liye loop holes hote hain. Ismein over head protection dia jata hai jo ki splinter aur air burst ke khilaf bachav deta hai. Amuman bunkers cement aur concrete ke bane hote hain.

2. Larai ke dauran alag-alag halat mein alag-alag size aur pattern ke bunker ho sakte hain. DCB ke ilake mein bunker bundh ke andar hi bane hote hain aur woh bundh se bahar nazar nahi aate, jabki maidani ilake mein ya DCB ke pichhe ke ilake mein yeh zamin ke satah se upar uthe ho sakte hain. Iske alawa bunkers aur uske loop hole ka size aur banawat hathiyar ke mutabik hota hai. Amuman bunker se LMG aur MMG hathiyaron ka fire kiya jata hai aur usi ke mutabik unke size mein farq hota hai. Bunker ke loop hole ko wire mesh se bhi cover kiya ja sakta hai jisse ki dushman is mein gren ya pole charge nahi daal sake. Ek bunker mein 3 ya 4 jawan ho sakte hain.

3. **Bunker alag-alag prakar se banae ja sakte hain.** Jaise cement aur concrete bunker, CGI sheet aur sand covered bunker. Jis samaan se bunker banaya gaya hai usi ke mutabiq woh protection deta hai.

**Bunker Bursting Team ki Banawat**

4. Platoon ko bunker bursting ke liye do groups mein banta ja sakta hai:-

(a) Assault Group.

(b) Support Group.

5. **Assault Group.**  Platoon ke do section assault group mein shamil hote hain. No.1 Section ko ek bunker barbad karne ka task diya jata hai. No.2 section uska reserve hota hai.

6. **Support Group.**  Is group ka commander Platoon Havaldar hota hai. Is mein Platoon ka No.3 section hota hai jo ki LMG aur RL det se covering fire deta hai. Platoon ka 51mm Mor det bhi iske saath ho sakta hai.

**Bunker Bursting Team**

7. **Bunker bursting ki zimmewari ek section ko di jati hai.** Yeh section bunker ko barbad karne ke liye niminlikhit teams mein bante ja sakte hain :-

* 1. Covering party.
  2. Demolition ya gren lobbing party.
  3. Exit party.

8. **Covering Party.**

(a) **Str.** - 4 - 5 Jawan.

(b) **Hathiyar.** - LMG, RL aur personal wpns. RL No-1 aur RL No-2 ka personal hathiyar.

(c) **Kaam.** - Jab demolition party bunker ki taraf harkat karti hai tab use covering fire deta hai.

9. **Demolition Ya Gren Lobbing Party.**

(a) **Str.** - 2 Jawan

(b) **Hathiyar.** - Personal weapon.

(c) **Kaam.** - Bunker mein gren dalna ya charge lagakar barbad karna.

(d) Yadi UBGL ka istemal kiya ja sakta ho to yeh party detail karne ki zarurat nahin padegi.

10. **Exit Party.**

(a) **Str.** - 2 - 3 Jawan.

(b) **Weapon.** - Personal weapon.

(c) **Task.** - Bunker ke exit ko cover karna aur bhagte hue dushman ko barbad karna.

**Bunker Bursting Drill**

11. Mine field ke nazdik pahunchne par company ke support weapons company fire base mein deploy kar diye jate hain. Jab Platoon obectivej ki taraf harkat karta hai to us samay company fire base se fire support diya jata hai taki dushman ko pin down karke aimed fire dalne se roka ja sake. Jab Platoon dushman ke defence ke zyada nazdik ya takriban 400-500 m tak aa jata hai tab Platoon commander platoon ke Support Group ko deploy karta hai. Platoon Havaldar ke yakin par chhor deta hai. Halanki section ko pahle se hi bunkers ki zimmewari di hui hoti hai lekin phir bhi unhen dobara bunker barbad karne ke liye brief kiya jata hai. Ek section ko ek bunker barbad karne ke liye diya jata hai. Dusra section reserve mein hota hai aur tisra section is samay support group ke saath rahta hai. Pehla section bunker ki taraf advance karta hai. Dusra reserve section iske nazdik hi rehta hai. Platoon commander leading section ke saath aata hai.

12. Section commander pahle se hi alag-alag partian bana deta hai aur jab section bunker ke nazdik pahunchata hai tab LMG Group ya covering party position le leta hai. Yeh party grenade lobbing aur exit party ke movement ko cover karti hai. Is samay company fire base aur support group fire band kar deta hai. Covering party ke position mein aate hi grenade lobbing party bunker ki taraf harkat karti hai. Yeh fire aur mov ke tariqe se bunker ke nazdik aate hain aur Gren HE No.36 bunker mein fainkte hain, jisse ki dushman barbad ho jaye ya bunker mein aag lag jaye ya phir dhuyan se dum ghut jaye.Yadi section mein UBGL hai to grenade lobbing party ki jagah, section ka bomber man bina nazdik jaye gren fire karta hai.

13. Grenade lobbing party ke saath-saath alag disha se exit party bhi bunker ke pichhe ki taraf se harkat karti hai aur bunker ke pichhe ke darwaje ya exit ko cover karti hai. Jaise hi gren lobbing party grenade ya demolition charge lagati hai exit party exit ke raste se bunker mein rapid fire dalti hai jisse ki dushman barbad ho jaye. Yadi koi bahar nikal kar bhagne ki koshish karta hai use bhi exit party barbad karti hai. Section Commander aam taur par exit party ke saath hota hai. Jaise hi bunker barbad ho jata hai section commander ke pahle se hi mukarar kiye signal par section ke baki jawan bunker ko capture kar lete hain aur dusre section ki karwai shuru ho jati hai. Yadi section bunker ko barbad karne mein asfal ho jata hai tab reserve section ko bunker barbad karne ka task diya jata hai, jo ki isi prakar karwai karta hai lekin alag-alag disha se.

14. Jab bunker barbad ho jata hai tab section kabhi bhi us bunker ke ander jakar occupy nahin karta hai, balki uske aas pass ki aad ko pakarta hai. Yadi sahi aad nahin hai tabhi bunker ko pakarta hai aur hathiyaro ko is prakar site karta hai ki wahan se dushman ke neighbouring bunker par fire dal sake.

15. Ek Platoon ko 2 ya 3 bunkers barbad karne ke liye diye ja sakte hain. Halanki yeh aisa nahi hai ki un bunkers ko capture karne ke baad Platoon ki zimewari khatam ho jati hai. Yadi aisa mauka milta hai ki dushman kafi kamjor pad raha hai aur kafi confusion mein hai tab Platoon commander mauke ko dekhte hue apne section ko aur bhi bunker barbad karne ka task de sakta hai. Apna task pura karne ke baad Platoon commander dusre Platoon commander ko dushman ke dusre bunkers ke baare mein jankari deta hai aur apne location se unhen covering fire bhi deta hai. Dusra platoon bhi apna support group aam taur par pahli platoon ke ilake mein deploy karta hai.

16. Kuchh aisi khabar/sahayta jo pahla platoon/section commander dusre platoon/section commander ko de sakta hai:-

(a) Dushman ke bunkers ki location.

(b) Dushman ke automatic hathiyaron ki location.

(c) Apne bunkers ki location.

(d) Support Group ka deploy ki jagah.

(e) Apne khud ke automatic hathiyaron ki location.

(f) Guides.

17. Plan kitna bhi achha ho yadi use sahi tarike se implement nahin kia jaye tab safalta nahin mil sakti. Ladai mein vijay tabhi haasil ho sakti hai jab dushman ke ilake par kabza kiya jaye aur yeh kabza haasil karne ke liye yeh zaruri hai ki dushman ko dhoka dete hue uske har bunker/trench ko barbad kiya jaye. Yeh tabhi ho sakta hai jab jawanon ko bunker bursting drill mein maharat haasil ho.

18. Abhi sena mein new ganeration ke hathiyar jase ki MGL/UBGL shamil ho jane se hum dusre tarike se bhi bankar ko barbad kar sakte hain. Yadi bankar ko hun in hathiyaro ke sidhe fire se barbad kar sakte hain to bunkar bursting drill kuch is prakar se ki jayegi:-

(a) Ek section ko bunkar bursting ki jimmewari di jayegi.

* + 1. Covering party.
    2. Demolition party.
    3. Exit party.

(b) Covering party aur exit party ki nafri aur task pahle ki tara hi hongi.

(c) **Demolition party.**

(i) Nafri - 2-3 Jawan

(ii) Hathiyar - MGL/UBGL.

(iii) Task - Bunker se 100-150 m door se loop hole ki jaria bankar ke andar grenade fire kar ke bunker ko barbad karna. Agar is prakar bunker barbad ho jata hain to Demolition party ko bunker ke nazdik ja kar grenade faikane aur charge lagane ki zarurat nahi padegi.

**CHAPTER - 29**

**ATTACK IN SKIRMISH ORDER**

**Parichay**

1. Duniya mein vigyan aur prajukti ke unnati ke saath aneko naye hathiyar aur upkaran bane hai. Naye upkaran aur hathiyaro ka sena mein pravesh hote hi sena ke conventional operations ke tariqe mein kafi tabdili lana para hai. Udaharan ke taur pe night vision devices ke aane ke karan raat aur din mein antar kafi kam ho gaya hai. Raat ke andhere mein jo karwaiya ki ja sakti thi who night sights ke karan abhi sambhav nahi hai. Ishi parkar se conventional attack ke tariqe mein bhi badlav zaruri mehsus kiya gaya aur naye assault techniques ka aabibhav hua jisme se attack in skirmish order ek aham tariqa hai.

**Attack in Skirmish Order Paribhasha**

2. Skirmish order of attack ek anukram ka paraspar samanwit hamla hai jisme anek sections lagbhag ek saath infantry ke basic tactics “fire aur move” istemal karte hue attack karte hai. Iss technique mein release point ka istemal hota hai. Khasusiyat yeh hota hai ki move ke dauran command aur control decentalised hota hai aur assaulting team section strength ka hota hai. Har ek section ko aamuman ek bunker objective ke rup mein diya jaata hai.

3. Skirmish order of attack ka maksad hota hai ki dushman ke saath close in kar larai mein unka niyantran kam karne ko majbur karne ke saath hi reaction kshamata kam karna aur unke hathiyaro ka istemal karne ka kshamata simit karna taki apni operations mein tezi laaya ja sake.

**Anukul Paristhitiyan aur Aawasyak Taiyariyan**

4. Skirmish order of attack ke safalta ke liye jo anukul paristhitiyan ki jarurat hai who iss parkar se hai :

* 1. Defender ne jab wide frontages mein defence aekhtiyar kiye hue ho aur defence localities ke beech jyada gaps ho.
  2. Jab defences weakly held ho khas kar depth mein aur flanks mein.
  3. Dushman ne jab hasty defence aekhtiyar kiya hua ho.
  4. Jab kharab mausam ke karan dushman ke surveillance kshamta simit ho jati ho.
  5. Jab zamini paristhition ke karan defence apne beech mein mutual support mein na ho.

5. Skirmish order of attack ke liye kuch taiyaariyan pehle se hona nihayati jaruri hai taki iss technique mein safalta mile. Yeh mudde agar sahi se haasil kar liya jaye to operation kafi asan ho jata hai.

(a) Success kafi had tak nirbhar karta hai junior leadership ke kabiliyat par. Iss wajah se junior leaders ko highly motivated, initiative lene wala, physically fit aurmentally robust hona nihayati jaruri hota hai.

(b) Company, platoon aur section level par navigation ka kshamata ale darje ka hona chahiye kyunki section bhi iss technique mein independently karwai karta hai.

(c) Sub unit training ka mahatwa bahut barh jata hai khas kar fire control, field craft aur battle craft ke bare mein sabhi jawano ko bariki se pata hona chahiye.

(d) Int pakka hona chahiye. Jo bhi khabar milta hai ushko reliable sources se verify karna jaruri hota hai.

(e) Platoon aur section level tak ki objective capture karne ki karwai ka vistar se vichar karna chahiye aur ushke mutabik planning karna chahiye.

(f) Ilaqe ke bare mein jankari hona chahiye. Recce ke dauran objective ke bare mein jitna ho sake details pata karna chahiye.

(g) Fire support sahi tariqe se plan karna chahiye.

(h) Communication ka sadhan kargar aur bharosemand hona chahiye. Dohre communication ke bhi intezam karna chahiye.

(j) Battle drill aur battle procedure ke bare mein sabhi jawano ko jaankari honi chahiye.

**Release Points(RP) mein Karwai aur Move ka Tariqa**

6. Battalion RP ka lagte hi uski security ka intezam kiya jaata hai aur Battalion exchange set up hota hai. CompanyCommander apni company ki report BattalionCommander ko deta hai aur har company koapne direction of attack ya order mein release kiya jata hai.Battalion RP objective se lagbhag 1000 mtr se 1500 mtr peeche est kiya jata hai.

7. Battalion RP ki tarah Company RP bhi est kiya jata hai. Company RP objective se lagbhag 800 mtr se 1000 mtr peeche est kiya jaata hai. Company RP se platoons ko objective ki taraf release kiya jaata hai.

8. Platoon RP par terrain ko dhyan rakhte hue fire base lagaya jata hai. Platooncommander apne section commanders ko unka objective (bunker/ field fortification) ko indicate karta hai aur section commanders check back karta hai. Platoon RP objective se lagbhag 500 mtr peeche hota hai.

9. Platoon RP se aage ki harkat ke dauran section ko assaultgroup aur supportgroup mein baanta jata hai. Assaultgroup mein section commander, rifleman no 1 aur 2 (gren lobbying Party) aur rifleman no 3 aur 4 (exit Party) hota hai. Supportgroup mein section 2IC, LMG no 1 aur 2, RL no 1aur 2 hota hai. Minefields ko rod method se cross kiya jata hai aur objective ke paas pahunchne par bunker bursting ka karwai ki jati hai.

10. Bunker bursting karne ka tariqa iss parkar se hai :

(a) Fire aur move se objective ki taraf harkat ki jati hai.

(b) Supportgroupdeployhota hai fire support ke liye.

(c) SupportgroupRL se bunker ko barbad karta hai.

(d) Barbadnahi hua to grenade lobbying Party ka istemal kiya jata hai.

(e) Assaultgroup bunker ko clear karta hai, captured bunker ke aage fire position leta hai aur agle hukum ka intezar karta hai.

(f) Exploitation ki karwai ki jati hai.

**Faide aur Nuqsan**

11. Skirmish order of attack ki karwai mein faideiss parkar se hai :-

(a) Attacker ka combat kabiliyat ka pura labh uthaya jaata hai kyunki iss technique mein kafi bara frontage mein dushman ko engage kiya jata hai.

(b) Dushman ka reaction capability kam ho jaata hai kyunki reinforcement ko istemal karne ke liye unko attacker ka asli makshad pata chal nahi pata hai.

(c) Surprise haasil karna aasan hota hai kyunki kam strength mein chhote groups mein dushman ke surveillance grid ko chakma de pana asaan hota hai.

(d) Integral aur intimate fire support milta hai.

(e) Dushman fire ka asar kam ho jata hai khaskar ke artillery ka kyunki apni troops chhote dasto meinfaila hua hota hai.

(f) Flexibility haasil hota hai hamle ko aage badhane ke liye.

(g) Dushman ko spoiling attack karne mein muskil kyunki ek se jyada RP hota hai.

12. Skirmish order of attack ki karwai mein nuqsaniss parkar se hai :-

(a) Commander ko command aur control mein dikkat hota hai kyunki command decentralize ho jata hai.

(b) Fire aur move ke dauran IFF mein dikkat hota hai kyunki harkat ka ilaqa simit hota hai.

(c) Platoon aur sectioncommander ke paas samarpit reserve na hone ke wajah se task ko pura karne mein dikkat ho sakta hai. Parantu planning ke dauran sahi grouping aur placement se yeh mushkil ko suljhaya ja sakta hai.

(d) Minefield casualty ko evacuate karne mein dikkat.

(e) Junior leader sahi tariqe se trained na hona bhi ek samasya hai kyunki decentralized command ke karan iss technique ki safalta kafi had tak junior leaders ke upar nirbhar karta hai.

13. Mountains mein defender ko kafi jyada faida milta hai jish wajah se attacker ko jyada nafri mein attack karna parta hai. Attacker ke issnuqsan ko kafi had tak skirmish order of attack ke dwara kam kiya ja sakta hai. Iss technique ko kisi bhi terrain mein istemal kiya ja sakta hai lekin iss technique ko safal hone ke liye kabil junior leadership ka hona sabse aham jarurat hai.

**CHAPTER - 30**

**SMALL TEAM CONCEPT**

## Army Training Note For Small Team Op 2013

**Pahunch**

1. Pichle chalis saal ke CI operations mein anubhav hamare Infantry Battalion ke tazwiz aur tarique mein kafi sudhar laya hai. Aam larai ke tarah hi CI operations mein bhi tez harkat karne ki kabliyat aur sthiti ke anusar badalne ki kabliyat bahut ahmiyat rakhti hai. Ghamasan larai ka andesha kam hone ki wajah se CI operations mein zyada tadad mein nafri ke istemal ki bhi zarurat kam paregi. Atah ugarawadion ki tazwiz mein badlao ko madhya nazar rakhte hue chhote daston mein larai larne ka tariqua apnaya gaya hai. Ek purani kahawat hai ki Guerilla se Guerilla ki tarah laro, kyon ki ugarwadi bhi chhote daston mein harket karte hain is liye hamesha chhote daston mein harket karne se ugarawadion ke lagao ka andesha zyada hoga, adhik ilaque ki nigrani ki ja sakti hai aur zarurat parne par kisi bhi ilaque mein jaldi ekatra hone ki kabliyat bhi badh jati hai.

**Small Team ki Zaroorat**

2. Pichle chaalis saal ke CI operations ka anubhav.

3. Tez harkat ki kabliyat.

4. Sthiti ke anusar badalne ki ahmiyat.

5. Ghamasan yudh ka andesha kam hai.

6. Ugrawadion dwara small team ka istemal kiya jata hai.

7 Guerrilla se ladne ke liye guerrilla jaisi tactics apnane ki zaroorat.

8. Small teams jyada ilaqe ki nigrani kar sakta hai.

9. Opeartions ki zaroorat ke mutabiq saari teams kam samay mein ek jagah par ekatrit ho sakti hain.

10. **CI Operations par Asar Dalne wali Baatein.**  CI operations par asaar dalnewali pramukh batein aur unka chhote daston ke istemal par prabhav is prakar hai:-

* 1. **Vatavaran ka Prabhav.** Aksar ugarawadi aise jagahon par operate karte hain jahan unhein sthaniya sahyog uplabdh ho. Is liye suraksha balon ko in ugarawadion se larte waqt asahyogi vatavaran mein larna padega. Isiliye in halaton mein larte waqt suraksha balon ko kamiyabi haasil karne ke liye kafi sujh bujh aur vistarpurvak tazviz banane ki zarurat hai.

* 1. **Ugarawadion Dwara Adhunik Hathiyaron ka Istemal.** Ugrawadion ke paas adhunik hathiyar aur sanchar ke sadhonon ki uplabdhi ne CI operations ki larai ko ek naya mor diya hai. Atah ugrawadion dwara hamare administration/ operational partion par ambush aur IED ke hamle ka andesha barh gaya hai. Isliye khatra kam karne ke liye chhote group mein operate karna chahiye.
  2. **Kanuni Zarurten.** Suraksha balon ko hamesha kanoon ke tahat kaam karne ki awashyakta hoti hai. Yadi surksha balon dwara operation ke dauran kisi jaan sampati ko nuksan pahuche toh ugrawadi aur unki sahyogi sthaniya janta ise badha chada kar batate hain jabki ugrawadion ke liye aisa koi kanoon lagu nahin hai. Aisi halaton mein niyantran karne ke liye chhote daston mein harket karna labhdayak hai.
  3. **Operational Zimmewarian.** CI operations ki larai ek lambi larai hai aur aksar ismen zimmewari ka ilaqa kafi faila hua hota hai (lagbhag 14-18 gaon prati company). Har company ki nafri lagbhag 50-60 jawanon ki hone ki wajah se company ke ek hi daste dwara in sabhi gaon par nigrani rakhna mushkil hai. Is liye yadi hum company ko chhote daston mein baant kar har daste ko 3-4 gaon ki zimmewari den toh asani hogi.

**Small Team Ops ke Dauran Dhyan mein Rakhne wali Baatein**

11. Chhote daston mein operate karne ke kiye nimn baton ko dhyan mein rakhna chahiye:-

(a) Hathiyar aur jawanon ki nafri ke beech santulan ho.

(b) Training, manobal aur juniorleadership ka uncha darja.

(c) Larai ki vidhi mein karyakushalta, atmvishwas aur nishanebazi ka achha darja.

(d) Pahal aur akramak bhavna.Laparwahi dur karne ke liye zimmewarana bartav aur achha wakttvya nihayat hi zaruri hai.

(e) Tez harkat, lachilapan aur zamin ki vistrit jankari.

(f) Plan ki suraksha.

(g) Sthaniya bhasha aur sanskriti ki jankari.

.

**Small Team ki Banawat aurTraining**

12. Ek team chhote daston mein harkat karne ke liye santulit honi chahiye aur uski nafri nimn baton par nirbhar hai:-

(a) Jawanon ki nafri aur hathiyaron ke prakar mein santulan.

(b) Diye hue task ko pura karne ki kabliyat.

(c) Team ke paas pers hathiyar aur bharosemand sanchar ke sadhan hone chahiy

(d) Team ka ayojan is prakar se hona chahiye ki woh pure CI operations ki tenure ke dauran badli na ho taqi unmen aapsi talmel aur team ke sadasye hone mein gaurav ki bhavana ho.

(e) Upar di gayi baton ko madhya nazar rakhte hue yeh baat zahir hai ki ek team ke liye ek section ki nafri kafi hai. Fire ki tadad barhane ke liye 51mm Mortar ya Flame Thrower ko shamil kar sakte hai.

13. Kisi bhi ek waqt par administration duties, leave aur TD ke jawanon ko hatakar ek rif company ki nafri lagbhag 60-70 jawanon ki hoti hai. Is nafri ke saath ‘ Small Team ki sujhawit oraganisations is prakar hai:-

-

**COMPANY HQ**

**SURVEILLANCE &**

**INT TEAMS x 3**

**4**

**-**

**5**

**OR**

**HIT**

**TEAMS(SECTION**

**STR) x 3**

**MOB**

**PATROL/QRT**

**BASE SECURUTY**

**(**

**1 PLATOON**

**)**

14. Ek Infantry Battalion ki kabliyat ko nazar mein rakhte hue, ek hit team ki sujhawit organisation 10 jawan ke saath is prakar hogi :-

* 1. **Team Commander’s Party**.

(i) Commander - AK-47, Miniflare.

(ii) Radio operator - AK-47.

(iii) Interpreter/ Commander Party - AK- 47.

(iv) Sniper - SVD/ SVDN.

* 1. **Team 2IC’s Party**.
     1. 2IC - AK-47 (UBGL)
     2. LMG No 1,2 - LMG, INSAS Rif (Amn & Parts interchangable)
     3. Scouts x 2 - AK-47
     4. 51mm Mor No 1,2- 51mm Mor, AK – 47
  2. Team ko buddy system ke adhar par kaam karna chahiye.

15. Small Team operations ki safalta ke liye awwal darje ki training ki zaroorat hai.

Small team ki training mein nimnlikhit ka dhyan hona chahiye :-

(a) **Individual Skills.**

(i) Pahle mar ki kabliyat.

(ii) Field craft, hathiyar ki handling aur CI mein nishanebazi mein nipunta.

(iii) Firing practices ko alag alag aise ranges par karaya jaye jahan CQB ki firing mein karyakushalta haasil ho.

(b) **Team Ops.** Team ko nimn prakar ke op mein abhyas dena chahiye:- (i) Camp/hide out par raid.

(ii) Cordon aur search operations.

(iii) Mob check post sthapit karna. Spot interrogation aur hathiyar aur amn ki recovery.

(iv) Road opening drill.

(v) Surveillance grid ki sthapna.

(c) **Jungle Craft.** Team ko North East aur J&K ke jungalon mein tracking, cross country harkat aur jungle ke 10-12 km ander target barbad karne ki kabliat honi chahiye.

(d) **Pahle ke Operations se Sikhlai.**

(i) Dusron ki galtiyon se sikho.

(ii) Un case studies ko padho jinmein operations ki khubiyan aur kamiyan dono di gai hon.

(ii) Har operations ki tazviz tariqa aur drill mein zarurat ke anusar tabdili karen.

(iv) Pahle hui galtiyon ko pehchane

**Small Team ke Task**

16. Small team ko nimnlikhit task diya ja sakta hai :-

(a) **Camp/ Hide out par raid**. Yeh dekha gaya hai ki training camp ke alawa camp/ hide out mein 10 se 15 militant hote hain. 2-3 small team jinme achha talmel ho, woh is kaam ke liye kafi hain. Surprise ek mahatavapurn avashyakta hai. Zarurat se zyada savdhani baratna, sahi fire power ka istemal karna aur atyadhik stops ke istemal ki zarurat aam raid ki tarah na rakhte hue zarurat shuda tabdili karni chahiye.

(b) **Modified Cordon and Search Ops (CASO)**. Normal CASO mein samay aur nafri ka atyadhik istemal hota hai. Modified CASO ke liye small teams labhdayak hai khas kar jab sahi khabar mili hui ho.

(c) **Mob Check Post Sthapit Karna**. Is task ke liye small teams ka istemal achha hoga kyonki who garion mein tej harket kar sakte hain, zarurat ke mutabik addl pers/ resources jaise ki spotter, interrogator, NVD’s, Metal detector aadi ko small teams ko diya ja sakta hai.

(d) **Surveillance Grid**. Ugrawadi chane jinti savdhani barte lekin ek lambe arse ke dauran who apni harkat ko zahir kar dete hain. Is liye surveillance grid ke ayojan karna zaruri hai. Chhote daston ki adhik teams zyada ilaqe ki nigrani kar sakti hai, zarurat ke mutabik in chhote daston ko 72-96 hrs ke liye self contained operations par bhej sakte hain.

(e) **Specialised Operations**. Ek achha prerit aur training prapt kiye hue small team ko special operation par bheja ja sakta hai. Yeh nimn prakar se ho sakta hai :-

(i) Algawadi ke bhes mein ugrawadi sangathan se milap karna.

(ii) Over ground workers ki karwai par nigrani rakhna.

(iii) Ugrawadion ke barkhilaaf apni fauj ko chaukanna karna.

17. Aaj ke CI operations aur ugrawadion ke halat ko dekhte huye yeh nihayat hi zaroori hai ki humari fauj apne purane tariqe se upar uthkar Small Team Concept ko apnaye. Is concept ko J&K aur North East mein ugrawad ke khilaf lad rahi army units ne apnaya hai aur iska result bhi dekhne ko mila hai. Small Team Concept ka pura faida uthane ke liye har level par awwal darje ki training aur plg ki ahmiyat hai.

**CHAPTER - 31**

**INTELLIGENCE COLLECTION BATTALION/COMPANY LEVEL**

**Infantry Training Volume – IV (2007) Platoon Tactics**

**Parichay**

1. Second world war ke bad se varthman kal tak yudh ka tarika badal gaya hain. Gorilla yudh aur atankvad mein hui vridhi ne vishav ki senao ka is se larne keliye prasikshit hona anivary kardiya hain. Bharathiya sena bhi uttar poorvi rajyon aur J & K main atankvadi virodhi Operation main leen hain. Patrol, Ambush, MVCP, CASO and SADO Jaise operations kar atankwad ko khatam thatha janasankhya ko control main rakha jaraha hain. Isliye zaroori hain ki int collection ke baren main jankari ho.

**Intelligence ki Zarurat**

2. **Vidrohi.** Terrorist ko khatam karna, kaabu mein lana aur uski, gatividhiyon,location ke bare mein jaankari hassil karna.

3. **Ilaaqa.** Zamin aur ilake ki khabar hona bahut hi zaroori hai. Terrorist ko local support aur illake ki jaankari bhi rehti hai jisse ki voh apni karwai ko aasani se kar sakta hai. Terrorist chhupaav mein ek jagah se doosri jagah mov kar sakta hai. Is liye SF ko purey illake ki detailed jaankari ho.

4. **Sthaniya Abaadi.** Terrorist ko aam zarutatoon ke liye aam janta ki madad hona avashyak hai. Aam janta ya to faide, dar, badlay ki bhaavna se militant ka support karti hai. Is liye SF ko local population ki sahi pechchaan hona bahut zarioori hai.

**Khabar ki Kismein aur Haasil Karne ke Gariya**

5. Counter Insurgency Opeartions mein aam taur par do tarah ki khabar hoti ahi.

(a) **Background Khabar.** Veh khabar jo anya khabron ke vishleshan ko support karay use background khabar kehte hain. Iske dairey mein aam janta ki pehchaan, itihaas,riti-rivaaz aur swabhav aata hai. Background khabar mein miltant ka organisation, bases, weapon, explosives, kaam karne ka tarika adi ke bare mein jaankari hoti hai.Background khabar ko haasil karne ke jariye iss prakar hai:-

(i) Area study folder.

(ii) Intelligence agency.

(iii) Police aur para military force.

(iv) Relieving unit.

(v) Higher formation /HQ

(vi) Puraana patrachaar.

(vii) Population ka vishleshan.

(viii) Source/informer.

(b) **Contact Khabar.** Zamin par troops dwaara khud haasil ki gayi khabar ko contact khabar kehte hain. Yeh khabar SF ko terrorist tak pahunchaa sakti hai aur use barbad karne/pakarne main madad deti hai. Contact khaabar troops ki khud ki jimmedaari hoti hai.

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  |  |  |  | (i) | Close observation. |
|  |  |  |  | (ii) | Population/illake par surveillance. |
|  |  |  |  | (iii) | Interrogation. |
|  |  |  |  | (iv) | Special/pseudo operations. |
|  |  |  |  | (v) | Tracking. |
|  |  |  |  | (vi) | Sources/ informers. |

(vii) Apprehended terrorist.

(viii) Intelligence agency.

6. **Security Forces dwara Khabar Haasil Karrne ke Tariqe.**

(a) Security Forces Ke Agents.

(b) Intelligence Staff.

(c) State Police.

(d) Militant Ki Movements.

(e) Militant Ki Aapsi Ladai.

(f) Surrendered Militant.

(g) Captured Pers, Docu, Mtrl.

(h) Local Population.

(j) Sataye Gaye Log.

(k) Report Ka Vishleshan.

(l) Communication Intercepts.

(m) Higher HQ

.

7. **Sources Sambandhit jaruri Baaten.**

(a) Sources ki sankhya jiyada honi chahiye aur unka karya kshetra pure AOR mein phaila hona chahiye.

(b) Ho sake to har ek village ya muhalle se kam se kam ek source jururi hona chahiye.

(c) Dried up/ compromised sources ko chhor dena chahiye

(d) Har source ka value limited hota hai. Wah ek ya do actionable khaber de sakta hai. Bad mein uski utility kam ho jati hai. Is liye jaruri hai ki new sources banaye jaye.

(e) Hard intelligence ke liye source ko incentive dene ki jarurat hoti hai. Is liye hare ek important khabar ke liye use suitable monetary reward diya jana chahiye.

(f) Source ko task karne se pahle uski reliability check karni chahiye.

**Intelligence ko compile Karna**

8. Dekha gaya hai ki dher saari khabar ikatthi ho jaata hai lekin agar sahi sahi record nahi rakha jaaye to bahut saare detail gum ho jayenge. Intelligence input ke vishleshan ke liye kisi vishay ki puraani khabar ka hona bahut zaroori hai.

9. Yeh tabhi ho sakta hai agar battalion/company khabar ko sahi record karen nahi to taaji khabar ka puraani khabar se link toot jayega. Battalion/company ko in jaroori documents ko maint karna chahiye.

(a) Terrorist log book - indl details of terrorist.

(b) Counter terrorists book – illake ki saari jankari,terrain, troops, weather, operations conducted etc.

(c) Recovery register.

(d) Photo album.

(e) Source/informant file - informer dwara di gayi khabar ko note karein.

(f) Orbat card of insurgent units - Insurgents ki organisation, units, strength, arms, equipment etc. Personality card with radio codes if available.

(g) Interrogation reports.

(h) Village diary.

(j) Area study compendium.

(k) AOR mein vibhinn tanzeems ke aapsi sambandh.

**Battalion Intelligence Team Ki Organisation, Selection Aur Task.**

10. Battalion intelligence team iss prakar hoti hai:-

2IC

Intelligence & Surveillance Officer

Radio Interception Interrogation aur Handling & INT Team

Cells at Interception Team Completion Team

Company Levels

* 1. Intelligence Section.
  2. RMO / NA.
  3. AEC JCO.
  4. RT JCO.
  5. RPHM.
  6. CSD NCO.
  7. Drivers.
  8. SQM.
  9. Tradesmen.
  10. Sportsmen.
  11. 4 Rifle Company aur HQ Company teams.
  12. Pers With Local Language Knowledge.

11. **Battalion Intelligence Cell ke Task**

(a) Khabar haasil karna aur use distribute karna.

(b) Rifle companys ke intelligence network ki zimedari ka ilaqua baantna .

(c) Samay-2 par ilaque mein kaam kar rahe officers, JCO,OR ko training dena.

(d) Talmel.

(e) Sources banana.

12. **Intelligence Organisation Company Level.**

Company Commander

Interrogation and Handling & Platoon Inteligence

Interpretation team Completion Team teams

13. **Company Intelligence Cell ke Task.**

(i) Khabar haasil karna aur use distribute karna.

(ii) Terrorist aur sources ka record rakhna.

(iii) Platoon ke int network ki zimedari ka ilaqua baantna .

(iv) Talmel.

(v) Sources banana**.**

14. **Jawano ka chunao.**

(i) Flare/aptitude int sect ice jigashu logo ka chunav karna chahiye.

(ii) Akalmandi/hoshiyari .

(iii) Above average intelligence ho.

(iv) Quick uptake ho.

15. **Battalion intelligence officer ki Duties.**

(a) Intelligence aur counter Intelligence ki karwayi ko org aur coord karna.

(b) Batttalion ke sources dwara aur a dusre agencies dwara bheje gaye

khabar ko collect tatha collate karna

(c) Khaber ko higher HQ aur companys ko distribute karna.

(d) Intelligence unit aur Intelligence agencies se liaison.

(e) Intelligence section ki training organise karna.

(f) Police, BSF, civil administration se liaison.

(g) Intelligence staff ka selection.

16. Sahi information se hi intelligence banayi ja sakti hai jisko ham safalta purvak operations mein istemal kar sakte hain. Yeh lambe samay tak chalme wali karwai hai jismen tatkal safalta milna hamesha sambhav nahi hai. Iske kiye dhirya aur lagan ki zarurat hai.

**CHAPTER - 32**

**ROAD OPENING AND CONVOY PROTECTION**

**Special Operations Part B Counter Insurgency Operations 1990**.

**Road Opening**

1. Insurgency wale ilaqe mein jab tak ugarvadiyon (vidrohiyon) ko khatam ya achhi tarah daba nahin diya jata, fauji ya civil garion ki convoy ek jagah se dusri jagah tak jate samay surkshit nahin hoti. Is par ugarvadi sniping ya ambush ki karwai karke nuksan pahuncha sakte hain. Is liye jab aise ilake mein convoy chalte hain to sadak (Road) ko achhi tarah surkshit banana padta hai. Is prakar ke defensive operations ko Road Opening kahte hain.

**Planning (Tartib)**

2. Road opening ki karwai ki tajwij banate samay ilake ko sectors mein baant diya jata hai aur ek sector ki zimmewari ek battalion ko di jati hai. Ek battalion ko takriban 50 km ka ilaka diya jata hai. Battalion ke ilake ko aur aage companys ke hisse mein baanta jata hai. Takriban ek company ko 12 se lekar 15 km ke ilake se zyada ilaka nahin dena chahiye.

3. Aam halaton mein Road opening ki karwai karte samay ek platoon ko base mein chhor dena chahiye aur do platoon ko road opening ki karwai ke liye bhejna chahiye.

4. Yeh karwai convoy ke din ki jani chahiye. Shuru-shuru mein (Initially when you have been deployed in the area) sadak ke donon taraf 50 m tak gariyan hatwa dene chahiye. Yeh kaam gaon walon ke dwara bhi karwaya ja sakta hai.

**Road Opening Party (ROP) ki Nafri**

5. Aam taur par ek Rifle company do ROP bhej sakti hai. Ek ROP ki nafri kam se kam ek commander aur 22 OR ki honi chahiye. Commander kam se kam ek JCO ya achha (experienced) NCO hona chahiye.

6. ROP ke pass saman is prakar hona chahiye :-

(a) LMG - 2 (Kam se kam).

(b) 51mm Mor - 1 (ILL - 4, HE - 12 Bombs ke saath).

(c) Hand Gren - 2 (Prati jawan aur kuchh 77 WP gren bhi le jane chahiye).

(d) Tube launching gren - 3.

(e) Baki aadmiyon ke pass zaruri jati hathiyar.

(f) Very light pistol (miniflare) - 1 (Zarurat ke mutabik ammunition).

(g) Ammunition - 3 Bhari mag prati rif / sten.

(h) 5 Bhari Mag prati LMG.

(j) Radio set - 1 x ANPRC 25.

(k) RS VA MK-II - 3

(l) RS VPS - 4

(m) Grapnel - 01

(n) Flags (Red) - 02 per party.

(o) Mine detector - 02

(p) Binocular - 01

(q) Map sheet - 01

(r) First aid kit - 01

7. Iske alawa, agar mauzood ho to ek engineer det jiski nafri 1 NCO aur 3 OR ho, ROP ke saath group karna chahiye. Iska kaam IED check karna hai. Iski banawat is prakar honi chahiye :-

* 1. Commander aur Mine Detector party I/C - 1
  2. Mine Detector wala jawan - 1
  3. Prodder Man aur R Man - 2

(Note : Yadi Engr party na ho to yeh karwai Infantry dwara ki jaye.)

**Road Opening Drill (Road Opening Party Dwara Karwai)**

8. Road opening ki karwai is prakar se ki jati hai ki sarak aur sarak ke donon taraf 300 se 400 m tak ke ilake ek saath search kiye jayen.

9. Is ke liye, leading do sections, sarak ke dono taraf ke ilake ko search karenge aur teesra (third) section Platoon HQ ke saath sarak ko search karenge.

10. Is method ko scorpion Hop method bhi kehte hain. Is tarike se ki gai road clearance se sarak ka mines, IED aur wires se achha clearance hota hai aur saath hi agar ugarvadiyon se kahin ambush (ghatt) lagaya hua ho to usko bhi samay par clear kiya ja sakta hai. Is method se ROP ka mutual support bhi prapt hota hai aur ek dusre ki achhi protection bhi ho jati hai.

11. Road opening karte samay jawanon ko hamesha chokanna rahna chahiye aur rifle ko "SHIKARI" position mein, magazine bahar ki taraf karte hue rakhna chahiye. LMG ko sling laga kar le jana chahiye aur zarurat parne par hip se fire karna chahiye.

12. **Road Picketing.** Road clearance ke baad, ugarvadi clear ki gai sarak par mines, IED ya ambush (ghatt) na laga dein, is baat ka yakin karne ke liye jaruri hai ki road ki picketing bhi ki jaye.

13. Agar is kaam ke liye nafri mauzood ho to, alag se road picketing party mukarar karni chahiye. Road picketing party is prakar sarak ke donon taraf lagani chahiye ki puri sarak ko cover kar sake. Aisi picket ki nafri do jawan se lekar ek section tak ki nafri ho sakti hai. Nafri zamin ki banawat aur ugarvadiyon ki karwai par munassar hai.

14. Picket lagate samay nimin baaton ka khayal rakhein :-

(a) Picket hamesha chuppa (conceal) hona chahiye.

(b) Picket ki jagah likely hostile ki ambush site ho ya phir aise jahan se adhik se adhik ilaqon ki nigrani ho sake.

(c) Agar jyada ilaqa cover karna ho to section ke jawanon ko jodi - jodi mein bhejna chahiye lekin unka aapas mein visual contact ho is baat ka pakka yakin kar lena chahiye.

(d) Picket ki position lagatar badalte rehni chahiye taki set pattern na ban jaye.

(e) Apna ilaqa search karne ke baad, ROP "All OK" ki report apni post ko denge aur uske baad hi kisi convoy ko wahan se gujarna chahiye.

15. ROP ke ek chhote toli sarak par chhor deni chahiye, jiska kaam nimin prakar se hoga:-

(a) Convoy ane par convoy commander ko clearance slip dena.

(b) Apni position mein convoy ane tak chuppe rahna taki position jahir na ho.

(c) Convoy ke aage ROP se "All OK" report milne par hi aage badhne dena.

16. **Sarak Search Karte Samay Dhyan mein Rakhne wali Baatein.**

(a) Sarak par koi bhi obstacle ya road block agar search mein mile to use shakiya samajhna chahiye.

(b) Sarak ke nazdik koi bench ya firing position ko shakiya nazar se dekhna chahiye.

(c) Taazi ghas (Grass) kat di ho ya fresh ilaka clear kiya ho.

(d) Koi naya track ya trail.

(e) Khane (Food) ke packet, cigarette butts, matches agar nazar aaye to.

(f) Sarak par koi khadda ya khudda dikhai dene par satark ho jana chahiye.

(g) Sabhi ilake jo sarak ko dominate karte hon.

(h) Koi wire ka tukra nazar aye toh uski jaanch honi chahiye.

17. **IED milne par karwai is prakar karein :-**

(a) IED milne par kabhi ikattha nahi hona chahiye.

(b) IED ke 500 m duri tak ke ilaqe ko cordon karo.

(c) 2nd IED ke liye aas paas ke ilake ko dhyan se dekhein.

(d) IED milne ki khabar apne Platoon Commander aur Company Commander ko dein.

(e) IED ke saath chedkhani na karein.

(f) Engr det/ Bomb Disposal squad ane tak ilaqe ko cordon karke rakhein.

**Convoy Protection**

18. CI Operations mein road opening ke saath saath convoy ki hifazat (convoy protection) karna bhi ati avashyak hai. Agar ham nimn baaton ka dhyan rakhein to apni gariyon ki security kar sakte hain:-

(a) Sabhi gariyon ko convoy mein organised karke chalana chahiye aur akeli gari nahin chalani chahiye.

(b) Gari se gari ke beech mein uchit gap hona chahiye.

**Convoy ke Prakar**

19. **Convoy do prakar ki hoti hai:-**

(a) **Normal (sadharan) Convoy.** Yeh administrative convoy hote hain jo mukarrar kiye hue din chalte hain. Aise convoy ke dinon aur samay mein tabdili karna kafi mushkil hota hai aur isliye aise convoy ki hifazat ka khas dhyan rakhna padta hai.

(b) **Special Convoy.** Yeh convoy units/sub units ke operational movement ke liye chalaya jate hain ya phir senior commanders aur civil VIP ke mov ke liye kiye jate hain. Aise convoy ki security ka vistar purvak bayan kisi bhi formation SOP mein diya hota hai.

20. Is handbook mein ham kewal normal convoy ki hifazat ke bare mein hi aap ko batayenge.

**Escort Party ki Nafri aur Baant**

21. Escort party ki nafri, convoy ke size aur ugarvadiyon ki harkaton ko dhyan mein rakh kar ki jati hai. Aam taur par nafri ek platoon ki hoti hai. Yeh party convoy mein baant di jati hai jo is prakar hai :-

(a) **Front Escort.** Yeh company ki leading gari mein hoti hai aur iski nafri ek section ki hoti hai. LMG driver ke cabin par mount ki jati hai. Section commander ke paas milap ke liye ek RS hota hai.

(b) **Middle Escort.** Yeh company ki beech wali gari mein hota hai. Iski nafri bhi ek section ki hoti hai. Platoon HQ bhi isi section ke saath hota hai. Milap ke liye Platoon commander ke pass ek RS ANPRC 25 hota hai.

(c) **Rear Escort.** Yeh company ki aakhri gari mein hota hai. Iski bhi nafri ek section ki hoti hai. Platoon Havaldar iska incharge hota hai aur iske pass bhi milap ke liye ek RS hota hai.

22. Iske alawa, convoy ke har gari mein baithe jawanon mein se escort mukarrar kiye jate hain.

23. **QRT.** Iske alawa, agar ho sake to, ek section ki nafri QRT hoti hai, jo ki convoy commander ke saath wali gari mein hoti hai. Iske pass, agar ho sake to, ek tracker dog hona chahiye. Iska kaam ambush ho jane par ugarvadiyon ka pichha karna hai.

**Convoy Commander ki Dutian**

24. Prayah Offr/JCO ko convoy commander niyukt karna chahiye. Convoy commander nimn baaton ka yakin karega :-

(a) Har ek gari chalne ke liye fit hai aur usmein kafi FOL aur spares hain.

(b) EME aur Medical ke kuchh aadmi convoy ke saath hain.

(c) Gari, aadmi, hathiyar aur ammunition ke bare mein puri-puri details pahle se le leni chahiye. Har gari mein baithe aadmiyon ko bhi pata hona chahiye.

(d) Fauzi jawan ko squads mein tartib deni chahiye aur unko gariyon mein barabar-barabar baantana chahiye.

(e) Chalne se pahle convoy ko theek OOM mein lagana aur check karna kih sab theek hai.

(f) Garian apni di hui tartib badli nahin kare aur koi bhi gari akeli aage nikal kar pahle pahunchne ki koshish nahin kare.

(g) Har gari ke liye co driver aur dandaman niyukt karna chahiye.

**Escort Commander ki Dutian**

25. Prayah Convoy Commander aur Escort Commander ek hi Offr ko niyukt karna chahiye. Agar convoy commander JCO ya NCO ho to escort commander prayah Officer hona chahiye. Jo bhi senior ho woh convoy ke liye pura zimmewar hoga. Magar jahan tak convoy ki suraksha ka sawal hai escort commander ka faisla mana jayega. Escort commander niche di gayi baaton ka yakin karega :-

(a) Convoy ka surakshit aur theek chalana.

(b) Raaste mein theek nishchit kiye hue halts hon aur yahan sab gariyan ikattha ho jayein. Sab gariyan aa jane par hi convoy aage chale.

(c) Sarak ke tute hone ya road block hone ki khabar milne par convoy ko nazdik wali post par rokna aur tabhi wahan se march karna jab sarak theek ki report mil jaye.

(d) Shak ya ambush ki jagahon ka raaste mein khayal rakhna aur escort ko chaukanna rakhna.

(e) Yakin karna ki aage wali gari mein baitha NCO ya JCO ROP se clearance chit leta hai.

(f) Post par se gujarne par khud clearance chit lena.

(g) Yakin karna ki chalne se pahle ki sab karwai puri hai.

**Chalne se Pahle ki Taiyari**

26. Yeh taiyari bilkul ek patrol par jane se pahle ki taiyari jaisi hai. Niche batai hui baatein dhyan mein rakhni chahiye :-

(a) Road ki condition ke bare mein jankari prapt honi chahiye aur yakin karein ki road secure kiya hua hai.

(b) Drivers aur gari mein sawar sabhi ki detail mein briefing.

(c) Raaste mein aane wali posts se milap.

(d) Yakin karein ki har gari mein Commander niyukt kiya hua hai.

(e) Yakin karein ki gariyon ka tarpolin nikala hua ho aur escort gari mein LMG fix kiya hua ho.

(f) Saare hathiyar test kiye jayein aur theek hathiyar aur ammunition le jaye jayein.

(g) Gari mein sand bags lagaye hue hon, taki mines ka asar kam kiya ja sake.

(h) Ambush adi hone par ki jane wali karwai ke liye sab ko brief kiya hona chahiye.

(j) Jawabi karwaiyon ki rehearsal ki hon.

(k) Drivers garion ke theek fasle aur hostile ki karwai hone par kya karwai ki jayegi, jante hon.

(l) Escort ki gariyon ke aage ka shisha niche kiya ho.

27. **Chalte Samay ki Karwai.**

(a) Har ek aadmi ko apne diye hue ilake ki dekhbhal karni chahiye.

(b) Aage wali gari pichhe wali gari se milap rakhne ke liye jimmewar hogi. Agar pichhe wali gari nazar nahin aa rahi ho to, convoy ko rok dena chahiye aur garion ke milap hone ke baad advance karna chahiye.

(c) Pichhe wali gari ko aage wali gari ko agar kisi karan rokna ho to, horn ka istemal karna chahiye.

(d) Gari se gari beech ka faisla 50 se 100 m ka hona chahiye.

(e) Road bend par kisi bhi samay par ek gari se jyada gari nahin honi chahiye.

(f) Kisi bhi shak ya ambush hone wali jagah par gariyon ko khara na karein.

(g) Aage wali gari aur akhiri gari ke beech radio milap hona chahiye.

**Ambush Hone Par Karwai**

28. Ambush hone par escort party ko turant karwai karni chahiye. Chalte chalte fire karna chahiye aur grenade aur Mor ka pura faida uthana chahiye. Ambush hone par drill is prakar honi chahiye :-

(a) Jaise hi gari par fire ho, gariyon mein baithe jawanon ko turant gari se utar jana chahiye, saath hi chalti gari se turant fire karna chahiye.

(b) Gari ko kisi surakshit sthan par le jana chahiye.

(c) Pure hathiyaron ka fire vidroh ki position par dalte hue unke upar hamla karna chahiye.

(d) Engineer det jo ki aap ke saath hai, uski madad se road ko clear karna chahiye.

(e) Ghayalon ko first aid dena.

(f) Gariyon ko ikatha hone se rokein aur jaise hi ilaka engineer det dwara clear hota hai, movement ko jari karein.

29. **Gari Breakdown hone Par Karwai.**

(a) Agar koi gari breakdown ho jati hai, to usse is prakar halt karen, ki road block na ho aur tfr par asar na pare. Convoy apna mov jari rakhe aur convoy commander ko gari ki breakdown ki khabar di jaye.

(b) Rear Escort party is gari ki sectionurity aur recovery ke liye zimmewar hogi. Iske liye URO ya MRT ka istemal kiya jayega.

(c) Agar gari mein major defect ho jaye to usko toe karke nazdik ki post par chor diya jaye.

30. **Halt Hone Par Karwai.**

(a) Convoy ki hifazat ke bandobast ko yakin kiya jayega.

(b) Look out sentries lagae jayenge aur unchi zamin par kabu rakha jayega.

(c) Sari convoy ikatthi ki jayegi aur sab gariyon ke aa jane ke baad hi aage mov kiya jayega.

**CHAPTER – 33**

**MCP AUR QRT**

**Special Operations Part B Counter Insurgency Operations 1990**.

**MCP**

1. Mobile check post (MCP) ek aisa jariya hai jisse road, track aur footpath par hone wali harkat par control kiya ja sakta hai. Ugarvadi gariyon aur phir paidal in roads, tracks ka istemal karke apne aap ko, hathiyar, explosive ityadi ko ek sthan se dusre sthan par le jate hain. Surksha karamchariyon ko is liye chahiye ki wah ugarvadiyon ki harkat ko mushkil bana dein. MCP agar achanak kisi sthan ya samay par laga di jaye to ugarvadiyon ki gatividhiyon par baadha daal sakti hai.

2. **MCP lagane ke nimn kaaran hain :-**

(a) Vidrohiyon ko pakarne ke liye.

(b) Vidrodhiyon dwara istemal mein lane wale hathiyar, explosive, kaagzat ityadi ko jabt karne ke liye.

(c) Vidhrohiyon ke harkat/gatividhiyon par ankush lagane ke liye.

(d) Vidhrohiyon ki gatividhiyon ki khabar haasil karne ke liye.

3. **MCP ke Liye Tgts.**

(a) Persons.

(b) Gariyan.

4. **MCP ki Org (Composition**).

* 1. **Search Group.**
     1. Tgt ko search karne ke liye jawan.
     2. Identifier.
     3. Interpreter.
  2. **Covering Group.** Is Group ka kaam search group ki kaarwai karne wale jawan ki suraksha karna hai.
  3. **Reserve Group.** Iska kaam ugarvadiyon dwara achanak ki gai karwai par action lena hai. Yeh bhaagne wale ugarvadiyon ko pakrne mein saksham honi chahiye aur iske liye isko mobile hona jaruri hai. Tracker Dog ko is party mein shamil karna chahiye.
  4. **Protection Group.** Yeh MCP ke dono taraf lagaya jata hai aur anya parties ke action ko cover karta hai.

5. MCP ki Nafri. Ek MCP ki suggested nafri is prakar hogi :-

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| SNo | Details | Str | Total | Remarks |
| 1. | Commander (Offr/JCO) | 1 | 1 |  |
| 2. | Search Group | 1 JCO, 02 OR | 6 | Aise 02 group hone chahiye |
| 3. | Covering Group | 1 NCO, 01 OR | 4 | Aise 02 group hone chahiye |
| 4. | Reserve Group | 1 JCO, 04 OR | 5 |  |
| 5. | Dog handler with tracker dog | 1 OR | 1 |  |
| 6. | Drivers with vehicle | 2 OR | 2 |  |
| 7. | Radio Operator with RS  ANPRC with Commander  Protection Group | 1 OR | 1 |  |
| 8. | Identifier (With Search  Group) | 1 OR | 1 |  |
| 9. | Interpreter(With Search  Group) | 1 OR | 1 |  |
| 10. | Police Rep(Mahila Police ke saath) | 2 | 2 |  |
|  | TOTAL |  | 24 |  |

**MCP se Gariyon ko Check Karna**

6. **Check Karne ke Liye Gariyon ka Chunao.** Kisi bhi gari ko check karne ke chunao ke nimin karan ho sakte hain :-

* 1. Gari "Wanted List" mein shaamil ho.
  2. Gari ko shakiya tarike se istemal kiya ja raha ho.
  3. Intelligence report ke aadhar par.

7. **Check ke Darje.**

(a) **Quick Check.** Is prakar ki checking chand minton mein puri ho jati hai jisme gari ko sarsari taur par check kiya jata hai.

(b) **Through Check.** Is prakar ki checking mein lag-bhag 30 minutes tak lag jate hain. Gariyon ko unload karke check kiya jata hai.

(c) **Workshop Check.** Yeh detail/vistaar ki checking hoti hai, jismein gariyon ki assemblies ko bhi khola ja sakta hai.

8. **Checking Karne ke Tarike.**

(a) Checking karne ke liye chune hue sthan par improvised road block lagane chahiye. Yeh karwai concertina coil, drum ya phir gariyon ki madad se kari ja sakti hai.

(b) Jab bhi MCP lagayein, ek ya do gariyon ko check karne ke baad MCP ka sthan badli kar dena chahiye kyonki kuchh samay ke baad ugarvadiyon ko MCP ki khabar mil jayegi.

(c) MCP ki saari parties apna sthan legi aur gari ko halt kiya jayega.

(d) Driver ko gari ko switch off karne ko kahen. Agar gari chori ki hogi to driver yeh karwai nahin kar payega.

(e) Gari ke darwaje aur khirkiyon ko gaur se dekhein. Tute handle ityadi is baat ko zahir karenge ki gari churai hui hai.

(f) Driver ko uska naam aur pata puchh kar aur phir uske driving license se counter check karein. Agar detail alag hon to driver par shak kiya ja sakta hai.

(g) Gari ka Regd No. aur batae huye vyaktiyon ke naam ko "Wanted List" se counter check karein.

(h) Agar gari ki through check karni ho to, gari mein baithe vyaktiyon ko bahar utarne ko kahen. Unke upar guard lagayen aur phir unka sikhhe tarike se body check karein.

(j) Phir gari ko vistaar (detail) se check karein. Gari ko check karte samay dicky, passenger compartment, engine compartment, ityadi achhi tarah se jaanch karein.

(k) Agar jarurat pare to driver aur sawariyon ko alag-alag karke poochhtaachh karein.

**MCP Dwara Admiyon ko Check Karna**

9. **Check Karne ke Prakar.**

(a) **Quick Body Check.** Jab adhik vyakitiyon ko check karna ho ya detailed body check karna mumkin na ho. Is checking ka uddesh hai ki jaldi se hathiyar ya aisi vastu ko pakda jaye jo ki ugarvadi checking karne wale jawan par istemal kar sakta hai.

(b) **Detailed Body Check.** Is checking mein detail checking ki jati hai aur ho sake to ek kamre ka intjam bhi kiya jaye.

10. **Admiyon ko Check Karne ka Tariqa.**

(a) Jis vyakti ko check karna hai us vyakti ko kisi deewar ya gari ke sahaare khara karein. Agar yeh mumkin na ho to, vyakti ko us prakar khara hone ko kahen ki uski taange khuli hon aur baju sir ke upar faile hon.

(b) Jin vyaktiyon ko check karna ho unke upar guard hona chahiye.

(c) Check karne wala, checking pichhe se, sir se paon ki disha mein karen.

(d) Check karte samay donon haathon ka istemal kiya jaye.

(e) Mahilaon ki checking mahila police dwara ki jaye. Agar mahila police na ho toh, group mein se kisi mahila ki madad lein.

11. **Checking ke Dauran Dhyan mein Rakhne wali Baaten.**

(a) Checking hamesha hoshiyari, tezi aur dhyan se ki jaye. Kisi ko bhi pareshan ya nuksan na pahunchayein.

(b) Jab kisi gari ko check karein, to saaman ke malik (owner) ka pata pehle laga liya jaye taki baad mein us aadmi ko pahchana ja sake.

(c) Sabhi zaruri documents, jaise ki driving license ityadi, ko theek se check karein. Yeh aapko shakiya aadmi pakarne mein madad pahuncha sakta hai.

(d) Metal Detector ka istemal kiya jaye.

(e) Checking ke baad gari ke driver se "No Claim Cert" prapt karein.

(f) Jin aadmiyon ki checking ki ja rahi hai, unko lagatar observation mein rakhein aur unke chehre ke bhavon (expression) ko note karte rahein. Isse unhe pakarne mein madad milegi.

(g) Checking ke baad, ek "Check Report" banai jaye. "Check Report" mein nimn baaten shaamil karein :-

* + 1. Check kiye gaye aadmiyon ki detail.
    2. Check ka sthan aur samay.
    3. Shakiya evidence ki jaankari aur us par ki gai karwai ka bayan.
    4. Commander ka naam, jisne check karne ka hukum diya ho.
    5. Checking ka samay, check kiye hue aadmiyon ka bartav aur unke

dwara di gai statements.

(vi) Checking karne wale aur witnesses ke hastakshar.

**Quick Reaction Team**

12. Jab bhi ugarvadiyon ka contact suraksha karamchariyon se hoga, uska sabse pahle reaction contact todna hoga. Jahan tak security forces ka sawal hai, unhe chahiye ki ek baar sthapit hue contact ko na tootne den aur ugarvadiyon ko pakarne ya barbad karne ki koshish karein. Is baat ko haasil karne ke liye jaruri hai ki kuchh force ko reserve rakha jaye jo ki diye hue sthan par kam se kam samay par pahunch sake. Aise reserve troops ko quick Reaction Team (QRT) kehte hain. Yeh mobile hoti hain aur kisi bhi saathan par bina samay barbad kiye hue pahunch jati hain.

**Quick Reaction Team (QRT) ka Basic Concept**

13. Ugarvadi apne operations stealth (chupke) aur surprise ke aadhar par karte hain. Is baat ko madhya nazar rakhte hue yeh jaruri hai ki teji se, chhoti tukdi dwara kiya gaya reaction jyada labh-dayak hoga vanispat kisi deliberate planned action ke. Isi basic concept ko dhyan mein rakhte huye QRT ko banaya gaya hai.

**QRT ki Banawat (Composition)**

14. Ek QRT ki banawat ek Rifle Platoon less a section (yani ki Offr/JCO aur 18 OR) ke aadhar par honi chahiye.

15. Har Company mein ek QRT hamesha taiyari halat mein honI chahiye. Battalion HQ mein bhi aise hi ek QRT honi chahiye. QRT do gariyon par aadharit honi chahiye jismen ek jeep/jonga aur dusra 1 Ton ho sakta hai.

**Ek QRT ki detail Organisation**.

16. **Nafri.** 1 Offr/JCO aur 18 OR jinki baant is prakkar ho :-

* 1. Commander - 1 Offr/JCO.
  2. 2IC - 1 Offr/JCO.
  3. Radio Operation - 1 with Radio set ANPRC 25 WB.
  4. Veh Protection party. - 1 NCO aur 5 OR jismen 2 drivers shamil hain.
  5. OR - 13
  6. Tracker Dog aur handler.

17. **Arms and Ammunition.**

(a) Commander, 2IC aur Radio Operator - Sten aur 2 bhari magazine.

(b) LMG - 2 LMG aur har ek LMG ke saath 5 bhari magazine.

(c) Rifle - 10 SLR aur har rifle ke saath 2 bhari magazine.

(d) Hand Gren - 12 Nos. Jo ki donon gariyon mein barabar jawanon ko baante hue hon.

(e) Mini Flare - 1 aur 3 Carts (Lal, Hara aur ill (each)).

18. **Equipment.** Har gari mein nimn saman hamesha rakha hua hona chahiye:-

(a) Ek ANPRC 25 aur do spare batteries.

(b) Ek din ka ration.

(c) Har jawan ke liye ek torch aur 02 search lights.

(d) Medical Haversack.

(e) Identifier ka chehra dekhne ke liye mask/burka.

(f) Blind folding kit - 2 set.

(g) Line bedding/Hand cuffs - 2.

(h) Ilake ka map/enlargement.

(j) Ugarvadiyon ke photographs aur list.

(k) Ek spare jarricane petrol ka.

19. **QRT ko nimn task diye ja sakte hai:-**

(a) Kisi recorded gari ka peechha karna.

(b) Spot check/ Road frisking karna.

(c) Kisi shakiya dukan, jhopdi ya ghar ki search.

(d) Stops ka kaam karna.

(e) Khabar haasil karna.

(f) Bade operations se pahle base banana.

(g) Turant ilaqe ki sealing/cordon karna.

(h) Link patrol sthapit karna.

(j) Ambush lagana.

(k) Kisi patrol ko reinforce karna.

(l) Short notice par kisi VIP ka escort duty karna.

(m) Ugarvadiyon ko escort karke interrogation ke liye interogation Cell le jana.

**Karwai ka Sequence**

20. Jaisi hi mov order milta hai, OIC QRT turant apne hukum deta hai. Ek QRT ka sequence of action is prakar se ho sakta hai :-

(a) Orders issue karna.

(b) Gariyon mein baithna.

(c) LMG ko fix karna aur mag ko bharna/fix karna.

(d) Radio set ko netting karna aur milap isthapit karna.

(e) Detail briefing mov ke dauran jari rakhna.

(f) Di hui site par pahunchane par apne operations ki progress dete rahna.

**QRT Ki Readiness ki Stithi**

21. QRT 3-5 minute ke ander mov ho jani chahiye iske liye QRT ko hamesha ready halat mein rakhna chahiye. Do tariqe hain jisse is baat ko yakin kiya ja sakta hai:-

(a) **Din mein QRT ki Readiness.**

* + 1. QRT mein detail aadmi company ke ander apni normal duty karte rahein, prantu unhein company ke bahar na bheja jaye.
    2. Hathiyar, ammunition aur anya equipment alag sthan par ready halat mein rakhne chahiye.
    3. Gaariyan (jis mein ki driver saath taiyar honge) kahin bhi detail nahi ki jayengi.
    4. Pahle mukarar kiye gaye signal ke hote hi, team alert ho jayegi aur mov ke liye taiyar ho jayegi.

(b) **Raat mein QRT ki Readiness.**

(i) Raat mein QRT mein detail aadmi ek sthan par ikattha rahenge.

(ii) Sote hue har aadmi uniform aur boot laga kar soyega aur uske equipment gari mein rakha hoga.

(iii) Gariyon mein equipment aur sabhi saaman rakha hua hoga aur drivers gariyon ke pass hi soyenge.

(iv) Jaise hi hukum milta hai, yeh warning hoti hai, QRT mov ke liye taiyar honge.

22. Hamare hathiyar, saaman, leadership aur sikhlai ugarvadiyon se bahut ache darze ki hai. Hamare aadmi zismani taur par hostile se bahut achhe aur discipline wale hain. Agar har jawan CI operations mein Road opening, convoy protection, MCP jaise defensive operation ko achhi tarah se karta hai, to koi karan nahin ki ugarvadi apne uddesh mein kabhi bhi safal ho sakein.

**CHAPTER – 34**

**BUILT UP AREA KO CLEAR KARNA**

## Fighting in Built Up Area 2005

**Operations Mein Ane Wali Mushkilen**

1. Operations mein ane wali mushkilon ke samne ane se pahle aise operations mein gaur karne wali baten is prakar hai :-

(a) Militants/ building ke bare mein jankari.

(b) Sub unis ke beech zimmewari ka ilaqa banta hua hona chahiye.

(c) Cordon raat ke samay lagaen.

(d) Building mein ghusne ke liye alag alag tariqon ka istemal karo.

(e) Fire aur move ka istemal karo (systematic clearance of the BUA first light onwards).

(f) Building ke andar ke layout ki jankari prapt karo.

(g) Strength, composition aur tariqa in baton par nirbhar karega :-

(i) Built up area mein kitni abadi mauzood hai.

(ii) Militant ke paas koi agva kiya hua civilian/hostage to nahin hai.

**Operation Ke Dauran Aane Wali Mushkilen**

2. Built up area mein larai aur militant se clear karna bahut mushkil operation hai kyonki :-

(a) Ugrawadi chhupaav mein hota hai aur troops khule mein hote hain.

(b) Clear karne wala troops ko us ilaqe ki, jis ko clear karna hai zyada jaankari nahin hoti.

(c) Suraksha bal rajnitik karanon ki wajah se apni puri taqat ka istemal nahin kar sakte.

(d) Buildings ka design alag alag hone ke karan, tactics mein tabdili aur sub units ko dobara tartib deni parti hai.

(e) Aise operation mein section aur platoon ke level par uncha training standard aur individual level par bahut zyada initiative chahiye.

3. Operation mein ane wali mushkilon ko dekhne ke baad ab dekhte hain ki operation kin stages mein kiya jayega.

(a) Sabse pahle built up area ko clear karne ke liye cordon charon taraf se lagana chahiye.

(b) Phir built up area mein ek jagah foot hold sthapit karna chahiye.

(c) Sub unit dwara har ek building ko clear kiya jaye.

(d) Pure built up area ko tartibwar clear kiya jaye.

4. Is operation ke liye har sub unit ko teen groups mein baanta jana chahiye. Clearing group, covering group aur look out men/man. Groups ki banawat aur task is prakar hain :-

* 1. **Clearing Group.** Is mein ek sub unit commander aur do ya zyada entry man hote hain. Yeh groupbuilding ke paas pahunchta hai aur covering group inki harkat ko cover karta hai. Building ke pass pahuchne ke baad yeh group auto fire, grenade aur explosive ke shock effect ki madad se building mein dakhil hota hai aur building ko clear karta hai.
  2. **Covering Group.** Sub unit ka 2IC groupcommander hota hai. Ismen LMG group aur grenade firing rifle man ke alawa 51mm Mortar det bhi shamil ho sakta hai. Iska task clearing group ki harkat, khule flank ko cover karna hai aur, ugrawadi ko ek building sedusre building mein jane se rokna hai. Halat ke upar nirbhar karte hue covering group ek se zyada position par bhi baantkar lagaya ja sakta hai.
  3. **Lookout Man.** Yeh clearing aur cover groups ke beech nazari milap rakhta hai. Yeh donon group ke beech mukarar kiye hue signal deta hai. Lookout man ek ho ya zyada, yeh halat aur kitne gap ko cover karna hai, uske upar nirbhar karta hai.

5. Is baat ko yaad rakha jaye ki har group ki strength halat ke mutabiq kam ya zyada ki ja sakti hai.

**Operation ke liye Sectionki Banawat**

6. Aam taur par ek riflesection mein nau (9) jawan present hote hain. Unki banawat aur task is prakar hain :-

(a) **Clearing Group.** Yeh GroupSectioncommander, entry man No.1, entry man No.2 aur entry man No.3 ka bana hai. Section commander pahle se muqarar kiye hua isharon se section mein whistle dwara milap rakhta hai. Makan mein ghusne se pahle grenade phainka jayega. Jab ugrawadi grenade ke dhamake se sanchit hon, room mein carbine ka auto fire kiya jaye aur dakhil ho jaye. Section commander apne dimag mein us area ka sketch hamesha rakhta hai.

(b) **Covering Group.** Is group mein Section 2IC, LMG Group aur UBGL rifle ke saath ek rifle man hota hai. Yeh group clearing group ko covering fire se madad karta hai. Iske alawa jo house clear ho raha hai uske khule flank ko cover karta hai.

(c) **Look Out Man.** Yeh clearing group aur covering group ke beech nazari milap rakhta hai. Yeh ek guide ke taur par kaam karta hai.

7. Clearing aur covering groups ki strength built up area aur bldgs ke design ke upar nirbhar karta hai.

8. Akhir mein yeh kaha ja sakta hai ki bahut si mushkilen aur bandishon ke bavzood bhi yeh operation kamyab ho sakta hai aur aapki casuality bhi kam ho sakti hai agar chand ek buniyadiusulon ka khyal rakha jaye.

**CHAPTER - 35**

**CORDON AND SEARCH OPERATIONS(CASO) AUR**

**SEARCH AND DESTROY OPERATIONS (SADO)**

**Special Operations Part B Counter Insurgency Operations 1990**.

**Parichay**

1. Second world war ke baad se varthman kaal tak yudh ka tarika badal gaya hain. Guerilla yudh aur atankvad main hui vridhi ne vishva ki senao ka is se larne keliye prasiksit hona anivarya kardiya hain. Bharathiya sena bhi uttar poorvi rajyon aur J & K main atankvadi virodhi Operation main leen hain. Patrol, Ambush, Mobile Check Post(MCP), CASO and SADO jaise operations kar atankwad ko khatam thatha janasankhya ko control mein rakha jaraha hain.

**Cordon and Search Operation (CASO)**

2. Cordon and Search Operation kai karnon se kiya jata hain. Kuch pramukh maqsad is parkar se hain:-

* 1. Gaon main chhupe atankvadiyon ko pakadna ya mar girana.
  2. Weapon, Ammunition, Equipment aur dastavej kabje mein lena.
  3. Atankvadiyon aur unke samaarthakon ki harkat par ankhush lagana.
  4. Suraksha senao ka dar banakar rakhna.
  5. Sena ke morale ko up karna.

3. Is operation ke saflata ke liye hamein is ke baren main kuch ek jaroori khabar hona anivarya hain Jo ki is prakar se hain:-

(a) Target Gaon ki khabar.

(b) Atankh vadiyon se sambandit khabar.

(c) Janasankhya se sambandit khabar.

4. Target gaon ke bare main nimn likhit jankari hona avashyak hain:-

(a) Gaon ki jagah

(b) Gaon ka Akar, Khaka aur kul makkan.

(c) Aas pass ka ilaqa

(d) Bhagne ke mumkin rasten.

(e) Nigrani rakhne ki jagah.

5. Atankwadiyon ke bare mein yeh jankari honi chahiye:-

(a) Atankhvadi samooh ki nafri, Weapon aur kisi commander ki upasthiti.

(b) Atankhvadi samooh ki tarteeb.

(c) Atankhvadi ki harkat ka tariqa aur aam taur par istemal hone wale tactics.

6. Chune huwe gaon mein rahne wale abadi ke bare main hamein jo jankari honi chahiye woh is prakar hain:-

(a) Gaon ki janasankhya.

(b) Ilaqe main Atankhvadi samarthak log thata unke gharon ki nishan dehi.

(c) Sarkar ki sahayata karne wale log.

(d) Atankhvadiyon ke ghar aur pariwar.

(e) Janta ka sena aur Atankhvadiyhon ke prati ravayya.

(f) Ilaqe ke mahatv pooran log jaise ki sarpanch, neta, unche pad par sarkari adhikari.

(g) Anya Jankari.

7. Cordon aur search ko tartib dene ke liye jane wali nafri ko vibhin –vibhin partiyon mein baanta jata hai.

(a) **Cordon Party.** Is party ki nafri sabse adhik hoti hai yah tukdi do bhaghon mein apna kaam karti hai:-

(i) Bahri cordon.

(ii) Andruni cordon.

(b) Is party ka kam gaon ki ghera bandi karna aur bhagne ke raston ko katna hota hai. Aam taur par bahari ghera gaon se nikalne wale raston par aur bhagne wale satahon par ambush ke roop main lagaya jata hain. Antrooni Ghera Ghana hota hain tatha gaon ke nazdeek hota hain. Is ke alawa nikalne wale raston par ghehrai main Stops lagaya jate hain. Aapsi milap keliye yah party radio set VPS ya Motorola ka istemal karti hain.

(c) **Search Party.** Is party ka kaam ilaqe ki talashi karna hota hain. Is ki nafri ek section hoti hain. Jis ki bant is prakar hain:-

(i) Search party main SectionCommander aur Rif No -1 aur 2.

(ii) Support group main RL Det, LMG Group, MGL, UBGL aur Rif Man.

(iii) Is ke alawa kuch civil aur asainik log bhi search party ka hissa hote hain :-

(aa) Magistrate ya civil adhikari.

(ab) Police ka numainda Mahila Police ke saath.

(ac) Ilake ka sarpanch.

(ad) Ghar ka malik/Sadasya.

(ae) Pioneer Det.

(d) **Reserve Party.** Is party ke bahut se kam ho sakte hain jaise ki :-

(i) Inner Cordon ko depth dena.

(ii) Zarurat ke mutabiq ilaqe main cerfew lagana.

(iii) Bhagte huye ugravadi ka peecha karna.

(iv) Operations wale ilaqe ki nigrani karna.

(v) Koi bhi achanak anewali sthiti se nipatna.

(vi) Ilaqe aur task ke anusar nafri ek section se platoon ki ho sakti hain.

(e) **Interrogation and Identification Party.**Is ka kaam civil ki parakh aur poochtaachh karke khabar haasil karna saath hi shakiya logon ko alag karna tatha puchh tachh karna. Aam tor par ek officer/JCO is party ka commander hote hain. Tatha sat main identifier aur interpreter hote hain.

(d) **Civic Action Party.** Nimn likhit log hote hain :-

(i) Doctor aur Medical Det.

(ii) CSD Saman.

(iii) Anya koi rahat.

(iv) Is Party ka kaam civil ko CASO se hone wale kasht se rahat dena hain.

(e) **Prisoner Guard Party.** Is party ka kaam shakiya aadmiyon par gd rakhna aur aam janta se alag karna hota hain. Is ki nafri takriban ek section ki hoti hain.

**Cordon and Search Operation Karne ka Tariqa**

8. Cordon and Search operation teen phase mein pura kiya jata hain:-

(a) Target gaon tak ki harkat.

(b) Cordon lagana

(c) Search Karna.

9. Target gaon ki harkat karte samai in baton ko dhyan main rakha jayen:-

(a) Harkat achanak ki jai.

(b) Raat ke samai cross country movement.

(c) Harkat ke dauran civilian milne par unhe saath main rakha jai.

(d) Movement ke dauran field craft and drills sahi hona chahiyen.

(e) Ho sake gaon ko ek se zyada disha se approach kiya jaye.

(f) Chalte samay paon aur equipment ki awaz na ho.

(g) Cordon lagate samay tej harkat aur lagne ke baad koi harkat nahin.

(h) Bharosemand milap magar kam radio awaz par.

(j) Manav adhikaron ka ulaghan nahin hona chahiye.

10. Cordon lagane se pahle gaon ke pass ek release point niyukat kiya jata hai. Jahan se cordon partiyan alag hoti hai aur ghera laganashuru karti hai. Jahan par sara bhari saman bhi rakha jata hai. Is ke ilawa gehrai mein stop ambush ke taur par lagaye jate hai. Ghera laganeke bad party commander suchna operationcommanderko deta hai.

11. Search operationghera lag jane ke bad subha shuru kiya jata hai. Pure gaon ko ikkatha kiya jata hai. Gaon wasion ki screening aur search saath saath ki jati hai. Search karte samay bahumanzila makaon ki search mein niminlikhit baten dhayan mein rakhni chahiye :-

(a) Talashi uppar se niche ki aur.

(b) Chhat par helicopter sidi, pani ki pipe ya anya makan se pahunca jaye.

(c) Anya imarton par sniper tainat ho.

(d) Admion ko bandi banane ke liye hamesha alag team honi chahiye. (e) Search drill ka abhyas pahle kiya hona chahiye.

12. Rihaeshi imarat ki talashi lete samay kuch ek dhayan mein rakhne wali baten:-

(a) Search party ke saath ghar ka numainda ho.

(b) Ghar ke sabhi log ek jagah par ikkathe kiye jaye.

(c) Gehrai se khoj ki jaye. Rasoi ghar, bathroom, deewaren, Almirah, chat etc.

(d) Ek se zyada search party aur search ek saath ki jaye.

(e) No objection certificate ghar ke malik se hamesha sign karwana chahiye yadi gaon mein khali ya tala band makan hai to booby trap se savdhani bartani chahiye.

13. **Booby Traps ke Lakshyaan**:-

(a) Koi bhi akarshak vastu ka khule mein para hona.

(b) Apni jagah se alag saman.

(c) Khudi huye jagah.

(d) Koi wire ya keel.

**Search and Destroy Operation Karne ka Tariqa.**

14. Search aur destroy operationnimin karnon se kiya jata hai :-

(a) Ilake ki dekhbhal aur kabze ke liye.

(b) Jab vidrohiyon ke bare mein pakki khabar na mile.

(c) Kafi bara jungle ya ilaka search karne ki zarurat ho.

(d) Ilake mein atankwadi shivir hone ka andesha ho.

15. Search karte samay dhayan mein rakhne wali baten :-

(a) Atankwadion aur janta ki khabar malum honi chahiye.

(b) Nafri ilake aur khabar ke anusar honi chahiye.

(c) Ilake ko prathmikta ke adhar par bant kar search kiya jaye.

16. Atankwadi shivir ki khubiyan :-

(a) **Zamini Banawat.**

(i) Ghana jungle, nale, tuti-futi zamin ke saath.

(ii) Ek hi rasta.

(iii) Main raston se dur.

(iv) Guard/sentry chupe huye saathan par.

(v) Bhagne ke anek raste.

(b) **Pani.** Adm karnon se pani ke shrot ke nazdik camp paye jate hai.Suraksha karnon se kheti/gaon se dur shivir banaya jata hai. Par aam janta se milne wali kahbar aur administrative help ke karan gaon se 1 se 5 km ke ander hota hai.

17. **SADO ki Partiyan.**

(a) **Stop.** Is ki nafri sabse zyada hoti hai. Iska kam search kiye jane wale ilake ka ghera lagana hopta hai.

(b) **Search Party.** Is ka kam ilake ko search karna hai. Yeh party hamesha encounter ke liye tayar honi chahiye. Shakiya jagah ka search tassali se karna chahiye. Is party ko tracking mein nipun hona chahiye.

(c) **Reserve Party.** Is ka kam stop ka kam karna, picha karna ya anya kisi bhi sthiti se niptana.

18. **Serach Ke Tarike.** Search teen tarikon se kiya jata hai :-

(a) Sweep Method.

(b) Fan method.

(c) Selective search.

19. **Sweep Method.** Is mein teen dishaon mein stop lagayen jate hai. Aur chauthi disha se search party stop ki taraf aati hai. Is method mein cont rakhne ki zarurat hoti hai.

20. **Fan Method.** Is se chhota ilaka acchi tarah search kiya jata hai. Search party kisi ek disha se dayen/bayen ghum kar start point par aa jati hai.

21. **Selective Search.** Yeh tab ki jati jab atankwadion ke thikane ki khabar ho, bare ilake mein troops ki kami ho. Is tarah ki search mein gati aur surprise par zor diya jana chahiye aur sweep method ke saman ilaka saaf banta hona chahiye.

22. Yadi is lesson ke dauran sikhaye huye tarike aur zaruri baton ko dhayan mein rakh kar CASO aur SADO jaise operations kiye jaye to bina nuksan uthaye saflta milna nischit hai. Is se khud ka manobal barta hai aur atankwaad ki jaren kamzor hoti hai.

**CHAPTER - 36**

**RAID ON MILITANT HIDE OUT**

**(a) Special Operations Part B Counter Insurgency Operations 1990.**

**(b) Inf Trg Vol IV Tac – 1985.**

**(c) The Planning and conduct of patrol, Ambush and Raids**.

**Parichay**

1. Aaj ke halaton main Jammu aur Kashmir evam poorvottar rajyon main atakvandiyon ke hide out arthat chupane ke sthan main raid karna hamare sena ke pramukh karyom main se ek ho chuka hain. Yeh hide out aam taur par durgam sthano par hote hain is liye ek raid ko safal hone ke liye, sahi khabar, surprise, fire ki takat aur thikano ke baron main adhik se adhik jankari hona avashyak hai.

**Thikano(Hideout) ke Prakar**

2. Mukhya roop se atankvadi nimna prakar ke thikanon main rah sakte hain:-

* 1. **Trg Camp.** 
     1. In camps main atankvadiyon ki training uska mukhyalay aur unit bhi ho sakte hain.
     2. In mein 50 se 150 tak atankvadi ho sakte hain. Jin mein 30 se 70 % hathiyarband hone ki sambhavna hain.
     3. Aam taur par in camps ka location durgam pani ke source ke pass syavam bane huwe sadak aur raston se door hote hain.
     4. In ka pravesh dwar bahut kathin evam chupav walen rastion se banaya jata hai.
     5. Kahin sentry jinhe look out man bhi kaha jata hain. In thikanon se kareeb 1 km ke doori par camp ke taraf ane wale sabhi raston par nigrani rakhte hain.
     6. 2 se 5 vyakti ki kayi tukdiyan camp ke kareeb 200 se 500 mtr par suraksha balon ke harkath par nazar rakhne keliye hote hain.
  2. **Civil Prashasan Camp.**
     1. Yah thikane atankvadi netaon ya unke VIP ke liye stapit kiye jate hain.
     2. In mein 10 se 30 hathiyar band atankvadi hote hain.
     3. In mein aatankwadiyon ke parivar aur mahilayen bhi hoti hain.
     4. Suraksha prabandh trainingcamp ki tarah hi hote hain parantu unki tulna main kam hote hain.
  3. **Vishram ya Trg Camp.** 
     1. Yah camp mukhyata un raston ke as pas banaya jate hai jo ki atankvadiyon dwara niyamit roop se ek sthan se doosre sthan tak jane mein prayog main laye jate hain.
     2. Yah camp gaon se 3 se 5 km ki doori par hote hain.

* + 1. Suraksha praband training camp ki tarah hi hote hain.
  1. **Hide Out.**
     1. Is mein 5 se 10 atankvadi ho sakte hain jin main se 5 se 6 ke pass hathiyar ho sakte hain.
     2. Yah jhum hut ya koi astai jhopdi ho sakti hain jis ka prayog atankvadi tab karte hain jab ki suraksha balon ka khatara bade campon par pad gaya ho.
     3. Is mein aam tour par ek hi sentry hota hain jo ki mukhya raste ki nigrani karta hain.
     4. Yah atankvadi is mein ek se 5 dinon tak rah sakte hain.

**Atankvadi dwara Hideout mein Dhyan meinRakhne wali Baten.**

1. Mukhya roop se adankvadi nimn likhit baton ka dyan rakhte hain :-
   1. **Chhupav.** Yah camp ghani junglon main raste tatha pagdandiyon se door banaya jate hain jisse hawai survekshan ya suraksha balon ki dhoodne par na miley.
   2. **Zamin.** Adankvadiyon dwara mushkil se mushkil zamin chuni jati hain jisse suraksha bal camp tak na pahunch payen.
   3. **Tactics ki zarurat.** Adankvadiyon hamesha hit and run tactics ka istemal karte hain. Isliye vo apne camps ko defence ki larai ke liye tayar nahin karte balki vo yakeen karta hain ki camp ki aur ane wale raste seemit sankhya main ho tatha mushkil jagaon se hokar gujare. Bhagne ke raste, pahariyon, neeche ki or, nalon ke saath tatha ghane jungle ke andar nischit kiye jate hain.

* 1. **Adm ki zarooraten.** 
     1. Gaon se nazdeeki taki khane ka saman laya ja sake.
     2. Pani ke srot se nazdeek.

**Hideout Dhoondne ka Tariqa**

1. Suraksha balon ke pas nimn sadhan hote hain :-
   1. Pakare gaye ya atmasamarpan kiye huye atankvadi guide ke roop main kaam aa sakte hain.
   2. Pakade gaye documents camp ki location bata sakte hain.
   3. Apne khabari dwara mili jankari.
   4. SIB tatha police dwara mili jankari se hide out ka pata lag sakta hain kinto kabhi kabhi inki khabar purani hosakti hain isliye usey patrol ya khabariyon se pakka karna chahiye.
   5. Atankvadiyon ke parivaron se kafi jankari mil sakti hain. Is prakar unke mazdooron ya porter dwara bhi jankari prapt ki ja sakti hain.

**Raid keSiddhant**

1. Raid ke nimn siddhant hote hain:-
   1. **Surprise.** Raid ki saflata poorn roop se surprise par nirbhar karti hain. Kharab mausam, kharab roshni aur rat ke samai mushkil zamin se harkat surprise kayam karne main madadgar sabit hote hain.
   2. **Gopniyata.** Raid ke plan ko goopniy rakhna raid ki saflata ke liye atyavashak hain. Iske alawa raid ki tayari aur rehearsal chupav main karni chahiyen.
   3. **Suraksha.** Raat main sawdhani poorvak harkat karni chahiye, gaon atankvadiyon ke rahne ke sambhavit sthanon aur pagadandiyon se doori banay rakhne chahiye.
   4. **Tezi.** Surprize toot jane par ya atankvadiyon se muthbhed ho jane par tezi se karwai karna chahiye.
   5. **Shock Action.** Atankvadiyon se muthbhed hone par sabhi hatyaron ka bhari matra mein fire aur dhawa ki karwai unhen stabhd kar deti hain.
   6. **Talashi.**  Dhawa ki karwai samapt hone ki baad bahar nikalne ki sabhi raston ko talash kar lena chahiye. Atanki aksar apna hathiyar ya upkaran chhodkar bhag khade hote hain aur kabhi kabhi unhen lene vapis ate hain iske liye vahan par ek SBP chhod diya jate hain.
   7. Peecha karne wali party raid ke ant main bhagte atakvadiyon ka peecha kar unhe pakarte ya barbad karte hain.

**Raid Party ki Bant Karwai.**

1. Raid party ko teen (3) bhagon main banta jata hai.
   1. **Raid Party.** Yah party raid karti hai. Iski nafri atankvadi ke sankhya par nirbhar karti hain. Uske elawa nafri rakhte huye nimn baten bhi dhyan main rakhna chahiye.
      1. Surprise ke ahmiyat sabse adhik hai.
      2. Atankvadiyon ki bhagne ki sambhawana skheern kiya jay.
      3. Hide Out out ki teek teek jagah malum nahin hona.
      4. Zamin badey raid party ki ijadat na den.
      5. Apne hi jawanon ke upar fire nahin kiya jay.
   2. **Pursuit ya Peecha Karne wali Party.** Is party main shareerik roop se chust jawan honge. Jo vishesh roop se chunet honge. Unhen kam vazan diya jayega. Yah party bhagte huwe atankvadi ka peeche karti hain. Arambh main yah raid party ke reserve ka kaam karti hain. Tracker Dog team bhi is party ka hissa hota hain. Kabhi kabhi is party ko do ya adik chhoti party main bant dete hain taki alag alag dishon main bhage dushman ka picha kiya ja sake.
2. **Raid ki Karwai.** Yah karwai 4 bhagon main poori hoti hai:-
   1. Hissa No 1. Apna location se release point ya firm base tak ka harkat.
   2. Hissa No 2. Bahari aur bheetari stop lagana.
   3. Hissa No 3. Raid
   4. Hissa No 4. Raid ke bad ki karwai jaise talashi aur peecha.
3. **Dhyan mein Rakhne wali Baten**.
   1. Talashi hamesha uncha zamin se neeche zamine ki or hona chahiye.
   2. Pagadandiyon par harkat na ho.
   3. Samay aisa chuna jai jab atanki sab se kam chaukannena ho.
   4. Yojna banate samai look out man ka dhyan rakha jai.
   5. Yadi koi chote dasten 500 se 1000m ki doori par ho to unhein by pas kiya jai. Yadi yah sambhav na ho to use bina surprise tode barbad kiya jai.
   6. Pursuit party yadi kisi atankvadi ka peeche kar rahi hon to raid party us sambhavit raston ki taraf 51mm Mortar ya MGL fire kar sakti hain par yah dhyan rahe apne party ya stop par fire na ho.

8. Hamare jawan shareerik aur mansik roop se atankvadi ki tulna main adhik saksham hain. Yadi sahi training, unche darje ka netritv aur unche morale ke saath raid kiya jai to saflata nischit hain.

**CHAPTER – 37**

**HUMAN RIGHTS**

**Human Rights – 2008 HQ ARTRAC**

**Parichay**

1. Har insaan ko paida hone ke baad kuchh buniyaadi adhikar prapt hai. In adhikaron ko Human Rights ya manavadhikar kehte hai. Sena ke har jawan ko inse bakhubi avgat hona jaruri hai, taki wah anjaane mein inka ullanghan na karen. Jammu Kashmir aur North East states ke alawa, sena ko aksar internal security ke liye bulaya jata hai. Aise halat mein yadi human rights aur disturbed area mein sena ke adhikaron ke bare mein jankari na ho to sena ki chhavi ko kshati pahunch sakti hai.

**Human Rights ke Mool Aadhar**

2. Human Rights ke mool adhaar is prakar se hain :-

(a) Sab barabar hai.

(b) Gunah ya kanooni karwai ke bagair bandi nahin.

(c) 24 ghante ke andar court mein peshi.

(d) Sahi aur shighra kanooni karwai.

(e) Bura bartav aur maar peet nahin.

(f) Majboor karke najayaz karwai nahin.

(g) Jyadati ke virodh ka adhikar.

**Ugrawad Ke Khilaf Kanoon**.

3. **Armed Forces (Special Power) Ordinance- 1942.**

(a) Captain rank se upar koi officer apni duty ke dauran apne niche kisi ko fire kholne ka adesh de sakta hai yadi wah :-

* + 1. Sentry ke challenge karne par na ruke.

(ii) Kisi sampatti jiski suraksha karna offr ki duty hai us ko nuksaan pahunchae.

(iii) Kisi prakar ke hathiyar ka upyog kisi jaanshuda vastu ke khilaf karen.

(b) Bina warrant ke talaashi**.**

(c) Giraftar karte samay taakat ka istemal jisse us aadmi ki maut ho jaye.

(d) Giraftar aadmi ko jaldi police ko den.

(e) Mukadma chalane ke liye kendriya sarkar ki manzoori**.**

4. **Armed Forces (Spl Power) Act-1958.**

(a) Assam, Manipur, Nagaland, Mizoram, Arunachal Pradesh, Meghalaya aur Jammu & Kashmir ke liye lagu kiya gaya hai.

(b) Iske tahat Officer/ JCOs/NCOs ko nimnlikhit power hai.:-

(i) Kanoon aur shaanti banaye rakhne ke liye chetawani dene ke baad fire khol sakte hai.

(ii) Kisi hathiyaron ke dump, morche ya koi aisi jagah jiska ugrawadi galat istemal kar sake, ko barbad kar sakte hain.

(iii) Bina warrant ke talaashi aur hirasat.

(iv) Kanooni karwai ke liye kendriya sarkar ki zimmewari.

5. **Bheed ke Khilaf Karwai.**

(a) Kam se kam taakat ka istemal.

(b) Badle ki karwai nahin.

(c) Neta ya badmash ki giraftari .

(d) Manmarzi ka fire nahin.

(e) Bujurgon ko gawah banana.

(f) Ghayalon ki murham patti.

(g) Baatchit se halaat mein sudhar.

6. **Civil Ilake Mein Muthbher par Karwai.**

(a) Ugrawadi ke khilaf sambhalkar karwai.

(b) Aam janta ko wahan se nikal jaane ka avsar diya jaye aur fire kholne se pehle chetawani di jaye.

(c) Apne aadmiyon ko manmarji se fire na karne diya jaye.

7. **Anushashanheen Aadmi Ke Khilaf Karwai**

(a) Troops ko samjhayen.

(b) Iski jaldi se jaldi chhanbeen karen.

(c) Doshi ko theek saza.

(d) Saza ke baare mein jaankari.

(e) Police aur mahila police ka istemaal karen.

**Do’s and Dont’s**

6. **Do’s (karna).**

(a) **Operations par Jaane se Pahle.**

(i) Karwai kewal disturbed area mein.

(ii) Fire ka hukam Officer/JCO/NCO dwara..

(iii) Ilaque ki puri khabar.

(iv) Raid ke dauran civil rep.

(b) **Operations ke Dauran Karwai.**

(i) Fire sirf zarurat par.

(ii) Chetawani ke baad fire.

(iii) Sirf mujrim ko giraftaar.

(iv) Troops ki najayaz harkat nahin.

(v) Aurat ki talaashi/giraftaari mahila police ke dwara.

(c) **Operations ke Baad Karwai.**

(i) Giraftaar aadmi ki suchi taiyar ki jaye.

(ii) 24 ghante mein giraftaar ko police ko den.

(iii) Likhit report aur baramad chijon ki suchi banayen aur police se receipt len.

(iv) Ghayalon ko first aid dein.

(v) Operation mein hissa le rahe commander aur dusre officer/ JCO/NCO ka record rakhen.

7. **Dont’s (Nahin Karna).**

(a) 24 ghante se zyada kisi ko hirasat mein na rakhen.

(b) Giraftar aadmi ke saath bura salook nahin.

(c) Khabar haasil karne ke liye buri tarah se pitai nahin.

(d) Giraftar aadmi ko khud na chhoren.

(e) Police ko hand over karne ke baad kisi aadmi ko wapis na len.

**CHAPTER - 38**

**WIRE OBSTACLES**

**(a) GS Pamphlet On Fd Engineering Pamphlet No 2 – Fd Def And Obst.**

**(b) GS Pamphlet On Fd Engineering Pamphlet No 5 – Laying Recording And Marking Of Mine Fd**

**Low Wire Entanglement**

1. Yeh chhote angle iron picket se lagai jati hai. Iski kam se kam 5 kataaren hoti hain. Ek kataar se dusri kataar ka fasla 2 gaj aur picket se picket ka fasla 3 gaj hota hai. Picket ki zamin se unchai 9" hoti hai.

2. Low wire entanglement ke faide niche likhe anusar hote hain:-

(a) Chhupana aasan hai.

(b) Lagane mein kam samay lagta hai.

(c) Dushman ke liye chhotta target banta hai aur hawai jahaz photo nahin le sakta hai.

(d) Zyada booby traps laga sakte hain.

(e) Surprise haasil hota hai.

3. **Nuksan.**

(a) Din ke samay dushman ko rokne ki qabiliyat kam.

(b) Chupao ya jharidar alawa hona jaruri hota hai.

(c) Defender ke dil main jyada bharosa paida nahi hota hai.

4. **Lagane ki jagah.**

(a) Defence ke aage 30 se 80 m tak.

(b) Fasal, ghas, dal- dal ke saath - saath tatha jharidar ilaqe mein.

(c) Tuti futi zamin mein.

5. **Drill.**  Low wire entanglement lagane ki drill niche likhe anusar hoti hai:-

(a) Party - 1 NCO aur 10 OR.

(b) Commander 3 - 3 gaj ki duri par nishan lagata hai.

(c) No 1, aur 2 pahle do row ki picketon ko rakh kar 1 se 1 ½ feet ki unchai tak garenge.

(d) No 3 ,4, aur 5 diagonal wire lagaenge.

(e) No 6 aur 7, No 3 aur 4 ke 20 gaj aage jane par dusri row ke saath sidhi tar lagate hain.

(f) No 8, 9 aur 10 dusri diagonal wire lagana shuru karte hain.

(g) Jab tak puri gehrai tak taar nahin lag jati hai tab tak isi tartib mein kaam jari rehega.

**Note:** Tamam qism ke wire obstacles ka kaam bayein se dayein aur dushman ki taraf se apni taraf ko kiya jata hai.

**Double Apron Fence**

6. **Faida.**

(a) Dushman ko rokne ki qabiliyat LWE se jayada.

(b) Cat wire fence type II ke banispat kam samay.

7. **Nuksan.**

(a) Chupao mushkil.

8. Yeh lambe aur chhote angle iron picquet ke saath 6' chaure apron par teen-teen strands lagaye jate hain. Isse unchi rukawat banti hai. Ise kudarti rukawat ke saath lagana chahiye. Iski drill niche likhe anusar hoti hai.

* 1. Party mein 1 NCO aur 10 OR.
  2. **Task 1 (Picketon ko Gadna).** Commander picket se picket ke fasla 7' x 6' rakh kar nishan lagata hai. No 1 aur 2 char-char long picketon ko zamin mein gadhte hain. No 5 aur 6 short angle iron picketon ko donon long picketon ke beech mein aur unki line 6' par dushman ki taraf aur 6' apni taraf aur apni taraf slope mein gadhte hain.
  3. **Task II (Tar Lagana).** No 9, 10 aur 1, pahli long picket ke saath bandh kar dushman ki taraf diagonal taar lagate hain. No 2 se 3 tak, jodi jodi mein long picket ke saath horizontal taar lagate hain (niche se upar aur taar se taar 12" se 18" tak unchi No 4, 5 aur 6 apni taraf ki diagonal wire lagate hain. No 7, 10 aur 1 aur 2 jodi mein apron taar upar se niche aur ek diagonal ke chhor kar wind lassing karte hai. Yeh bhi anchorage picket se lagate hain.

**Cat Wire Fence Type I Aur II**

9. Is mein concertina coils ko lambe picket aur kaantedaar taar ke saath baandh kar lagate hain. Agar concertina ke do bandal ek se dusre par rakh kar donon taraf kaantedar taar lagayein to Type I aur agar isi taraf ki do rows laga kar teen kantedar taren lagaen to Type II fence kehlate hai. Pahli picket se dusri picket pahli row mein akhri do picket dusre row mein 5 feet par lagate hain.

10. **Faide.**

(a) Mazboot rukawat banti hai.

(b) Dushman ke tank, garion aur Infantry ke liye lagai jati hai. Unchi rukawat banti hai jise paar karna mushkil hai.

(c) Double apron fence ke banispat lagane ke liye kam samay ki zarurat.

* 1. Breeching karna mushkil.

11. **Nuksaan.**

(a) Unchi hone se dikhai deti hai aur air photo asani se le sakte hain.

(b) Double apron fence ki banispat samay zyada lagta hai aur saaman bhi zyada lagta hai.

(c) Kaatne se gap ban jate hain.

(d) Gehri kam.

12. **Lagane ki jagah.**

(a) Qudarti rukawat ke saath (Jaise nadi, nala, tang raaste aur defile).

(b) Road block karne ke liye (Tanks aur garion ke raaste mein).

(c) Double apron fence ke mazboot banane ke liye.

13. **Drill.** Is ki drill is anusar hoti hai :-

(a) Party - 1 NCO aur 10 OR.

(b) Commander - 10 - 10' par nishan lagate hain.

14. **Task I.** No 1 aur 2, char-char picketon ko utha kar nishan wali jagah par mamuli gadthe jate hain.

15. **Task II.** No 3 aur No 4, picketon ke 18" zamin mein gadthe hain.

16. **Task III.** No 5 aur No 6, niche wali horizontal taar ko zamin se 9" se 12" unchai mein lagate hain. No 7 aur 8 centre wali taar lagate hain. No 9 aur 10 upar wali taar lagata hain. Loop ko bayein taraf rakhte hue taar ko dhila baandhte hain taki concertina ka saath bundle kiya ja sake.

17. **Task IV.** No 1, 2 aur 3 concentrina coil ke khol kar bichhate hain aur dushman ki taraf upar wale loop ko saath bandlassing karte hain. No 4 apni taraf wali picketon ko thik jagah par rakhte hai.

18. **Task V.** No 5 se 10, yeh teen teen ki do tolian banakar task IV ki taraf concertina coil lagate hain. Agar Type II hai to taar lagane wali toli teen teen ki zori mein home side (Yani apni taraf wali) concertina coil ko khol kar bhichaenge aur band lass karenge.

**100 GAZ (94.4 MTR) OBSTACLE KE LIYE TIME AUR STORE**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Name | Party | Time(Min) | |  |  |  | Stores | |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | Day | Ni | **LAIP** | **SAIP** | **C/COIL** | **B/WIRE** | **W/C** | **HAMMER** | **W/S** | **TAPE** |
| L/WI/E | 1-10 | 30 | 60 | - | 200 | - | 15 | 2 | 2 | 6 | 30 |
| D/A/F | 1-10 | 60 | 120 | 40 | 82 | - | 13 | 2 | 3 | 10 | 26 |
| C/W/F  Type - I | 1-10 | 40 | 80 | 64 | - | 12 | 6 | 1 | 2 | 10 | 12 |
| C/W/F  Type - II | 1-10 | 70 | 140 | 96 | - | 24 | 9 | 1 | 2 | 10 |  |

19. Infantry ke har jawan ya section commander hone ke naate aap sab ko wire obstacle ke baare mein achhi tarah jaankari honi chahiye, taki mauqa parne par, aap store ki sahi demand kar saken. Sahi wire obstacle lagakar apne defence ya mine field ko mazboot kar saken. Dushman ke advance mein delay paida karke uska time plan kharab aur usko barbaad kar sakein.

### CHAPTER – 39

**MINE LAYING (L/D)**

## Fd Engineering Pamphlet No. 5

**Paribhashayen**

1. Mine field nomenclature (naamawali) nimn hain:-

(a) **Mine.** Kisi khas container mein band kiya hua woh high explosive jise mechanism ke bad munasib dabav ya khinchav ane par phat jata hai aur saath wale target ko bhi barbad kar deta hai.

(b) **Mine Field (Surang Kshetra).**  Yeh ek aisa chetra hai jismein pattern sahit ya uske bina surangen bichhi hoti hain.

(c) **Mine Field Depth (Gehrai).** Mine field ki gahrai.

(d) **Mine Field Frontage.** Mine field ki chaurai ko kahte hain.

(e) **Land mark.** Woh zamini nishan jiski sahayata se mine field lay kiya jata hai.

(f) **IMM Intermediate marker.** Land marker aur SSM ke beech 150 mtr se jyada fasla ho to IMM chuna jata hai. Taaki degree parne mein galti na ho.

(g) **SSM (Start Strip Marker).** Strip ke shuru mein jo picket gari jati hai.

(h) **ESM (End Strip Marker).** Strip ke ant mein jo picket gari jati hai.

(j) **IMP (Intermediate Picket).** SSM aur ESM ke beech har 50 m par jo picket gari jati hai.

(k) **TP (Turning Picket).** Tape ki disha ko badli karne ke liye jo picket gari jati hai.

(l) **Mine Strip.** Tape ke dono taraf jo mine lagai jati hai use mine strip kahate hain.

(m) **Mine Row.** Tape ke ek taraf minon ki jo katar banti hai use mine row kahte hain.

(n) **Density (Ghanatwa).** Ek metre chaurai (frontage) mein milne wali mineon ki tadad ko kahte hain. Yeh do kism ki hoti hai :-

* + 1. Std density.
    2. Require density.

**ROAD mein Low density kam se kam iske anusar di jati hai.**

2. **Low and standard Density**

(a) **Low**

(i) A/pers Mine - 1/2

(ii) A/tk Mine - 1/6

(iii) Fragmentation - 1/12

(b) **Std**

(i) A/pers - 1

(ii) A/tk - 1/3

(iii) Fragmentation - 1/12

(c) **Mine Field Lane (Surang Kshetra Galiara).** Yeh kisi surang chhetra ka bina surang wala ya surang rahit marg hai (unmined or demined) jo surang se ya bahar se hokar jata hai. Yeh marg ek nischit chaurai ka hota hai aur paidal sena, wahanon ya tankon ke jane ke liye is par nishan laga hota hai.

(i) **Infantry Safe Lanes (ISL).** Yeh Infantry patrols ko single file mein ane jane ke liye surang kshetra ke beech banaya jata hai. Iski chaurai 0.6 m (2 feet) hoti hai. Isko white cable aur Short Iron picket se lagaya jata hai.

(ii) **Veh Safe Lanes (VSL).** Single file mein garion aur tankon ki harkat ke liye surang ke beech mein rasta. Amuman 6 m (20 feet) ka hota hai. yadi ground sandy ho ya jyada tadat mein tks gujarna hai tab chaurai 12m (40 feet) ki hoti hai. Isko white tape aur Long Iron picket se mark kiya jata hai aur pickets par apani taraf LED lagai jati hai.

(d) **Mine Field Gaps (Surang Kshetra Antral).** Yah nischit chaurai wala surang kshetra hai jo am taur par 100 m se kam chaura nahin hota. Is kshetra mein koi bhi surang nahin bichai jati hai, jisse ki hamari apni senayein tactical formation (samrik formation) mein surang chetra se guzar saken.

(e) **Anti Lifting Device (Surang Marjanrodhi Yukti).** Is Yukti ka istemal isliye kiya jata hai agar dushman mine field ko breech karne ki koshish karta hai to mine uthate hi woh phat jaye aur dushman usko dar ke mare breeching karna chhor de. Surang ko detonate karne ke liye kiya jata hai jiske saath yah juri hoti hai,athwa yadi surang mein koi badha hota hai to, nazdik ki kisi anya surang ya charge ko detonate karne ke liye kiya jata hai.

**Mine Field ki Kismen**

3. Surang kshetra ki kismen nimn hain:-

(a) Protective (Bachaw surang chhetra).

(b) Defensive (Rakshatmak).

(c) Tactical (Samrik).

(d) Nuisance (Baadha).

(e) Dummy (Nakli).

4. **Protective Mine Field (Bachaw).** Ismein surangon ko avrodhon (obstacles) ke saath jorkar lay kiya jata hai, jisse ki kisi unit ki nikat se sthaniya raksha (local close protection) ki ja sake. In surangon ko unit ke LMG aur RL fire se cover karna chahiye. Defended area mein protective mine field Battalion Commander dwara site kiya jata hai aur Brigade sector mein Brigade Commander dwara site kiya jata hai. Is mine field ko lay karne ki zimmewari signal aur armoured regiment ko chhor kar sabhi ki hoti hai.

5. **Defensive Mine Field.** Inmein Formation Commander ki yojana ke anusar surangon ko bichhaya jata hai. Iska uddesh defended areas (rakshit chhetron) ya defended sectors (rakshit sectoron) ke beech penetration (antarwedhan) ko rokna hai, un hisson ki raksha karna hai, jis per paidal sena niyantran nahin kar sakti hai aur sthiti ko majboot banane ke liye bachaw surang ke age ke chetra ki raksha karna hai.In surangon ko fire dwara Battalion Support Weapons, lambe range wale anti tank weapons aur arty fire dwara cover kiya jata hai.Yah mine field engr dwara baki arms ki madad se lagaya jata hai (Signal aur Armoured regiments ko chhor kar).

6. **Tactical Mine Field.** Is mein surangon ko prakritik awrodhon ke saath bichhaya jata hai.Iska uddesh shatru ko nirdharit killing grnd ki aur le jana ya jane ke liye majboor karna hai aur raksha vyawastha ke mukhya margon per shatru ko majboor se rokna hai. Is mine field ko fire dwara cover karna mumkin nahin hota, atah aise surang chhetra mein jyada patrolling karni chahiye.Inko lay karne ke liye kafi matra mein stores aur man power ki zarurat hoti hai. Yah Engr dwara lagaya jata hai. Is mein min density 2 A/Tk mines ki honi chahiye.

7. **Nuisance Mine Field.** Is mein bichhai gayi surangon ka mukhya uddesh raksha karne ke bajay shatru ke adv ko rokna hai. Ise bottle necks,defiles aur un raston mein lagaya jata hai jo ki attacker istemal karega. Dushman ke harbours ,assy areas aur FUP mein lagaya jata hai.Inko Engr lagati hai.

8. **Dummy Mine Field.** Yah ek aisa chhetra hai,jise kisi surang ka roop diya ja sakta hai. Iska uddesh shatru ko dhoka dena hai. Metallic mines aur live mines (dhatwik surang aur sajiw surang) ka roop dene ke liye is chhetra mein metal (dhatu) ka istemal kiya ja sakta hai.Jab dushman 'mine conscious' (surang jagruk) ho jata hai tab aise mine field kafi faide mand hote hai.

**Mine ki Kismen**

9. Jin mines ko hamein am taur per mine field lagane ka mauka milega uske bare mein jankari di jayegi. Woh mines hain:-

(a) Mine Anti Personnel NMM 14.

(b) Mine Anti Personnel M 16 A 1.

(c) Mine Anti Tank ND MK I.

10. **Mine Anti Personnel NMM14 Aam Bayan**

(a) **Aam Bayan**

(i) Material - Plastic.

(ii) Type - Blast type.

(iii) Size - Ht 4cm, dia 5.5cm.

(iv) Explosive - 30 gms (tatrail)

(v) Total wt - 100gms

(vi) Safety device - U clip aur arrow mark 'S' par

(vii) Igniter principle - Diaphragm action

(viii) Fuze - Detonator M 46 (colour OG)

(ix) Shipping plug - White colour (in round)

(x) Action - 9 kg se zyada.

(xi) Packing - Ek cylinder mein 8 mines, 8 detonetor ek tin box mein 4 cylinder aur 4 arming wrench M22.

(xii) Carrying capacity - Ek 3 ton mein 6400 mine ya 200 box.

11. **Mine Anti Pers M-16 A1**

(a) **Aam Bayan**

(i) Material - Cast iron.

(ii) Type - Fragmentation (shiping plug ke saath 16 cm).

(iii) Size - Ht with plug 14 cms aur fuze ke saath 20 cms, Dia 10 cm.

(iv) Explosive - 500 gm.

(v) Total wt - 3.6 kg

(vi) Safety device - Safety locking pin, Interlocking pin aur positive safety pin (teenon pinon ka laga hona).

(vii) Igniter principal - Spring operated pin plate withdrawl.

(viii) Fuze - Fuze combination M-605.

(ix) Killing area - Up to 32 m all around.

(x) Danger area - Up to 180 m all around.

(xi) Action - 1.5 kg or more pull and 3.5 kg pressure/ wt.

(xii) Packing - Ek lakdi ke box mein 4 mine, 4 fuze, 4 trip wire spool aur 1 arming wrench M-25. Total wt 20.4 kg.

(xiii) Lorry load - Ek 3 ton mein 560 mines ya 140 boxes.

12. **Mine Anti Tank ND Mk I**

(a) **Aam Bayan**

(i) Material - Plastic

(ii) Size - Dia 28 cm,ht 10 cm crown ke saath ht 18 cm.

(iii) Explosive - 6.3 kg

(iv) Total wt - 7.3 kg

(v) Safety device - Safety pin aur sear washer control.

(vi) Igniter principal - Shear washer ka tutna.

(vii) Packing - Ek box mein 5 mine aur 3 fuze.

(viii) Total wt - 72 kg.

(ix) Lorry load - Ek 3 ton mein 180 mine ya 30 boxes.

(x) Action - Crown ke upar 270 kg aur prong par 135 kg dabav.

13. **Mine field laying party ki nafri is prakar se hai:-**

(a) Setting Out Party : 1 Offr aur 03 OR.

(b) Marking Party : 01 NCO aur 05 OR.

(c) Carrying Party (2) : 01 NCO aur 02 OR.

(d) Anti tk Party (2) : 01 NCO aur 06 OR.

(e) Anti Pers Party (2) : 01 NCO aur 05 OR.

(f) TOTAL : 1 OFFR,07 NCO aur 34 OR.

**Note:-** Navigation party has 01 JCO as commander and 01 OR per strip.

14. Jaise kih ap sabhi ko yah maloom ho gaya hai kih apne defence ke age lagane wale mine Field ko lagane ki zimewari Infantry unit ki hoti hai aur mine field ko uthane yani ke breech karne ki zimewari bhi usi Unit ki hoti hai is liye Infantry ke har jawan aur audhedar ko mine aur mine field ke bare mein gahrai se jankari hona bahut hi zaruri hai. Taaki woh apni aur apane saathiyon ki jan bacha saken. Iske ilawa hamle ke dauran dushman ke mine field ke bich mein rasta bana kar kamyabi haasil kar sake.

**CHAPTER - 40**

**BASIC DEMOLITION SET AUR ASSAULT CHARGES**

**Military Engineering Vol-IV Demolition 1977**

1. **Basic demolition set se waqfiat.**

(a) Demolition ki chain ko niminlikhit darjon mein baanta ja sakta hai :-

(i) Aag utpann karne ke liye safety matches bijli ka current.

(ii) Aag ko le jane ke liye safety fuze.

(iii) Aag ke detonation mein badli karne ke liye det No 27/33.

(iv) Detonation ki lehar ko le jane ke liye cordex.

(v) Detonation ki lehar ko badhane ke liye GC primer.

(vi) Main charge (HE) PEK/GC Slab aur TNT slab.

(b) **Explosive Aur Accessories.** Fauj mein niminlikhit prakar ke explosive aur accessories istemal kiye jate hain.

(i) **GC/TNT Demolition slabs.**

(aa) Size - 12 x 8 x 4 cm aur ek surakh primer ke liye.

(ab) Colour - brownish yellow.

(ac) Weight - 450 gm.

(ad) Packing - 20 slabs ek tin box mein aate hain.

(ii) **PEK-1 (Plastic Explosive Kirkee-1).**

(aa) Size - 10 cm lambai x 4 cm diametre.

(ab) Colour - yellow.

(ac) Weight - 100 gm.

(ad) Packing - 25 kg ek card box mein aate hain.

(c) **Safety Fuze No 11 MK II (SF).**

(i) Description - Kala fuze aur gun powder kendriya bhag mein.

(ii) Packing - 25 m ek bandal mein aata hai.

(iii) Rate of burning - 60 cm per mintue +/- 6 section ki raftar se jalta hai. Istemal karne se pahle hamesha iska rate of burning check karna chahiye.

(d) **Detonator No 27.**

(i) Description - 4.5 cm lamba aur 6.6 mm diametre ka ek metal tube hai jiska ek kinara sealed hai aur dusra khula hai.

(ii) Packing - 25 ek double decker tin mein ek rectifire ke saath aata hain.

(iii) Rate of detonation is instantaneous.

(e) **Primer.**

(i) Description - 32 mm lamba cylinderical shape ke high explosive jis mein detonator ke liye surakh hai.

(ii) Weight - 28 gm .

(iii) Packing - 10 ek cylinderical card ke tube mein.

(f) **Cordex/Detonating Cord.**

(i) Description - White/cream/chocolate colour ka plastic cover cord par chadha hota hai.

(ii) Packing - 150 ms lambai ka sorool par lapeta hota hai. (iii) Rate of detonation - 6000 se 8000 mts per section.

(g) **Matches Fuze.** Safety fuze ko aag dene ke kaam aata hai jisse flame paida nahi hota hai balki chingari utpann hoti hai jo position chhupane mein sahyogi hoti hai.

2. **Assault Charges ke bare main Jankari.**

(a) **Assault charges mein niminlikhit khubian honi chahiye.**

(i) Uthane mein asan.

(ii) Agar-alag alag purzon mein uthana pare to jorne mein asan.

(iii) Handle karne mein surakshit ho.

(iv) Banawat mein majboot ho.

(v) Target par lagana asan ho.

(vi) Firing ka tarika bharose mand aur sada ho. Isse hamesha duplicate hona chahiye.

(b) **Assault charges niminlikhit prakar ke hote hain** :-

(i) Bane banaye charges - Bangalore Tarpedoes.

(ii) Improvised charges.

(aa) Pole charges.

(ab) Rammer charges.

(ac) Molotov cock tail.

(ad) Bangalore Tarpedoes.

(c) **Bangalore Tarpedoes.** Yeh wire obstacles mein gap banane ke kaam aata hai. Iski khasusiat niminlikhit hai:-

(i) 3.8 cm diametre pipe jis mein HE bhara jata hai, ka bana hota hai.

(ii) Do sizon mein aata hai. 1.8 m aur 3.0 m lambai jiska wazan 5.9 kg aur 9.65 kg hota hai.

(iii) Iske ek kinare par male end aur dusre kinare par female end hota hai, jinko jor kar 30 m tak lambai bana sakte hain.

(iv) Isse wire obstacles mein 3 se 4.5 m tak ka gap banta hai.

(v) Isse zamin se 45 cm upar obstacles ki picket par rakha jaye aur obstacles ke kinaron se 30 cm bahar nikla hua hona chahiye.

(vi) Iska safety distance 1000 m side par 200 m iske kinaron se dur ka hota hai.

(d) **Pole Charge.** Yeh ek pressure charge hai jo bunker pill box aur diwar mein surakh banane ke kaam aata hai.

* 1. **Banane ke liye Saman.**

(aa) 5' se 10' lamba lakdi ka pole.

(ab) Lakdi ka ek box.

(ac) 4 se 10 kg tak ka barud.

(ad) No 27 detonator.

(ae) Cordex.

(af) Safety fuze.

(ag) Matches safety.

(ii) **Istemal ka Tarika.** Lakdi ke 5' se 10' lambe tukde ke ek sire par lakdi ka ek box bandh diya jata hai. Is box mein 4 se 10 kg tak barud (PEK, GC Slab) daal diya jata hai. Jis mein primer aur detonator No 27 bhi joda jata hai. aag dene ke liye safety fuze ko safety matches se ya percussion ignitor raggar kar diya jata hai. Is ko bunker ki chhat ya diwar par lagakar barud ko udaya jata hai.

(e) **Rammer Charges.** Yeh ek concussion charge hai jo pill box, dug out aur aise strong point ko brabad karne mein madad deta hai.

(i) **Banane ke liye saman.**

* + 1. 5' se 10' lamba lakdi ka pole.

(ab) 1.5 se 2.5 kg tak barud (PEK-1).

(ac) Initiation ka saman pole charge jaise hi hota hai.

(ii) **Istemal ka Tarika.** 5' se 10' lamba lakdi ke ek sire par 1.5 se 2.5 kg barud plastic ki sahayata se bandh karke banaya jata hai. isse dushman ke morche aur bunkeron ke loop hole mein se ander daal kar udaya jata hai.

(f) **Molotov Cocktail.** Yeh covered defensive positions , petrol dumps, stores aur MT vehs ko aag laga kar brabad karne ke kaam aata hai.

(i) **Banane ke liye Saman.**

(aa) Ek beer ka bottle ya usi size ki khali bottle .

(ab) Bottle mein teen hisse patrol.

(ac) Bottle mein ek hissa engine oil.

(ad) Baans ka pole zarurat shuda lambai ka.

(ae) Bottle ke ird gird cordex ka clove hitch. Jis ke do kinare pole ke 2/3 lambai tak niche latkta ho.

(af) Initiation ka saman pole charges jaisa hota hai.

(ii) **Istemal ka Tarika.** Ek bottle mein teen hisse petrol aur ek hissa engine oil dal kar bans ke pole ke saath bandh diya jata hai. Isko udane ke liye bottle ke ird gird cordex bandh kar pole charge ki tarah percussion ignitor aur No 27 detonator se udaya jata hai. Yeh dushman ka petrol ammunition aur supply dump ko aag lagane ke liye istemal kar sakte hain.

(g) **Improvised Bangalore Tarpedoes.** Yeh ek jawan field mein uplabadh saman ka istemal karke khud bana sakta hai. Yeh niche likhe sadhano se ban sakta hai. Isko initiate karne ke liye cordex primer detonator No 27 aur safety fuze jaruri hai.

* + 1. Steel pipe mein barud bharkar jis mein se detonating cord bhi guzarta ho.
    2. Lambe lohe ke do pickton ke beech barud bhar kar unhe jod diya jaye.
    3. Bamboo pole jo 5 cm se 8 cm ka diametre ho use do bhagon mein kat kar barud bhar kar jor do.
    4. Canvas ki pipe ya hessian cloth se sila sleeve mein barood bhar kar.

3. Jawano ko basic demolition sets aur assault chargon ke bare mein achhi tarah se jankari honi chahiye jisse woh mauqa parne par inhe bana kar istemal karke dushman ke field defence ko asani se barbad kar saken.

**CHAPTER - 41**

**MINE ANTI PERSONNEL M-18, DIRECTIONAL**

**FRAGMENTATION (CLAY MORE MINE)**

1. Claymore Mine ki Visheshtayen, technical data aur accessories se jankari.

(a) **Technical data.**

* + 1. Nomenclature - Mine Anti Pers M-18,

Directional fragmentation.

* + 1. Material - Molded case fibre glass plastic.
    2. Colour - OG.
    3. Length - 22cm.
    4. Height - 13cm.
    5. Thickness - 5cm.
    6. Wazan - 1.5 kg.
    7. Explosive ka wazan - 700gm.
    8. Fuze - M-6 Detonator.
    9. Killing area - 50 m.
    10. Casualty - 100m.
    11. Danger area - 250 m.
    12. Back blast - 16 m.
    13. Packing - 1 Box mein 06 Mine.
    14. Box ka wazan - 9.5 kg.
    15. Ek 1x3 Ton load - 850 Mine.

(b) **Accessories.**

(i) Firing device M 57 - Electric current paida karne ke liye.

(ii) Firing cable 30 mtr - Current ko le jane ke liye.

(iii) Test set M-40 - Device M-57 ko check karne ke liye. (iv) Detonator M-6 - Mine ko chalane ke liye.

(c) **Asar.** Mine chalne par 700 steel ball 2 mtr ki unchai mein aur 90 degree ke angle mein failte hain.

2. **Aiming, Arming, Direct Role Fire aur Disarm.**

(a) **Arming.** Claymore Mine ko is prakar se arm kiya jata hai :-

(i) Mine ko rakhne ki jagha chuno.

(ii) Leg kholkar zamin mein lagao.

(iii) Arrow mark dushman ki taraf karo.

(iv) Mine ka pip sight ko samne target ki taraf set karo.

(v) Set hone ke bad Mine ke leg ko achhi tarah zamin mein dabao aur dubara aim ko check karo.

(b) **Arming, Direct Role fire.**

(i) Mine aur firing point k beech cable bichhao.

(ii) Mine ke kisi ek leg ke saath cable ko bandho aur camouflage karo.

(iii) Kisi ek detonator way mein detonator dalo aur shipping plug ko laga do.

(c) **Fire karna.**

(i) Fire karne se pahle M-57 firing device ka safety clip upar karo.

(ii) Firing cable ko firing device ke saath joro.

(iii) Safety clip ko fire par karo aur handle ko jor se dabao.

3. **Arm Indirect Role, Neuteralize aur Disarm Karna.**

(a) **Arming Indirect role.**

(i) Mine ko target par aim karo aur set karo.

(ii) Switch No-4 pull MK-I ka istemal karte hue trip wire bandho.

(iii) Cordex ka tukra lekar detonator No- 27 per bandho aur ek dusara No-27 detonator ko snot ke saath lagao, aur donon ko winding kar do.

(iv) Ek dusra cordex ko lekar uske sire par Detonator No-27 ko bandho aur mine ke fuze way mein fit kar do.

(v) Switch No-4 pull MK-I ka safety pin ko nikalkar donon cordex ko aapas mein winding kar do.

(b) Neutralize Switch No-4 aur pull MK-I mein safety pin lagao.

(c) **Disarm karna.**

(i) Mine aur switch No-4 ke bich ka cordex khol do aur alag-alag karo.

(ii) Switch mein safety pin lagao aur detonator alag karo.

(iii) Mine se detonator alag karo.

(iv) Mine ko saaf karen aur pack karein.

(d) **Employment / Istemal.**

(i) Defence ke age/ EW ka kam karne ke liye.

(ii) Tang ghaati mein.

(iii) Kisi mor par.

(iv) Ambush mein.

(v) Dushman ke mumkin aane wale raste par.

4. Agar har jawan Claymore Mine ka istemal karne ke tariqe ke bare mein achhi tarah se jankari rakhta ho to kisi ambush mein ya phir dushman ke aane ke tang raste aur apna defence ke age isko lagakar apni suraksha rakhte hue dushman ko nuksan pahuncha sakte hai.

**CHAPTER – 42**

**BOOBY TRAPS AUR IEDS**

**Field Engr Pam No-07 Booby Traps (Hindi) 1971**

**Booby Traps**

1. **Paribhasha** Chherne aur chhune se phatne wale phande ko booby troops kahte hain.

2. **Booby traps ke usul.**

(a) Chhupaav - Concealment.

(b) Tang Jagah - Congested.

(c) Utsukta – Curiosity.

(d) Vibhinta - Variety.

3. **Chalane ka tarika.** Yah am taur par dabav/khinchao ya dabav hatne se aur muqarar kiye hue samay ke anusar chalte hain. Aj kal aise traps ate hain jo garion ki awaz ya nazdik ane se magnetic actication se chal jate hain. Isko dur se bhi remote control ke jariye chalaya ja sakta hai.

4. **Switch ke Prakar.** Swiktch panch parkar ke hote hain.

(a) Switch No IV pull Mk I.

(b) Switch No V pressure Mk I.

(c) Switch No VI release Mk I.

(d) Switch No 9L delay Mk I.

(e) Switch No 10 time pencil delay Mk 2/1.

5. Switch No IV pull Mk I switch 2.7 Kg ya jyada khichav ane se chal jata hai. Is ko makan ki khirki, darwaje, chair, almirah ya dushman ke ane wali jagah par istemal kiya jata hai.

6. **Pratikriya.** U shakal clip se jora hua trip wire par 2.7 kg ya isse jyada khinchav parne par clip bahar nikal jayega aur isse striker age chala jayega.

7. **Switch ko Arm Karna.**

(a) U shakal wale clip ko trip wire ke saath joro.

(b) Trip wire ko itna khincho ki safety pin body ki jhiri ke madhya bhag tak aa jaye.

(c) Safety pin ko bahar nikalo.

8. **Switch ko Beasar Karna.** Safety pin ke surakh mein faltu safety pin nail ya majboot tar ka tukra dalo trip wire ko kat do.

9. **Switch No 5 Pressure Mk I.** Extension rod par 22 kg aur hinge per 9.5 kg ka dabav ane se chalta hai railway line ke saath ya dabav ane wali jagah par rakhte hain.

10. **Switch No 6 Release Mk I.** 3.2 kg ka dabav hatne se chalta hai. Ise lalach wali chizon ke niche rakhte hain jaise radio, ghari ityadi.

11. **Switch No 9 delay Mk I.** Yeh switch 6 (six) parkar ke hote hain. 12 hrs, 24 hrs, 3 days, 7 days, 14 days aur 28 days.

12. **Switch No 10 Time Pencil Mk 2/1 Delay.** Copper ki taar par teezab parne se phat jata hai. Iski madad se ham niche likhe samay ke anusar antar dekhte hue istemal kar sakte hain:-

(a) Kala - 10 minutes

(b) Safed - 2 hrs

(c) Pila - 12 se 14 hrs

(d) Lal - 30 min

(e) Hara - 5 hrs

(f) Nila - 25 se 30 hrs

13. Standard mechanism ke alawa kai prakar ke visphotak aur bina visphotak ke sadhan hain jinse sena mein booby traps ka kam liya jata hai. Inko istemal karke aap ugrawadion aur dushman ke khilaf karwai kar sakte hain. Ismen kuch isupportrakar se hain:-

(a) Trip Flare.

(b) Hand Grenade.

(c) Anti Tank aur Anti Pers Mines.

14. **Fuze ke parkar.**

(a) Safety fuze. 1 min mein 60 section.

(b) Yellow fuze. 1 section mein 30 m .

**Improvised Explosive Devices (IEDs)**

15. **Aam Bayan.** Gair kanooni dhang se hathya, torphor, sampatti ko nukshan pahunchana, chot pahunchana aur janmal ka nukshan pahuchane ke liye kam se kam samay, kam se kam kharche mein adhik se adhik nukshan pahuchane ke liye apni soojh boojh se banaye gaye devices ko IED kahte hain.

16. **IEDs ke Mukhya Hisse.** IEDs ka char mukhya bhag hain:-

Explosive

Container

Mechanism Power Resources

* 1. Barood (explosive).
  2. Detonator.
  3. Mechanism.
  4. Power Resources.

17. **Barood ki Kismen.**

(a) **Service Explosive**

* + 1. Low explosive - Gun powder, Cordite.
    2. High explosive - PEK, TNT, GC Slab, Primer.

(b) **Commercial Explosive**

(i) FLSL.

(ii) Liquid Oxygen Explosive.

(c) Improvised explosive - Mediation, chemical, Oil.

18. **Detonator ki Kismen.**

(a) **Service detonator.**

(i) Detonator No 27 - Std

(ii) Detonator No 33 (electric) - Std

(b) **Improvised detonator.**

(i) Detonator thermal (improvised).

(ii) Detonator chemical (improvised).

(iii) Detonator friction (improvised).

(iv) Detonator propellant (improvised).

(c) **Commercial detonator.** Detonator no 6,7,8.

19. **IEDs ke prakar.** IEDs do prakar ke hote hain:-

(a) **Open Bomb.** Jab bomb ke mukhya char bhagon mein se koi ek bhag dikhai de to use open bomb kahte hain.

(b) **Closed Bomb.** Jab bomb ke mukhya char bhagon mein koi bhi bhag bahar se nazar na aye to use closed bomb kahte hain.

20. **Aam Istemal Kiya Jane Wale IEDs.**

(a) Book bomb.

(b) Ghee tin bomb.

(c) Mithai ka dibba bomb.

(d) Door mat bomb.

(e) Tiffin carrier bomb.

(f) Guldasta bomb.

(g) Pen stand bomb.

(h) Pipe bomb.

(j) Door togal bolt bomb.

(k) Improvised shaped bomb.

(l) Hath Gola

(m) Bottle bomb.

(n) Letter bomb.

(o) Improvise clay-more bomb.

21. **Booby Traps aur IEDs ko Dhundna aur nikalna.**

(a) Grapnel ki madad se.

(b) Usi jagah par barood lagakar barbad karna.

(c) Machanism neutralised karke hatana.

**IED ki jagaha aur dhyan mein rakhne wali baten.**

22. **IED ki jagah**:-

(a) Kacchi sadak

(b) Pul, culvert aur puliya.

(c) Ubad khabad raste .

(d) Tang raste (Defile)

(e) Fauj ke aane jane ke aam raste.

(f) Sadak/ raston ke mor.

(g) Sadak ki diwaren.

(h) Chourahe/raod junction.

(j) Ped khada/ Kata huwa.

(k) Lawaris saman.

(l) Lalach wali chijein.

(m) Akarshan wali chinjen.

(n) Daily Use wale saman.

(o) Public Place.

(p) Darwaje aur khidkiyan.

(q) Mare hue militant.

23. **Dhyan mein rakhne wali batein:-**

(a) Kacche raste/sadak ka istemal search ke bad

(b) Har wastu ko sakiya nigah se dekhein.

(c) Lalach na karein.

(d) IED ko ek hi na samjhein.

(e) IED se faltu ched chad na karein.

(f) IED ko usi jagah per barbad karein.

(g) IED ko harkat grapnel se dein.

(h) Engr rep/ trained pers ka istemal karein.

(j) Ghabrahat failne se ronkein.

(k) Bhagdad na manchayan.

(l) Bheed ikatha na hone dein.

(m) Jokhim na uthayen.

(n) Koi vikalp na hone per hath ka istemal karein.

24. Booby traps aur IEDs lagane aur hatane ki kamyabi is baat par nirbhar karti hai ki apne abhi tak kitni mahirta haasil ki hai. Traps aur IEDs bhin-bhin prakar ke hote hain. Islie us ko hi task diya jaye jo is kam mein mahir ho aur iske sabhi usul janta ho. Aap ko larai ke dauran yeh task pura karne ka mauka mile ya na mile parantu CI operations ke dauran iski zarurat rahti hai. Section commander hone ke nate aap sab ko is kabil hona chahiye ki aap bhi is task ko pura kar saken.

**CHAPTER - 43**

**BASIC SOLDIER DOCUMENTATION : IAFF - 958 AUR AB64**

## AO Service documents

**Documentation ke Bare Mein Jankari**

1. Jo documentation peace ke dauran kiya jata hai wahi larai ke dauran bhi kiya jata hai lekin larai ke dauran kuch tabdili ki jati hai taaki unit yudh ke dauran apna jangee soch vichar aasani se kar sake.

(a) **Unit Mein Maintain Kiya Jane Wale Document.** Unit ke andar nimnlikhit document maintain kiye jate hain.

(i) Pay Book (AB 64).

(ii) Service aur casuality form (IAFF 958).

(iii) Conduct sheet (IAFF 3013).

(iv) Primary medical examination report (AFMSF - 2A).

(b) **Record Mein Maint Kiye jane wala Document.** Har regiment ka record office nimnlikhit documents maintain karta hai.

(i) Enrolement form (IAFA-1162).

(ii) Sheet roll (IAFK - 1155).

(iii) Verification Roll (IAFK- 1152).

(c) **Field mein Documentation System.** Unit jab peace se fd mein jati hai to nimnlikhit karhwai ki jati hai.

(i) Unit individual ka pay book aur conduct sheet field mein saath lekar jati hai.

(ii) Unit ka Pt II order record office se publish kiye jata hai.

(iii) Nimnlkikhit documents record mein bhej diye jate hain aur record mein maintain kiye jate hain:-

(aa) IAFF - 958.

(ab) Primary medical examination report (AFMSF-2A).

(ac) ACR ki ek copy.

2. Family allotment ki nominal roll banakar record mein bhej deta hai. Ek clerk unit se record mein post kar diya jata hai jisse O2E clerk kahte hain aur woh unit ka documentation karta hai. Unit aisi jagah par ho jahan par record maintain kiya ja sakta hai to Army Commander ka sanction lekar woh sabhi documentss field mein maintain karte hain.

**Documentation Ki Zimmewari**

3. **Indl ki zimmewari.** Ek indl ki zimmewari is prakar se hai :-

* 1. Bharti hote samay apne bare mein aur apni family ke bare mein sahi aur puri khabar de taaki uske record mein bhari ja sake.
  2. Uske bad jo bhi tabdili hoti hai use turant bataye taaki Pt II order publish kiya ja sake.
  3. Apne 958 ke entries ko har mahine dekhna taaki yeh pata laga saken ki har casualty usmein hai ya nahin. Agar usmein koi galti hai to usko theek karwayein.

4. **Unit ki zimmwari.**

(a) Har individual ke documents hamesha taiyar aur up to date rakhein.

(b) Har casualty ka Pt II order publish karein.

(c) Koi bhi battle casualty/physical case hoti hai to Army order ke mutabik report karein.

(d) Yakin karein ki jo bhi record office observation hai usko jaldhi se jaldhi thik karen.

(e) Unit ke nominal roll aur seniority roll maintant karein.

5. **Record Office ki Zimmewari.**

(a) Individual ke sabhi documents ko maintain karna aur uski suraksha ki zimmewari hai.

(b) Jo bhi Part II order publish kiya hota hai, uski entry sheet roll mein karna.

(c) Unit se publish kiya gaya Part II order ki jaanch karne ki woh theek hai ya nahi.

(d) Indl ke promotion, Appt, posting, course, mustering, family allotment, awards aur medals ka record maint karna.

(e) Pension ke documents jachna aur pension register maintain karna.

**IAFF-958 aur AB - 64 ki Jankari**

6. **IAFF- 958.**

(a) IAFF- 958 JCOs aur ORs ka record of service hai jo kih unit mein maintain kiya jata hai. Iske andar jho bhi entry ki jati hai woh sheet roll ki entry aur unit mein entry kiya jata hai woh sheet roll ki entry aur unit Pt I order mein publish ki gaye casualty se milni chahiye. IAFF 958 har individual ke liye maintain kiya jata hai aur Government se issue hota hain. IAFF 958 ke andar nimnlikhit casualty ki entry ki jati hai.

(b) Pahle page par individual ka naam, pata, pita ka naam dharam, jati, matrabhasa, bharti sambandhit biyora pahichan ke chinh verification aur attestation ke bare mein entry ki jati hai.

(c) Dusre aur teesre page par niyukti ki shartein bhari jati hai.

(d) No 4, 5 aur 6 page par education aur technical qualification ki entry ki jati hai.

(e) Page No 6 par technical qualification ke niche promotion cadre aur dusre annya cadres aur courses ki entry ki jati hai.

(f) Page No 7 par appointments, promotion aur instructional appointment ki casuality bhari jati hai.

(g) Page No 8 par posting aur transfer aur page No 9 par AWL aur hospital admissiondischarge ki casualty bhari jati hai.

(h) Page No 10 par medical catogery aur chot lagne ka byora bhara jata hai.

(j) Page No 11 par larai/ samundra par sena ki entry bhari jati hai.

(k) Page No 12 par medal, star aur decoration ki entry hoti hai saath hi page No 13 aur 14 par leave record bhare jate hain.

(l) 15, 16 aur 17 No page par sambandh namawali aur warishon ke naam bhare jate hain iske alawa nikatam sambandhi aur pension ke warish ke bare mein detail bhari jati hai.

(m) Ankhir mein page 18 aur 19 mein vividh ghatnaon jaise ki discharge, missing, Prisner of War, maut ho jane ya annya koi aur casualty bhari jati hai.

(n) Yeh nihiyat zaroori hai ki ek indl apne 958 ke andar ki entry har mahine check kare aur usmen sign kare ki uski entry sab ho chuki hain aur theek hain, yeh document pension discharge aur maut ho jane par bahut bahumuliya sabit hota hai.

7. **AB - 64 Sainik ki Viyaktigat Pushtika.**  AB- 64 mein 64 page hote hain aur yeh do bhagon mein hoti hai Bhag I ke andar sanik ki sewa aur personal details hoti hain Bhag II ke andar vetan aur bharti ki details hoti hai. Is pustak ki rakh rakhaw ki zimmuwari khud ek sanik ki hoti hai agar yeh pustak gum ho jaye to iski turant report apne se upar wale commander ko deni chahiye pustak ke andar sirf entry ek adhikari karega sanik sirf bhag No II mein sign karega aur koi entry nahin karega.

8. AB 64 ke pahle page par sainik ki personal detail hoti hai jaise ki naam, dharam, namakan ki tarikh, janmtithi aur ghar ka pura pata dusre page par NOK ka viyara pahichan chinh, pay book ka ser No aur milne ki tarikh iske alawa indl ka sign , pichli pay book ka bayan aur pay book issue ki auth Pt II order ankhir mein jo adhikari pay book issue auth ka Pt II order, akhir mein pay book issu ki authority ka Part II order aur sign.

9. **AB -64 Bhag I.** Is bhag ke andar nimnlikhit details ki entry ki jati thin. Ab iska prayog khatam ho gaya hai aur salary seedhe jawaan ke bank account mein aa jaati hai (Soldiers service aur personal details) :-

(a) Unit jismen seva ki.

(b) Promotion.

(c) Visesh appt.

(d) Record of movement.

(e) Edn qualification aur MR.

(f) Wpn trg aur range classification.

(g) Trg aur promotion aur cadre ka natiza.

(h) Army courses.

(j) Medal alankaran.

(k) Chutti ka record.

(l) Medical record aur tika entries, Medical category record, Hospital admission aur discharge report aur daton ka upchar.

10. **Is bhag mein nimnlikhit entry ki jati thin.**

(a) Pay aur bhatte jis date se lagu hain aur kitna pay milta hai jaise ki basic pay, appt pay, GS pay, DA, CILQ, CEA etc.

(b) Iske alawa aapki katauti kitni hai jaise ki AFPP fund PLI family allotment aur anya katautian.

(c) Sena samaniya bima ki yojana mein shaamil hone ki date aur timahi mein katne wali kisht.

(d) Payment (Vetan ka Byora). Iske andar monthly pay ki entry nili ink mein ki jayegi baki entry jaise jurwana, vetan ki katoti, hospital ki cutting lal ink mein ki jani chahiye.

(e) Last page par hathiyar ki detail hoti hai.

(f) Jab ek AB -64 bhar jati hai to ek sanik ko dusri pay book de di jati hai jiska ki Pt II order kiya jata hain.

11. Aam taur par yeh dekha gaya hai ki jab ek sainik apni casualty ka Pt II order sahi time par nahin karwata hai ya uski entry ko check nahin karta hai to woh pension jate samay kafi mushkilat mein pad sakta hai saath hi usko pension ka benifit milna hai woh bhi nahin mil pata hai. Agar uski akashmat maut ho jati hai to uske NOK ko uska benifit milne mein kafi mushkilat pesh ati hai.

**CHAPTER - 44**

**RATION : AUTHORISATION,PROCUREMENT AND ISSUE**

**Adm in War Vol II – 1985**

**Parichay**

1. Unit admministration ek unit ki rozmara karyawahi ka ek aisa pehlu hai jise nazarandaz bilkul nahi kiya ja sakta kyonki paltan chahe peace mein ho ya field mein jawan apna task tabhi achi tarah se poora kar sakta hai jab uska administration acha ho chahe woh uska documentation ho, clothing issue ho ya langar mein khane ka standard.
2. Isliye unit administration ka shayad sabse zaroori pehlu ‘jawan ka khana pina’ jiska acha hone ka seedha asar woh chahe field ya peace ho unit ki karyawahi par padta hai.Unit administration ke is pehlu mein unit SQM/JQM ki mahatvapurna bhumika hai aur yeh task hum me se kisi bhi ohdedar ko mil sakta hai.

**Ration ke Prakar aur Demand Karne ka Tariqa**

1. Is prakar hai :-
   1. Survival Ration.
   2. Composite Ration.
   3. **Field Service Ration.**

* + 1. Dry ration – 15 dinon mein ek baar.
    2. Fresh - Saptah mein 2/3 baar.
    3. Fresh Milk – Rozana do ya ek baar(mil farm ki loc par depend karta

hai)

1. Ration ki demand ek indent par bhari jaati hai jo ki unit Quartermasterki jimmewari hai. Ration demand karte hue nimn baton ka dhyan mein rakhna jaroori hai:-
   1. Unit ki parade state ke hisaab se feeding str calculate ki jaati hai aur indent mein bhari jaati hai.
   2. Chutti ya posting se aane/jaane walon ki sankhya ko dhyan mein rakhna jaroori hai.
   3. Indent ek pehle se tay tithi par jama hota hai.
   4. Dry ration ki demand stock mein rakhe hue ration ko dhyan mein rakh kar karni chahiye.
   5. Ration ki demand ki tithi indent par likhi honi chahiye.
2. **Indents ke Prakar.**
   1. IAFZ – 2098(DRY RATION).
   2. IAFS – 1555(FRESH RATION).
   3. IAFD– 44 (MILK).
3. **Dry Ration.**
   1. IAFZ -2098 ki paanch pratiyan taiyaar ki jaati hain aur chaar supply depot mein ration draw karne se 15 din pahle bheji jati hain. Collection date se pehle hi unit ko IAFZ-2098 ki original copy wapas mil jaati hai. Sup depot indent mein kitni quantity sanction hui hai aur unit ko kya packing material laana hai uska byora deti hai.
   2. Suppply depot jane se pehle unit QuartermasterIAFZ - 2098 par sign karta hai. Iske baad uska rep (SQM/JQM) jarurat shuda packing material aur working party ko ikattha karke bataye hue din aur time par supply depot pahunch jata hai.
   3. Unit SQM/JQM packing material ko packing mtrl group ke hawale karta hai aur uska receipt leta hai. Agar Packing material mein kami hai to use indent par record kiya jata hai.
   4. Iske baad woh Receipt & Despatch group(R & D) ko report karta hai.
   5. Items lene se pehle woh niche likhi baton ka dhyan rakhta hai :-
      1. Quantity sahi hai aur voucher ke mutabik hai.
      2. Saman achhi condition mein hai.
      3. Tinned khane par date of expiry bhi check karega.
4. **Fresh Ration.**
   1. Unit rep IAFS - 1555 ki acknowledgement foils par receipt karega aur fresh draw karega. Iske saath hi woh 'despatch foil' bhi lega jiska unit mein record rakha jayega.
   2. Woh ration ki quality aur qty sahi hai uski tasalii karega.
   3. Har mahine ke aakhir mein sup depot unit ko voucher sankhya IAFZ - 2096 ki do pratilipiyan bhejega jismein fresh ki poore mahine ki qty ka byora diya jayega.
   4. Unit Quartermaster, IAFS - 1555 doocument ko check karega aur uski ek copy Suppply Depot ko wapas bhej dega.
   5. Underdrawl/Overdrawl hone par use agle issue mein adjust kiya jayega.

**Issue**

1. Comapnies ko ration issue karte samay niche likhi baaton ko dhyan mein rakhen:-
   1. Dry ration ka issue hafte mein ek baari kiya ja sakta hai. (b) Fresh jyadatar hafte mein 2/3 baar issue kiya jata hai.
   2. Roz ke issue ka record IAFS - 1673 ration aur forage stores acct mein maintain kiya jata hai.
   3. Comapnies apni atrength ka record daily maint karengi.Ration strength mein change hone par use Part I order mein reflect kiya jayega.

* 1. Har mahine "ration entitlement account" IAFZ - 3033 par maint kiya jayega jismein company ke har jawan mahine ke jitne din present tha woh likha jayega.

1. Unit ke peace tenure ke dauran unit ke kai Jawanon,JCO's aur officers ki families unke saath station mein rehti hain jinko ration issue kiya jata hai. Unko ration issue karte hue dhyan mein rakhne waali baatein :
   1. Ration ki authorisation wahi rehti hai, yaani free ration sirf jawan ko authorisation hai naa ki uski family ko.
   2. Jyadatar units mein ek alag se register maintain kiya jata hai jisme sabhi family members ke poore mahine ki ration issue ki details bhari jaati hain. (c) Families ki sahuliyat ke liye unit mein SQM/JQM ya fir Company Quarter master apni str mein jawan/JCO/Officer families ka ration draw karte hain aur use issue kar dete hain.
2. Ration ki is aapurti aur issue mein jaahir hai ke ration mahine ke aakhire mein bach jata hai ya surplus ho jata hai. Surplus ration ki accounting bhi bahut zaroori hai aur niche likhe tarike se uski accounting kari jaati hai.
   1. Surplus ration charge mein liya jata hai aur companyQuartermasterapni agli demand/ drawl usi hisaab se kam karta hai.
   2. Unit ke agle 1 - 2 issue mein surplus ration ko regularise kar diya jata hai.
   3. Surplus ration ki jimmewari unit SQM / JQM ya CompanyQuartermasterki hoti hai isliye aisi stithi hone par unit Quartermasterko ya Companycommander ko soochit karna jaroori hai.
3. Unit administration mein ration ki Supply Depot se maang uski apoorti aur uska companies ko issue ek routine task hai par iski ahmiyat kisi aur task se kam nahi hai.Aap mein se kai ohdedar unit ya company mein SQM/JQM/Quartermasterki duties karenge isliye yeh jaroori ho jata hai ki hame is poori karyawahi ka sahi tariqa pata ho taki hum apni unit aur comapnies ka administration sahi tarah se chala saken.

**CHAPTER - 45**

**MAINTENANCE OF SMALL ARMS DOCUMENTS**

**Parichay**

1. Ek Infantry Battalion ko kisi bhi Ops mein kamyabi haasil karne ke liye saath hi apne task, taining aura administration ko bakhubi nibhane ke liye bharpur matra mein weapon, equipment aur control stores auth kiye gaye hai. In sabhi weapon aur equipment ka hamen samay samay par sahi rakh rakhav, maintenance, accounting aur dekhbhal ati avshayak hai taki samay ane par in sabhi equipment ka bakhubi istemal ho sake.
2. **Kote Procedure.** Sabhi Battalion mein kote procedure ka palan

weaponequipment ki safety, security aur maintenance ke liye sakhti se kiya jata hai. Keyappointments ki zimmewari hai kih SOP ke tahat in sabhi procedure ko ensure karen:-

* 1. Sabhi weaponBattalion ke ledger charge par hone chahiye aur unke number, company aur Body No enter kiye hone chahiye.
  2. Sabhi weapon ka Index card aur weapon history sheet prepare hona chahiye. Individual ke particulars include hona chahiye.
  3. Night mein weapon chain se secure hona chahiye.
  4. Sabhi weapon reveille aur retreat per physical check karke kote register mein enter hona chahiye.
  5. Private arms ka entry register mein hona chahiye.
  6. **Weapon issue.**
     1. Kote JCO surprise check kare.
     2. Issue se pahle proper inspection.
     3. Daily issue register mein entry.
     4. Wapis deposit hone tak kote JCO ki responsibility.
  7. **Weapon Deposit.** 
     1. Weapon ka registered No aur butt No check kiya jaye.
     2. Inspection sabhi hisse purjon ka; kote JCO dwara kiya jaye.
     3. Koi damage ho to turant commander ko report di jaye.
     4. Weapon clean aur oiled kiya jaye.
     5. Kote JCO sabhi weapon in hone par signature kare.
  8. Retreat ke bad kote JCO kote ko lock karke Kote NCO ke saath, duty JCO seal karega aur keys original key box mein deposit karega.
  9. Revielle par kote JCO original keys draw karega.
  10. Kote JCO aur kote NCO milkar kote open karenge.
  11. Din ke waqt kote NCO aur CompanyCommander ka BRO aur signature ka sample display hone chahiye.
  12. Retreat aur reveille ke beech kote nahi khulega. Yadi jarurat ho to CO, 2IC, Adjutant ya Battalion duty officer ke order par aur nimanlikhit ki presence mein hoga:-
      1. Duty Ofiicer, Adjutant/Quartermaster.
      2. Subedar Major.
      3. Battalion duty JCO.
      4. Kote NCO aur kote JCO.
      5. Quarterguard ka guardcommander.

(n) All documents ko properly maintain aur up to date hona chahiye.

1. **Documentation.** Kote mein maint kiye jane wale docu is parkar hain :-
   1. Main kote register.
   2. Daily in/out register .
   3. Equipment heat register.
   4. Index card.
   5. Station in/out. (f) History sheet.
   6. I Card register.
   7. Private arms reg.
   8. Weapon cleaning register.
   9. Before/after firing register.
2. **Control Store.** Woh stores jinka issue Army Headquarter/FormationHeadquarterGS Branch dwara control hota hai kyunki ye stores avashyak, keemti, milne mein kathinta se uplapdh hote hain..
3. **Control Stores Release ka tariqa.** 
   1. Monthly return of ordnance stores other than ammunition form No ASO/AE/52 per 31 Jan, 31 May aur 30 Sep tak har unit higher fmn ko submit karta hai.
   2. DivisionHeadquartersurplus/Deficiencycontrol stores ko is report aur four monthly demand ke adhar peradjust karta hai aur next Headquarters ko bhejta hai.
   3. Yadi command Headquarters ke pass adjust karne ke baad bhi deficiency reh jata hai to Army Headquarters ko demand submit hota hai aur equipment release ho jata hai.

**Alag Alag Prakar ke Inspection**

1. **Wpns ke Liye Alag Alag Inspection.** 
   1. Monthly inspection CO/OC dwara.
   2. Quarter inspectionunit Armr.
   3. Annual inspectionEMAE (SA).
2. **EME AE (SA) ka tech insp.** Yeh insp annual basis par hota hai.
   1. **Jaruri baten.**
      1. Painting butt Nos.
      2. Sabhi metal parts ka repainting.
      3. LMG ki dono barrel barabar use.
      4. Sabhi spare ‘S’ ho.
      5. Armourer dwara regularinspection aur repair, R-2 repair wala weapon equipment lagatar workshop.
      6. Hathiyar safai.
      7. Officer/JCO ke supervision ke under.
   2. **Insp se pehle karwai.** 
      1. IAF (EME) E-05 taiyaar ho 2 copies mein jismen sabhi wpns ka nominal roll hai.
      2. Butt Nos aur Registered Nos update.
      3. Inspection ke liye uchit sthan aur layout.
      4. Hathiyar saf aur sukha.
   3. **Inspection ke liye Documents.**
      1. Pichla inspectionreport. IAF (EME) E-20.
      2. EMER folder.
      3. Weapon History Sheet (IAFZ-1410) Index Card aur Barrel History Sheet (LMG/MMG) upto date.
      4. Unit Armourer ka work record (IAFZ-2102) aur maint ki detail.
      5. Pichle inspectionke bad SA component ke indent.
      6. Damaged hathiyaron ka Court of Inquiry.
      7. Private Arms Register upto date.
   4. **Inspection ke Bad Karwai.** 
      1. Higher formation ko report.
      2. Turant repair ke liye work order.
      3. Replacement ke liye demand.
3. **Repair ka Tariqa.** 
   1. Work order IAFO-1370 in quadruplicate.
   2. 3 copy dependant workshop PSS (platoon send stores) date ke liye.
   3. Workshop 2 copy date lagakar unit ko wapis.
   4. 2 copy + weaponworkshop mein date ke din repair ke liye 1 copy receipt ke taur per wapis.
   5. Repair ke bad arms collection.
   6. BLR weapon COD Jabalpur mein deposit aur replacement control store return dwara.

1. Ek InfantryBattalion mein alag alag parkar ka equipmentweapon aur war like stores hote hain jo kih use kisi bhi operations ko bakhubi anjam dene ke liye nihayat hi zaruri hai. Lihaza ek NCO ko in sabhi stores ka auth, issue, maint aur repair ke baare mein tafsil se jankari ho to woh samay rahte is sabhi stores ka serviciability ensure kar sakta hai aur training tatha larai ke maidan mein apni company ko achha pradarshan karne mein mahtavpuran yogdan nibha sakta hai.

**CHAPTER - 46**

**UNIT SECURITY**

**Kote Security**

1. Waise to unit security mein kai baaten aati hain par in mein kote aur magzine security ati mahatavpuran hain. Is lesson ke dauran ham inhi do baton par baatcheet karenge.
2. **Kote JCO ki Dutiyan**
   1. Kote JCO ka naam unit ke Part I order mein publish hona chahiye.
   2. Woh tamam control stores aur hathiyaron ki suraksha ka jawabdar hoga.
   3. Woh khud reveille ke time par kote kholne ke liye hazir hoga aur retreat se pahle tamam hathiyar jama hone ke baad kote ko seal karega.
   4. Kote ko kholna ya seal karne se pahle woh hathiyar aur accessories ko kote register ke saath tally karega aur kote register mein signature karega.
   5. Reveille aur Retreat ke baad kote ki all OK report Sub Maj ko dega.
   6. Yadi kote mein koi private arms hai toh private arms register ke mutabik check karega.
   7. Kote ki chabi Quarter Guard mein jama karega.
   8. Kote mein koi bhi kami nazar aane par Sub Maj ko bataega.
   9. Kote ke niminlikhit docus ka khas taur se jawabdar hoga aur maint karega:-

(aa) Kote Register.

(ab) In Out Register.

(ac) Private Arms Register.

(x) Fire alarm bajne par fire picquet party ko hathiyar issue karne ke liye hazir hoga.

1. **Kote NCO ki Dutiyan**
   1. Kote NCO ka naam unit ke Part I order mein publish hona chahiye.
   2. Apni duty ke dauran woh hamesha uniform mein hoga aur tamam hathiyar aur control store ki suraksha ka jawabdar hoga.
2. Kote ke maint aur safai aur kote ke aas pass ke ilake ki safai ka zimmewar hoga.
3. Kote JCO ki nigrani mein rahte hue kote docus ko maint karne ka zimmewar hoga.
4. Reveille aur Retreat ke dauran tamam hathiyaron ko check karega aur kote JCO ko report dega. Saath hi kote register mein bhi signature karega.
5. Hatiyar issue karte waqt indls se disc lekar hathiyar ki jagah par rakhega. Jab hathiyar wapas jama hota hai to hathiyar ko detail mein check karega aur yakin karega ki tamam hisse purje thik hain aur hathiyar thik tarah se saaf hai toh hi disc wapas karega.
6. In/Out register mein in/out hone wale hathiyaron ki entry karega aur sign karega.
7. Duty officer aur kote JCO ke ilawa kisi aur admi ko kote mein enter nahin hone dega.
8. Tamam hathiyar jama hone ke baad kote JCO ke saamne kote seal karega.
9. Kisi bhi prakar ki kami ko ek dam kote JCO ko report karega.
10. Fire alarm bajne ke mauqe par Quarter guard pahunch kar duty officer/ kote JCO se agla hukam lega.
11. Guard ki badli ke samay hamesha hazir hoga taki naya guard Commander pahchan sake.
12. Din ke samay yadi use kote kholna ho to,woh guard commander se chabi lekar kote kholega aur kote lock karne ke baad use wapis kar dega. (xiv) Jab bhi uske pass kote ki chabi ho to us samay kote ko chhor kar kahin nahin jayega.
13. **Kote se Hathiyar Draw Karne ka Procedure.** Hathiyar draw karne ke lie nimnlikhit tarika prayog mein laya jaye:-
    1. Yadi ek individual ko duty/ parade ke lie hathiyar nikalna ho to woh apni hatiyar disc kote NCO ko dega, entry In-Out register mein sign karega, hatiyar ko detail mein check karega aur hathiyar le jayega.
    2. Yadi puri company/Platoon ke hathiyar trraining ke liye bahar nikalne hain to Platoon Hav apne apne Platoon ke hathiyar ki list taiyar karke hathiyar lenge aur list sign karke kote NCO ko denge. Platoon ke jawan apni apni disc kote NCO ko jama karenge. Platoon Hav `In-Out' register mein tamam Platoon ke lie signature karega.
    3. Yadi ek vyakti ko hathiyar lekar Temporary duty jana ho to woh ek authority letter jo ki Company Commander/Adjutant dwara sign kiya hua ho, use kote NCO ko deta hai. Apni disc jama karta hai aur `In-Out' register mein sign karta hai.
14. **Unit ke Ander Private Arms Rakhne ke Liye Zaruri Baaten.** Private arms se sambandh rakhne wali nimnlikhit baaten zaruri hain:-
    1. Sabhi prakar ke private arms ka record unit register of Private arms (IAFO-1989) mein enter hona chahiye.
    2. Private arms DSR para 929 ke tahit licensed hona zaruri hai.
    3. Koi bhi private arms jiska license kisi karanvash, exempted (maaf) ho to wah competent auth dwara pramanit kiya hua ho.

(iv) License ko samay par renew karwane ki zimmewari individual ki hai. (v) Jab bhi private arm kote se issue kiya jata hai to uski receipt kote NCO ko dena zaruri hai.

1. **Kote ka Periodical Check**
   1. **Daily Check.** Har roj kote JCO/NCO dwara 'daily check' kiya jata hai. Kote register mein unke rozana sign hote hain.
   2. **Weekly Check.** Company Commander dwara hafte mein ek din tamam hathiyar, control stores aur equipment check kiye jate hain. Company Commander kote register mein red ink mein apne haath se entry karke sign karta hai. Iske alawa duty officer bhi hafte mein ek baar surprise check karta hai.
2. **Kote ke Ander Suraksha ke Upay.** Kote ke ander hathiyaron ki suraksha ke upay is prakar hone chahiye:-
   1. Tamam Rifles aur baki hathiyaron ko number kiya jaye. Racks ke upar bhi serial number paint kiya jaye taki hathiyar apne apne rack par hi rakhe jayen.
   2. Koi hathiyar bina disc ke issue na kiya jaye. Yadi kisi ka disc gum ho to uska authority letter jawan ke pass hona chahiye.
   3. Bayonets aur scabbard ko bhi apne apne Rifles ke mutabik number kiya jaye.
   4. Tamam hathiyaron ko cover karne wali chain kote mein maujood honi chahiye. Seal karne se pahle yakeen kiya jaye ki tamam hathiyar chained hain aur chain par lock lag chuka hai.
   5. Pistols ko boxes mein rakha jaye aur box ke andar bhi unhen chain main lock kar diya jaye.
   6. Yadi kote ke ander koi khirki ho to usse taar lagakar band kar di jaye.
   7. Kote ke andar JCO/NCO aur Company Commander ke specimen signature hone chahiye.
   8. Koi bhi aag paida karne wali ya aag pakarne wali vastu kote ke ander maujood na ho.
   9. Hathiyar ke racks zamin mein connected hone chahiye.
3. **Kote ke Bahar ki security.** Kote ki bahar ki security ke liye nimnlikhit baaten ko dhyan mein rakhen:-
   * 1. Kote ke ilaqe mein beeri/cigarette pina nishedh hona chahiye.
     2. Koi bhi ajnabi vyakti kote ke ilake mein nahi ana chahiye.
     3. Retreat ke baad kote ki chabi QG mein jama kar deni chahiye. Yeh kote JCO dwara kiya jayega.
     4. Kote seal hone ke baad tamam security light jali honi chahiye. (v) MES dwara electric wiring ka monthly check hona zaruri hai. Taki koi bhi loose connection vagarah thik kiya ja sake.
        1. Kote ke hathiyar bahar nikalne ke baad uske security ki zimmewari indl ki hogi.
        2. Parade/trg ke dauran officer-in-charge ko yakin karna chahiye ki spare hathiyaron ke saath ek sentry ho.
        3. Ek kote gd jis ki nafri din ke samay ek NCO aur teen OR aur Raat ke samay 2 NCO aur 6 OR ho, Kote mein niyukat hona chahiye.
        4. Kote ke charon taraf aur niche cemented pillar par barbed wire laga ho.
4. **Kote ke Boards/Charts**
5. Arms State.
   * + 1. Instrs for maint of bino and compass.
       2. Fire alarm orders.
       3. Security orders.
       4. Kote JCO/NCO ki duty.
       5. Kote order.
       6. **Misc.**

(aa) Copy of Battalion Part I order of kote JCO/NCO.

(ab) Key drawing authority cert.

(ac) Trg pgme of cadre/pre course.

1. **Kote ke Documents.**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | (i) | Kote register. (IAFO-1459) |
|  | (ii) | Daily in/out register. |
|  | (iii) | Index Cards. (IAFZ-3015) |
|  | (iv) | Wpn history sheet (IAFO-1410) |
|  | (v) | Cont store ledger. |
|  | (vi) | Long in/out register. |

* + - 1. Private arms register.
      2. Before/after firing register.
      3. Weekly cleaning register.
      4. Arms damage register.
      5. Arms repair register.
      6. Instrument heating register.
      7. Firing record register of all weapons.
      8. Visitor book.
      9. Wpn disc register.
      10. Handing/taking over register.

**Magzine Security**

1. Unit ka ammunition magazine mein rakha jata hai.Magzine se sambandhit jaruri batein nimn hai:-
   1. **Magzine JCO Ki Dutiyan.** 
      1. Magzine JCO, magzine ke andar ke tamam ammunition ki security ka zimmewar hota hai.
      2. Din ke pahle parade ke time par woh Magzine NCO ke saath

Magazine kholega taki Magzine mein hawa (Ventilation) lag sake.

* + 1. Unsealed box ke ammunition ka jaanch karega.
    2. QM ke adeshon ke anusar Magzine mein alag alag prakar ke ammunition ko layout karega.
    3. Magzine ko subah aur sham seal kholne, lagane ke lie hajir hoga.
    4. Magzine ki chabi QG ko jama karega.
    5. Company ka ammunition issue/ receipt ke time par hajir hoga.
    6. Jab bhi naya ammunition depot se aata hai, opening board hone ke baad hi usko apne apne lot Nos mein rakhega.
    7. First aur Second line ammunition ko turnover karne ki zimmewari hogi, yeh QM ke nirdesh ke anusar hoga.
    8. Daily ammunition issue/ receipt register mein sign karega.
    9. QM ko Magzine ki `OK' report sham ke samay dega.
  1. **Magzine NCO ki Dutiyan.** 
     1. Magzine JCO ke niche kaam karna.
     2. Magzine JCO ke saath subah aur shaam magzine ko seal karma
     3. Indent ke mutabiq company ko ammunition issue karna.
     4. Fired cases receive karte hue unki ginti karna aur lot No check karna.
     5. Hafte mein ek din company ki working party ko lekar magzine ki safai karna.
     6. Magzine ke bahar aur pass ke ilake ki safai karana.
     7. Daily issue/receipt register ko complete rakhna.
     8. Kisi bhi prakar ki kami ki report magzine JCO ko dena
     9. Fire alarm ke mauke par QG pahunch kar, duty officer, QM, magzine JCO se agla aadesh lena.
     10. Guard ki badli ke time hajir hoga taaki naya guard commander use pehchan sake.
  2. **Bijli se Bachao ka Bandobast.** 
     1. Magzine mein lightening conductor ka lagaya jana nihayat hi zaruri hota hai.
     2. In lightening conductor ko saal mein do bar MES/Engrs dwara insp kiya jata hai. Insp ki tarikh lightening conductor post mein (record) ki jati hai.
  3. **Magzine mein Maint Hone Wale Documents.** 
     1. Main Ammunition ledger.
     2. Daily issue/receipt register.
     3. Weekly checking register.
     4. Trg ammunition expenditure register.
     5. Daily expenditure register.
     6. Packing mtrl ledger.
     7. Handing/taking over register.

**Periodical Checks**

1. **Ammunition JCO dwara.** 
   1. Rojana pahli parade mein.
   2. Seal box ko checking ke liye nahi khola jata.
   3. Koi bhi kami QM ko batai jati hai.
2. **Duty Officer Dwara.** Apne niyamit round ke dauran kisi bhi ammunition ko check kar sakta hai.
3. **Company Commander Dwara.** Mahine ke dusre hafte mein apni company ka service ammunition check karna chahiye. Iski report company commander dwara monthly security report mein di jani chahiye.
4. **QM Dwara.** Mahine mein ek bar pura ammunition ledger ke mutabik check kiya jana chahiye.
5. **Board of officer dwara.** Har mahine ke akhiri din mein ek board of officer dwara magzine ka ammunition check kiya jata hai. Is board of officer ki niyukti unit part I order mein ki jati hai.

**Security of Information**

1. All ranks yeh yakin karne ke liye zimmedar hain ki dushman ko koi khabar na mile. Khabar leak hone ke nimn wajah/ karan hain:-
   1. Carelessly baat karna.
   2. Radio aur telephone par baat kana.
2. **Carelessly baat karna.** Kisi bhi fauji operation ya harkat ki kabhi baat-chit nahi karni chahiye jab koi anjan vyakti wahan ho ya woh hamein sun sake, chahe hum uniform mein ho ya na ho, chutti par ho ya na ho.
3. **Radio par baat kana.** Radio par ki gaye har baat dushman sun sakta hai. Yeh khabar baki marg se mili khabar se milane se dushman ko hamare pure operation ka chitra samajh mein aa sakta hai. Isi liye radio par baat karne ke niyamon ka hamesha sakhti se palan karna chahiye. Radio par baat karne ke nimn niyam hain:-
   1. Baat karne se pahle yeh sooch kar rakho ki aap ko kya bolna hai.
   2. Standard RT procedure ka istemal karo
   3. Authorised code sign, code name, code words aur grid reference codes ka hamesha istemal karo.
   4. Units ko unke naam se na refer karen.
   5. Sambandhit matlab ke shabdon ka istemal na karen eg:- helicopter ko macchhar kahna, ammunition ko kisi faal ka naam dena etc.
   6. Dushman ki loc hamesha clear mein paas karo.
   7. Apne tps ki loc hamesha code mein paas karo. Lekin iske nimn apvad hain:-

* + 1. Kisi code name ya grid ref ke code ko kisi aisi cheej se na link karen jo dushman ko pata ho.
    2. Kisi jagah ka naam kisi code name ya grid ref ke code se na milaen.

1. **Telephone par baat karna.** Dushman telephone ki line intercept kar sakta hai, khaas kar pakke defence mein. Isi liye radio par baat karne ke niyam telephone par baat karne ke liye bhi utni sakhtai se lagu hone chahiye. Radio ya telephone par aage hone wali karwai ki baat karna bahut khatarnak ho sakta hai.

**Security of Correspondence**

1. Private khat likhne ke adhi-niyam ka sakhti se palan kiya jaye. Private khat mein larai ke dauran kisi bhi prakar ke fauji mamle ka likhna sakht mana hai.
2. Operation area mein private letters censor kiye jate hain. Battalion mein letters ko officers/ JCOs censor karte hain. Parantu har hafte mein ek hafte mein har jawan ek letter private aur family mamle par green envelope mein likh sakta hai, yeh letter base mein censor hota hai naki unit mein.
3. Forward area mein rahne wale tps ko kabhi bhi kuch aisa nahi carry karna chahiye jisse dushman ko koi khabar mil sake jaise:-
   1. Apni position dikhane wale marked maps.
   2. Private letters jo units ki location ya ghar/ unit mein morale ka sanket dete hon.
   3. Koi document jo ki us jawan ka unit/ formation batate ho.
4. Sabhi waste paper ko jalakar barbad karna chahiye.
5. Civil postal service ka istemal karna operation area mein sakth mana hai. Kisi bhi rank dwara by hand letter operation area ke bahar bina censor ke bhejna mana hai.
6. **Addresses/ pate.** 
   1. All ranks ko unit ka sahi postal address bataya jayega. Iss pate mein kuch bhi extra nahi likha jayega.
   2. Printed, heading wale, embossed stationary; jo likhne wale ka ya unit/ fmn ke loc ka sanket dete hon istemal karna mana hai.
   3. Yeh rule sabhi prakar ke packages/ parcels ke liye bhi lagu hai.
7. Security kafi gahra vishay hai. kisi bhi unit mein security tabhi barkarar rakhi jaa sakti hai jab sabhi ranks apni zimmedari samjhenge aur security ke mamle mein hamesha satark rahenge. Cdrs ko samay samay par security ka soch-vichar/ mulyankan karna chahiye ki kahin koi gap to nahi ho gaya hai jahan se security leak ho sakti hai.

**CHAPTER - 47**

**RADIO TELEPHONY PROCEDURE**

**Sig Training Vol 7 Pam No 4 Radeo Telephony 1988**

**Aam Jankari**

1. **Battalion Signal Platoon ki Banawat.** Battalion mein signal platoon battalion HQ ke nichhe kaam karta hai :-

**Signal Platoon (1-1-34)(Revised)**

**Platoon HQ (1-1-2)**

Platoon Commander (Capt) - 1

Platoon 2IC (JCO) - 1

Store NCO - 1

Orderly/Runner - 1

**Radio Section Line Section**

**(Str-22) (Str -10)**

Radeo Opr (Nk) - 04 Section Commander (Hav) - 01

Radio Opr (Lnk / Sep) - 18 Line Men/Exch Opr - 09

* 1. **Radio Section (Opr).** Radio sets operate karne ka kaam.
  2. **Line Section.** Line bichane/nikalne/maintenance ka kaam.
  3. Isi prakar Mor Platoon se bhi kam se kam 5 jawan radio oprs ki trg prapt kiye hue hone chahiye.

1. **Radio Sets ka Authorisation ek Battalion Mein.** 
   1. STAR V - 15 (Secure Tactical Army Radio System).
   2. STAR V - 5 Watt-15.
   3. VA Mk II - 34.
   4. RS VPS - 56 (Variable Portable Sets)

(Section Commander ke Liye).

1. **Radio Sets ka Range.** 
   1. ANPRC 25 - 8 km.
   2. ANPRC 25 (WB) - 25 km.
   3. VA MK - II - 2.5 - 9 km.
   4. VPS - 1.5 km.
2. **Ek battalion ke ander milap rakhne ke teen tarike hain.** 
   1. Radio.
   2. Line.
   3. DR aur Runner.
3. Is sabak ke dauran kewal radio ke istemal ke bare mein jankari di jayegi. Isko istemal karte samay dhyan mein rakhne wali batein :-
   1. Kewal jarurat parne par hi khola jaye. Aam milap line par kiya jayega. Line ka milap tut jane par radio ka istemal kiya jayega.
   2. Koi faltu baat cheet nahi ki jayegi. Message saaf aur chhota hona chahiye. (c) Mountains mein istemal karte samay vantage point ka istemal karna chahiye.
4. **Radio Istemal karne ke Faide (Advantages).** 
   1. Milap jaldi se jaldi kiya ja sakta hai.
   2. Harkat ke dauran bhi milap rakha ja sakta hai.
5. **Radio Istemal karne ke Nuksan (Disadvantages).** 
   1. Dushman bhi usi frequency mein set khol kar apka pura communication sun sakta hai. (Jamming ki karwai bhi kar sakta hai). (b) Battery ki life par nirbhar karta hai.
6. **Intro to Equipment.** Alag-alag prakar ke radio sets ki pehchan:-
   1. Naam aur Pehchan.
   2. Maj accessories eg. Battery, Antenna.
   3. Mukhaya hisse.
   4. Battery aur Antenna lagane ka tarika.
   5. Frequency lagane ke bare mein jankari.
   6. On/Off karne ka tarika.

**Paribhashayein**

1. **RT mein kaam aane wale parbishayein.** 
   1. **Radio Net.** Do ya do se adhik stations jab ek dusre se milap (communication) rakhne ke liye ek hi frequency par kaam karte hain to use ek hi radio net mein hona kahte hain.
   2. **Out Station.** Control station ko chhod kar ek radio net mein baki sabhi stations, out stations hote hain.
   3. **Link Sign.** Radio net ke har ek station ki pehchan ko gupt rakhne ke liye, unhe link sign diye jate hain. Link sign kuch letters ka group hota hai, ya letters aur figures ka combination hota hai. Link sign kewal RT procedure mein istemal kiya jata hai.
   4. **Code Sign.**  Code sign teen letter ka group hota hai jo ki ek formation HQ ya unit ke pehchan ko gupt rakhne ke liye istemal kiya jata hai. Code sign rojana badli hota hai. eg. 10 SIKH LI - PQR, 2/8 GR - KLM.
   5. **Phonetic Alphabet.**  Jab kisi bhi letter ki pehchan karni hoti hai to uska standard phonetic alphabet istemal kiya jata hai.
   6. **Appoinment Code.** RT ke dauran kisi bhi Appointment ki pahchan ko gupt rakhne ke liye appointment code niyukat kiye gaye hain.
      1. Battalion level - Tiger - CO
      2. Company level - Tiger - Company Commander
      3. Platoon level - Tiger - Platoon Commander
      4. The appt code will be used irrespective of rank of the person holding the appt. (eg) The tiger of an isolated post may be a Lance Naik.
   7. **Sender.** Msg bhejne wala.

(j) **Receiver.** Msg lene wala.

**Standard Phrases**

1. RT procedure ke dauran message ko sahi aur jaldi bhejne ke liye kuch standard phrases istemal kiye jate hain. Yeh phrases jaise diye gaye hain waise hi istemal kiye jayenge (eg) 'Roger', 'Over', aur hindi ya aur koi regimental bhasha mein anuvad karke istemal nahi kiya jayega.
   1. **All After.** Message ke ek hisse ke bad ke liye istemal.
   2. **All Before.** Message ke ek hisse ke pehle ke liye istemal.

* 1. **Code Sign.** Msg mein code sign ke istemal se pahle lagaya jata hai.
  2. **Cancel.** Jab `Sender' (Bhejne wala) message ko cancel karna chahta ho.
  3. **Correction.** Us samay istemal kiya jata hai jab sender apne message ko pass karte samay koi shabd galt bol jata hai.
  4. **Figures.** RT procedure ke dauran ek ya ek se jyada figures pass karte samay. Yeh usse pahle lagaya jata hai.
  5. **From - To.** Jab ki communication mein badha ho aur message ka koi hissa sunai na de. Kahan se kahan tak message samajh nahin aiya message ka woh hissa sender phir se dohrata hai.
  6. **Grid reference.** Jab grid reference clear mein bhejna ho to usse pahle istemal kiya jata hai.

1. **I say again.** Sender istemal karta hai jab ki use msg ka koi bhag phir se dohrana ho.
2. **I spell.**  Ise sender istemal karta hai jab ki receiver ko msg ka koi lafj, shabd samajh na aa raha ho, to us samay us shabd ko sender spell karta hai aur isse pahle I spell lagata hai.
3. **Letters.** Us samay istemal kiya jata hai jab grid ko letter code karke pass kiya ja raha ho.
4. **For.** Jab control station out station ko msg bhejta hai to us samay istemal kiya jata hai.
5. **Nothing heard.** Milap staphit karte samay istemal`No signal heard'.
6. **Ok.** Milap staphit karte samay istemal.
7. Reception thik hai.
8. Main aapka message receive karne ke liye taiyar hon.
9. **Out.** Mera transimisson khatam ho gaya hai aur ab is sab par koi transimisson nahin hoga.(end of transmission no reply expected).
10. **Out to You.** Mera transmission aapke liye khatm hota hai aur ab main dusre station ke saath milap karne ja raha hun, aapse is sub par koi reply ki asha nahin hai.
11. **Over.** Mera transmission khatam hota hai aur ab aapse is sub par reply ki asha karta hun.
12. **Read back.** Jab sender check karna chahta ho ki receiver ne message puri tarah se note kiya hai ya nahin receiver pure message ko dohra deta hai.
13. **Reply through.** Jab ki sender aur receiver ke beech mein milap na ho/ya kamjor ho to beech wala station jiska milap donon ke saath hai, sender ko salah deta hai `Reply through me'.
14. **Relay to.** Jab ki sender aur receiver mein milap na ho aur sender kisi bhi beech wale station ko msg relay karne ke liye kahta hai.
15. **Roger.** Msg note kar liya hai aur samajh liya hai.
16. **Roger so far.** Jab ki koi lamba message pass ho raha ho to sender is ka istemal karta hai, yeh puchane ke liye ki abhi tak jo message pass hua hai woh kar liya hai ya nahi.
17. **Say again.** Receiver istemal karta hai jab usse message samajh na aya ho aur woh chahta hai ki sender pure message ko dobara pade.
18. **Time signal.** Time signal bhejne se pahle.
19. **Wait.** Kuch der ke liye agar rukne ke liye kehna ho to.
    1. **Wait out.** Abhi ke liye mera transmission khatm hai lekin main thori der baad phir call karunga.
    2. **Wilco.** Message note kar liya hai, samajh aa gaya hai aur is par amal kiya jayega.
    3. **I spell.** Kisi bhi lafaz ko spelll karne se pahle.
    4. **Report Signal Strength.**  Sender istemal karta hai (aam taur par control) jab woh check karna chahta ho ki receiver station(s) ko signal prapt ho raha hai ya nahin aur uska str kaya hai.
    5. **Str 3 (ya OK).** Reception achha hai.
    6. **Str2.** Signal prapt ho raha hai lekin bahut achhi tarah nahi, thori kathnai se.
    7. **Str 1.** Signal kamjor hai aur samajh nahi aa raha hai.
    8. **Send Your Msg.** Aapko out station ko direct message dene ki izazat hai.
    9. **Word after/ word before.** Agar kisi shabd ke bad/pahle baki sentence samajh na aya ho us ko repeat karne ke liye ya verification karne ke liye istemal kiya jata hai.
    10. **Wrong.** Apne abhi jo bhi pass kiya hai woh galat hai.

**Calls ke Parkar Types of Calls.**

1. Calls 05 prakar ke hote hain :-
   1. Single Call.
   2. Multiple Call.
   3. Net Call.
   4. Collective Call.
   5. Net call with acception.
2. **Single Call.** Woh call jismen ki sender ek hi station ko call karta hai:-
   1. **Control to out Station.**
      1. Control - Charlie one ration bhejein over.
      2. CAP 1 - Charlie one roger over.
   2. **Out Station to Out Station.**
      1. DET 1 - Delta one for delta two, ab aap harkat kar sakte ho over.
      2. DET 2 - Delta two roger over.
3. **Multiple Calls.** Aisa call jabki do ya do se adhik station ke saath milap kiya jata hai lekin net ke sabhi station ke saath nahi :-
   1. **Control - Do Out Station ko.**
      1. Control - Charlie 01 aur charlie 2 ab aap harkat kar sakte ho over.
      2. CAP 1 - Charlie one roger over.
      3. CAP 2 - Charlie two roger over.
   2. **Out Station.**  Control aur dusre Station ke Saath.
      1. CAP 1 - Charlie one for charlie aur charlie two over.
      2. CAP - Charlie roger over.
      3. CAP 2 - Charlie two roger over.
4. **Net Call.** Aisa call jab ki net ke sabhi stations ke saath milap kiya jata hai.
   1. **Control Sabhi Station ko.** 
      1. Control - All stns charlie, abh aap harkat kar sakte ho over.
      2. CAP 1 - Charlie one roger over.
      3. CAP 2 - Charlie two roger over.
      4. CAP 3 - Charlie three roger over.
      5. CAP 4 - Charlie four roger over.
   2. **Out Station.** Control aur baki net ke sabhi stns ko.
      1. CAP1 - Charlie one for all stns charlie one, ab aap harkat kar sakte ho, over.
      2. CAP - Charlie roger over.
      3. CAP 2 - Charlie two roger over.
      4. CAP 3 - Charlie three roger over.
      5. CAP 4 - Charlie four roger over.
5. Is sabak ke dauran aap ko RS aur RT procedure ke bare mein mote taur par jankari di gai hai. RT procedure mein mahir hone ke liye yeh zarurai hai ki aap sabh is par abhyas karen. Aap sabh section commanders ho aur abh section ko bhi RS auth kar diya gaya hai, isi liye aap ko is sabak par gaur karne ki zarurat aur bhi badh jati hai, taki aap iska istemal durusti aur teji se kar saken.
6. Radio ko istemal karte samay savdhani barte kioki aapke msg ko dushman bhi `tap' kar sakta hai. Messages ke mukhya ansh ko gupt rakhne ke liye slidex code aur unicode istemal kiya jata hai jo ki aap ko is lesson mein nahi padhaya gaya.

**CHAPTER - 48**

**AMMUNITION SCALE**

**Parichay**

1. Itihas gavah hai ki kisi bhi kam ya ladai ke peehche achhe administration ka sabse mahatavpurna role hota hai ek commander hone ke naate Platoon /Company ka ammunition ka gaharai mein gyan zarurai hai .Saath hi iski scale ke bare mein har jawan ko maalum hona chahiye.

**Ammunition ki Kismen aur Ammunition Scale**

1. Mote taur par agar baat Karen to uniton ke andar ammunition ko is prakar se baanta jata hai :

Ammunition

Service

Ammunition

First Line

Second

Line

Reserve

Contact rate

Practice Ammunition

**Service Ammunition**

1. Yeh ammunition operational kaam ke liye hota hai. Jahan tak ho sake naye ammunition ko operational kaam ke liye rakhna chahiye:-
   1. First line
   2. Second line.
   3. War wastage reserve.
2. **First Line.** Yeh woh ammunition hai jo ek unit ki WE/ PE mein har weapon ke saath auth hota hai. Isse do bhagon mein baanta gaya hai:-
   1. **On Weapon.** Yaniki pouch ammunition jo ki firer ke dwara carry kiya jata hai. Personnel weapon ka on weapon scale firer ke dwara carry kiya jata hai aur auto weapon ka on weapon scale weapon crew dwara carry kiya jata hai.
   2. **Unit Reserve.** Yeh ammunition, ladai ke dauran, unit ke on weapon scale ammunition ki replenishment ke liye hota hai. Isse unit ke, ‘F’ech mein carry kiya jata hai. Defence mein, khas kar LC ke ilaqe mein, isse morchon ya post mein hi stock karke rakha jata hai. Yah kam se kam do hamlon ko nakara karne ke liye scale kiya gaya hai.
3. **Second Line.** Har hathiyar ka second line scale Army Headquarters dwara fix kiya jata hai. Yeh ammunition unit ke first line scale ki replenishment ke liye hota hai. Yeh scale first line scale ka taqriban 50 % hota hai. Defence mein stocking second lines ki tadad par adharit hoti hai. Hamle mein yeh ‘A’ aur ‘B’ ech mein rakha jata hai aur Division ASC Battalion dwara supply kiya jata hai.

**Ammunition Scale**

1. Ammunition scale ki detail is prakar se hai:-

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **S.**  **No** | **Weapon** | **On**  **Weapon** | **Unit**  **Reserve** | **FirstLine** | **Second**  **Line** | **Remarks** |
| (a) | 9 mm Pistol | 12 | 03 | 15 | 03 |  |
| (b) | 9 mm Carbine | 96 | 96 | 192 | 96 |  |
| (c) | INSAS Rif | 140 | 140 | 280 | 140 |  |
| (d) | INSAS LMG | 1000 | 500 | 1500 | 750 |  |
| (e) | 51 mm Mortar |  | |  |  |  |
| (i) HE | 24 | 30 | 54 | 30 |  |
| (ii) Smoke | 06 | 06 | 12 | 06 |  |
| (iii) Illumination | 06 | 06 | 12 | 06 |  |
| (f) | 84 mm RL |  |  |  |  |  |
| (i) HEAT 751 | 02 | 02 | 04 | 02 |  |
| (ii) HEAT 551 | 02 | 02 | 04 | 02 |  |
| (iii) HE | 02 | 02 | 04 | 02 |  |
| (iv) HEDP | 02 | 02 | 04 | 02 |  |
| (v) Smoke | 02 | 04 | 06 | 03 |  |
| (vi) Illumination | 02 | 02 | 04 | 02 |  |
| (g) | Sniper | 100 | 50 | 150 | 75 |  |
| (h) | Miniflare |  | |  |  |  |
| (i) Ill | 06 | 02 | 08 | 04 |  |
| (ii) Red | 03 | 01 | 04 | 02 |  |
| (iii) Green | 03 | 01 | 04 | 02 |  |
| (j) | UBGL VOG 25 | 10 | 10 | 20 | 10 |  |
| (k) | AK - 47 | 140 | 140 | 280 | 140 |  |
| (l) | MGL |  | |  |  |  |
| (i) HEAP | 24 | 24 | 48 | 24 |  |
| (ii) HEDP | 09 | 09 | 18 | 09 |  |
|  | (iii) SBRP | 09 | 09 | 18 | 09 |  |
| (iv) TMO | 06 | 06 | 12 | 06 |  |
| (m) | AMR |  |  |  |  |  |
| (i) 14.5 mm Ball | 50 | 50 | 100 | 50 |  |
| (ii) 20 mm  SHAPE | 50 | 50 | 100 | 50 |  |
| (iii) 20 mm HE | 50 | 50 | 100 | 50 |  |
| (n) | AGL | 290 | 116 | 406 | 203 |  |
| (o) | MMG | 4000 | 2000 | 6000 | 3000 |  |
| (p) | ATGM | 06 | 02 | 08 | 02 |  |
| (q) | 81mm Mortar |  |  |  |  |  |
| (i) HE | 48 | 42 | 90 | 30 |  |
| (ii) Smoke | 12 | 18 | 30 | 12 |  |
| (iii) Ill | 12 | 05 | 17 | 05 |  |
| (r) | Hand Grenade | - | - | 1776 | 888 |  |
| (s) | Flame Thrower | - | - | 08 | 04 |  |
| (t) | No 77/80 WP  grenade | - | - | 144 | 72 |  |
| (u) | Claymore mines | - | - | 96 | 48 |  |

1. **Ammunition Ki Dikkaten.**
   * 1. Ammunition ka wajan jyada hota hain.
     2. Alag alag ammunition ka alag alag shape ke karan carry karne mein dikkat.
     3. Planning mein dikkat. Kyunki kaun sa ammunition ki zarurat padegi yeh malum nahi hota.
     4. Link up ke pehle ammunition ka replenishment nahi ho sakta hain.
2. **Samadhan.**
   * 1. Pura first line scale carry na karen.
     2. Wohi hathiyar le jayen jinka ammunition interchangeable ho.
     3. Hathiyar kam aur ammunition zyada carry karen.
     4. Ammunition ki baant is prakar Karen ki load sabke paas barabar ho.
     5. Ammunition kharch hote hi jaldi se jaldi redistribute karen.
     6. Surprise ko barkarar rakhne par zor den taki ammunition istemal karne ki zaroorat kam se kam pade. Mor, arty aur air ke fire support ki planning par zor den.

**Contact Rates**

1. Pehle ladi gai ladaion mein pratidin ammunition ka kharcha / wastage ka study kiya gaya. Aise kharche / wastage se nipatne ke liye ammunition ka reserve banaya gaya jise ‘Contact rate’ ammunition kehte hain. Ladai ke dauran aamtaur par kharch hone wale ammunition ke aadhar par contact rates (intense) aur contact rates (normal) niyukt kiye gaye. Ammunition ke is stock ko Command Headquarters Reserve aur Army Headquarters Reserve ke taur par central ammunition depots mein rakha jata hai. Yeh ammunition comd mein stock Kiya jata hai parantu istemal karne ke liye Army Headquarters ki hidayaton ka palan kiya jata hai. Defence mein ammunition ki stocking second line ammunition ke saath saath Contact rate par bhi adharit hoti hai.

**Practice Ammunition**.

1. Practice ke liye wohi ammunition issue hota hai joki operations ke liye rakha gaya ho.
   * 1. Woh ammunition jiski life kam rah gayi ho ya jo jaldi kharch karma hota hai use ‘Range Practice’ kehte hain. Un dibbon mein jin mein yeh ammunition hota hai, unko ‘RANGE PRACTICE’ (R/P) ya ‘TO BE EXPENDED BY’ se ammunition depot dwara mark kar diya jata hai.
     2. Small arms ka woh ammunition jo ki ek saal tak expose raha ho.
     3. Woh ammunition jaise bicat strip, candle smoke ground, hand grenades No 90, mine practice, practice shots aadi jo ki banaya hi practice/ training ke liye gaya ho.
     4. Overage ammunition joki O/A se mark kiya gaya ho.

**Platoon mein Ammunition Replenishment kaTarika**

1. Ek Platoon mein ammunition ki replenishment ka tarika is parkar hai :-
   * 1. Defence ke dauran on weapon scale aur unit reserve ammunition morchon mein rakha jaata hain. Halat ke anusar second line ammunition morchon mein ya Platoon Headquarters aur Company Headquarters mein rakha jaata hai.
     2. Aam taur par post par ammunition ki stocking itni matra mein ki jati hai ki firing ya post par hamle ke dauran ammunition ki replenishment ki zaroorat nahi padti. Ek infantry battalion apne first line ammunition scale ki madad se do hamle ko nakara kar sakti hai.
     3. Firing khatam hone par / hamla tal jane par, post ke first line ammunition ko post par ya Company Headquarters mein rakhe second line ammunition se replenish kar diya jata hai. Aisa karne ke liye har section mein do ya teen admi pehle se mukarar hone chahiye. Platoon Headquarters mein har section ka second line alag se mark karke rakhna chahiye aur Company headquarters mein isi tarah har platoon ka section line ammunition taiyar hona chahiye.
     4. Post / platoon ke second line scale ko company/ batallion headquarters ke second line se replenish kiya jata hai. Company aur platoon ke darje par yeh zimmedari CHM aur platoon Hav ki hoti hai. Ek platoon ke second line scale ka load is prakar hain :-

##### Ek Platoon KaSecond Line Ammunition Ka Load

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Hathiyar** | **Platoon Mein Nafri** | **Total Section Line** | **Wajan (Kg)** |
| (a) 5.56 INSAS rif | 20 | 140 x 20 = 2800 | 56 |
| (b) 9mm carbine | 07 | 96 x 07 = 672 | 11 |
| (c) 5.56 INSAS LMG | 03 | 750 x 03 = 2250 | 40 |
| (d) 84 mm RL | 03 | 04 x 03 = 12 | 30 |
| (e) 9mm pistol | 03 | 03 x 03 = 09 | - |
| **Total** | | | **137** |

(**Note**:- Platoon ke second line ammunition ko uthane ke liye 06 OR ki jarurat hain har jawan 20.6 kg wajan uthayega. Iske liye har section se do jawan diye jayenge.)

1. Hamle ke dauran unit reserve ammunition F echelon vehicle mein rakha jata hai. Is vehicle mein ‘F’ echelon NCO hota hai joki bn HQ dwara detail kiye gaye tradesmen ki madad se is ammunition ko reorganisation stage ke dauran objective par lata hai. Company RV se platoon RV tak ammunition ko lane ki zimmewari platoon Hav ki hoti hai.
2. Yadi jawan ko ammunition ke parkar ka pata hai tatha iske saath-saath ammunition ke scale ke bare mein pata hai to woh larai ke maidan mein ammunition ka sahi tarike se istemal kar sakta hai. Taaki operations ki saflta mein koi badha na aaye.

### CHAPTER – 49

**SIKHLAI KE TARIQE**

**Niyam aur Usul**

1. **Niyam.** Ek achchi sikhlai do khas baton par nirbhar karti hai:-
   1. Instr ko us vishay par jis ko usne sikhana hai us par gaharai se gyan hona chahiye.
   2. Class ko sikhne ki tamanna ya dilchaspi honi chahiye.
2. **Sidhant(Usul).** Upar diye gaye do niyamo ke alawa kisi bhi class ki safalta kuch usulon par nirbhar karti hai.
   1. **Uddesh.** Kisi bhi lesson ke teen uddesh hote hain:-
      1. **Jaldi ka.** Yeh saaf aur chota hota hai e.g. Iss lecture ka uddesh aapko sikhlai ke tarikon ke bare mein jankari dena hai.
      2. **Baad ka.** Yeh uddesh kai jaldi ke uddesh ko mila kar banta hai e.g. Iss course mein jitne bhi lesson aapko padaye jate hai unkaa uddesh hai aapko ek accha sectioncommander banana.
      3. **Aim plus.** Yehwoh uddesh hai jo students jane anjane mein sikh jate hai, e.g. Aapko ek achha soldier banana.
   2. **Sochvichar aur Taiyari.** Kisi bhi lesson ko achhe tariqe se chalane ke liye yeh jaruri hai ki Instructor lesson chalane se pahle hi sabhi baton ka sochvichar aur taiyari kare taki aakhri waqt mein koi badli karne ki jarurat na pare aur lesson chalane mein koi mushkil na aaye. Sochvichar aur taiyari in baton ki karni chahiye:-
      1. **Sikhlai ki batein.** Sabse pahle ek instructor jo kuch use class ko sikhlana hai uske bare mein sochvichar karta hai phir uski taiyari iss prakar karta hai:-

(aa) Kya padhana hai, kitna samay hai aur padane ka tariqa, PWT,CWT etc.

(ab) Jo kuch use padhana hai woh kahan milega aur woh usko kis prakar taiyar karega.

(ac) Uske bad subject pamphlet, precis, books ya course ke notes se dundhkar nikalega.

(ad) Jo kuch use in kitabo mein milta hai uski jankari haasil karega unko padkar.

(ae) **Vishay ko chunna**

(aaa) Janana jaruri hai.

(aab) Janana chahiye.

(aac) Janana se achha rahega.

(af) **Lesson plan Banana.** Jab woh us subject (vishay) ke bare mein kafi gyan haasil kar leta hai tab use jo kuch padana hai, use woh tartibwar lagata hai. Yeh karte samay use apne sabak ka uddesh, class ka star aur use class ko chalane ke liye kitna samay diya hai dhyan mein rakhna chahiye. Lekin mote taur par ek Instr jo class chalane ja raha hai use tafsil mein samay, trg aid chart ya slides ka istemal karke kis tartib mein chalana hai use likhit rup mein banata hai, use lesson plan kahte hai. Lesson plan banane ke chand ek faide class tartibwar chalai jati hai, class ko samajhne mein asani, accident/durghatna se bachao, chizen/ weapon etc damage hone ki jankari, samajh ki stage wise janch.

1. **Training Aids.** Instructor ko lesson plan banate samay yeh sochvichar karna chahiye ki iss class ko chalane ke liye use koun koun se trg aids chart/ slides ki jarurat padegi. Unka list banane ke baad woh unki demand trg store mein dega aur unko check karega ki thik hai.Yadi koi trg aids thik nahin hai to usko thik karwayega. Dhyan rahe ki koi bhi trg aid jo kaam nahin karte hai class ke dauran istemal na kiye jaye.
2. **Training ki Jagah aur uska Istemal.** Ek instr ko chahiye ki jis jagah par usne class leni hai wahan par jakar woh iss prakar sochvichar aur taiyari kare:-
   1. Jitne students ki class chalani hai kya unke baithne ke liye jagah hai, yadi nahin to uska intejam karwaye jaise ek Squad Post ko repair karna, class ko is tarah se baithaya jaye ki suraj unke muh par na chamke.

(ab) Class chalane ki jagah par jakar woh yeh dekhe ki koun se trg aid ko kis jagah lagaya jayega, yadi instr ne koi demo dena hai to use kis jagah se dega jisse ki puri class use asani se dekh sake, aur yadi students se abhyas karana hai to kis jagah se karayega aur khud kis jagah khara hoga jisse woh class ki galtion ko pakar saken.

1. **Administration.** Ek achha instructor ko chahiye ki woh yakin kare ki class ke liye pani ka bandobast hai, class ke piche visiting officer ke liye baithne ka bandobast hai aur class ka nominal roll, lesson plan, clip board, paper aur pencil table par rakha hai. Iske liye use taiyari karni chahiye.
2. **Vidhyarthion ka Star.** Instr ko sikhlai pane wale vidhyarthion ke star ke bare mein gyan hona awashyak hai aur woh jo bhi soch vichar karta hai use class ka star dhyan mein rakhna chahiye. Vidhyarthion ke star mein antar ko dhyan mein rakhte hue hi class ki squadding bhi ki jati hai is prakar:-
   1. Vidyarthion mein antar. Vidyarthion ke star mein antar nimnlikhit karne se ho sakta hai:-

(aaa)**Gyan(int).** Cl ke sabhi vidyarthion ka gyan ek sa nahin ho sakta.

(aab)**Aage badhne ki jigyasa.** Jo vidyarthi aage badna chahte hai e.g. Jo course mein achhi grading haasil karna chahate hai woh zyada kaam karenge aur baki students se acchhe honge.

(aac)**Utsukta.** Jis kisi bhi student mein kisi baat ko janane ki utsukta ya jigyasa hoti hai, uska us student se jisko koi utsukta nahin hai usse achha hona swabhawik hai.

(aad)**Pichla Anubhav.** Jis vidyarthi ka pichla anubhav zyada hai woh baki students se achha hoga.

1. **Squadding.** Aapne dekha hoga ki kisi bhi class ki WT ke liye squadding ki jati hai. Squadding in karno se ki jati hai:-

(aa) **Karan.** Kion ki vidyarthion ke star mein antar hota hai isliye yadi ek achha aur ek kamjor vidyarthi ko ek hi squad mein rakh diya jaye to achha aur kamjor dono kism ke vidyarthion ko sikhlai mein mushkil aayegi.

(ab) **Basis.** Takriban ek hi star ke vidyarthi ek squad mein hon.

(ac) **Tariqa.** Test lekar e.g. kisi course mein entrance test lekar students ke star ka pata lagaya jata hai.

(ad) **Apnapan.** Jab ek hi star ke jawan ek squad mein hote hain to unhe class ke sabhi jawan apne saath ke lagte hai aur woh class mein zyada interest leta hai.

(ae) **Achhi Spardha.** Jab squad ke sabhi vidyarthion ka star ek sa hota hai to har ek vidyarthi class mein achha karne ke liye mehnat karta hai.

(af) **Jaldi Sikhne Mein Madad.** Squad mein sabhi vidyarthion ke liye koi bhi shak ya sawal mahatava puran hota hai jo usko class mein jyada dhyan lagane mein madad karta hai aur woh jaldi sikhta hai.

(c) **Dilchapsi.** Is usul ka sikhlai ke dauran niyam ke saath najdiki sambandh hai (class ko sikhne ki tammanna hona) ek instructor ko class ki dilchaspi kayam rakhne ki ahmiyat ko samajhna chahiye aur is dhang se class leni chahiye ki class ki ruchi bani rahe. Ruchi kayam rakhne ke chand ek tarike is prakar hai:-

1. **Class se Pahle.** Jahirat (advertise) karke e.g. achhi tarah se banaya hua training programme ya posters banakar information room/ dining hall mein laga diya jaye to jin logo ko yeh class mein shamil hona hai unko is lesson ko attend karne mein zyada ruchi rahegi.
2. **Class ke Dauran.** Class chalate samay ruchi kayam is prakar rakh sakte hain:-

(aa) **Vastvikta.** Lesson mein vastvikta (realism) honi chahiye e.g. rifle fire mein blank round fire karke, bicart strip istemal karke darshana.

(ab) **Competition.** Har ek admi ki dili tamanna hoti hai ki woh dusre se achha kare. Is ka faida uthate hue ham class ki ruchi competition rakh kar bada sakte hain.

(ac) **Kism (variety).** Lesson ko is tarah se chalaya jaye ki class bore na ho e.g. questions puchkar ya PWT, CWT ke tarike se aur training aid ka istemal karke.

(ad) **Safalta ka Ahsas.** Har ek admi ki yeh ichha hoti hai ki woh jane ki woh kaisa kam kar raha hai isliye ek instr ko class ki ruchi banaye rakhne ke liye class ko batate rahe ki koun student achha kaam kar raha aur koun nahi aur kisko kitni mehnat ki jarurat hai.

(ae) **Hansi Majak.** Yeh class ko taro-taja karti hai parantu yeh bhadda ya bahut jyada nahi hona chahiye aur class ke upar jabarjasti nahi thopa jana chahiye.

(iii) **Cl ke Bad.** Cl ke baad quiz, oral ya written test, exercise ya OTW aur utsaha jagakar, dilchaspi paida karne mein madad karti hai e.g. Is course mein aap log course mein achhi grading pane ke liye test mein achha karne ke liye class mein kafi dilchaspi lete hai.

1. **Indrion ka Istemal (use of senses).** Admion ki panch indrion mein se jitni jyada indrion ka ek admi istemal karta hai woh us baat ko utni hi achhi tarah se samajh ta hai. Ham sikhlai ke dauran admi ki sabhi indrion ka istemal to nahi kar pate lekin unmen se kuch indrion ka istemal trg aid ki madad se karwa sakte hai. Training aid ki madad se indrion ka istemal kis prakar karaya jata hai aapko dusre LD mein vistar mein bataya jayega. Lekin aapki thodi jankari ke liye kuch trg aid is prakar hai:-
   1. **Sunane Wale.** PA eqpt, tape recorder etc.
   2. **Dekhne Wale.** Charts, model, slide etc.
   3. **Sparsh Karne Wale.**Hathiyar ke upar handling.
   4. **Pradarshit Trg Aid.** Demo, natak, sand/ cloth model etc.
2. **Harkat (jagrukta).** Chahe instructor kitna bhi achha ho woh safal nahi ho sakta hai yadi woh class ko jagruk nahi rakh sakta. Class ko ham harkat dekar jagruk rakh sakte hai. Class ki harkat do qism ki ho sakti hai:-
   * 1. **Dimagi.** Yeh class se sabak ke dauran bich bich mein prashna puch kar karwai ja sakti hai.
     2. **Sharirik.** Yeh class ko sharirik harkat karwakar kiya ja sakta hai e.g. hathiyar ke upar abhyas.
3. **Prashna uttar ka tariqa:-**

(i) **Class se prashna puchne ke niyam.** Instructor jab bhi prashna puche to in baton ko dhyan rakhe:-

(aa) Prashna pura aur saaf ho.

(ab) Puri class ko sunai dena chahiye.

(ac) Prashna pahle puri cl se puchna chahiye phir ek student ka naam lekar jawab dene ke liye kahe.

(ad) Prashna ek ke baad dusre students se ek line mein na puche. (ae) Yadi do student jinke naam liye hai jawab na de saken to khud class ko jawab batay.

* + 1. **Class Dwara puche hue Prashna.** Yadi class se kai student prashna puche to instructor ko is prakar karwai karni chahiye:-

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| (aa) | Prashna puchne wale vidhyarthi ko badawa do. |
| (ab) | Use aur aram se prashna puchne ke liye kaho. |
| (ac) | Use prashna banane mein madad karo. |
| (ad) | Puche gaye prashna ko dohrao aur cl se uska uttar pucho. |
| (ae) | Yadi class ko uska uttar pata nahin hai to uska uttar batao. |
| (af) | Yadi pucha gaya prashna subject ka na ho parantu samajhdari |

ka ho to sankshep mein batao.

(ag) Bevakufi wale prashna puchne wale ko badawa mat do.

* + 1. **Class ke uttar par Karhwai.** Yadi class ka koi student instructor ke prashna ka uttar is prakar de ki uska matlab sahi nikalta ho to use sahi mana jaye kyon ki yeh jaruri nahi hai ki prashna ke uttar ka ek ek shabd rate hue tarike se mile jo ki kitab mein likha hai.

1. **Insani Batein.** Gyan ke alawa ek instructor mein kuch ek khubion ka hona bhi jaruri hai jo ki usko class ke saath vyavahar mein madad karti hai. Ek instructor ki khubian aur use apne students ke saath kis prakar ka vyavahar karna chahiye, isse iss lesson ke bhag do mein bataya jayega.
2. **Sadharanta.** Ek achhe instr ko kisi bhi mushkil se mushkil vishay ko class ke star ke mutabik itni sadharan tariqe se samjhana chahiye ki class use asani se samajh saken.

(j) **Samajh ki Jaanch.** Sikhlai ke dauran yeh jaruri hai ki Instructor samay, samay par yeh jaanch kare ki class ne sabak ko kitna samjha hai. Yeh jaanch

karne ke kya karan hai aur yeh kyon jaruri hai, yeh is prakar hai:-

(i) **Karan.**Samajh ki jaanch karne ke yeh karan hai:-

(aa) Sikhne walon ke liye badhawa ka kam karti hai kyon ki jab woh sahi jawab deta hai to use yakin ho jata hai ki woh lesson ko samajh gaya hai.

(ab) **Samajh ki Jankari.** Instructor ko yeh pata chal jata hai ki uska padaya gaya lesson class ko kitna samajh mein aa raha hai.

(ac) **Safalta ka Ahasas.** Jab ek lesson class ko samajh mein aa jata hai to instructor aur vidyarthion donon ko hi safalta ka ahsas hota hai.

(ad) **Kitna Extra Coaching ki Jarurat hai.** Vidyarthion ne sabak ko kitna samjha hai isko dekhte hue instr yeh anuman laga sakta hai ki class ko kitne extra coaching ki jarurat hai.

(ii) **Samajh ki jaanch ke Hisse.** Samajh ki jaanch ka ek instructor teen hisson mein baant kar sakta hai:-

(aa) **Shuru Mein.** Yeh yakin karne ke liye ki class sikhlai pane ke liye taiyar hai ya nahi e.g. PWT lesson mein dohrai.

(ab) **Cl ke Dauran.** Sabak ke kisi bhi bhag/ hisse ke khatam hone ke bad aur agle bhag/ lesson ke shuru karne se pahle.

(ac) **Akhri Mein.** Yeh yakin karne ke liye ki class pura lesson samajh gaya hai yeh prashna puchkar, quiz test lekar kar sakte hai.

**Instructor ki Khubian**

2. Kisi bhi class ki safalta ek instructor(instr) ke upar nirbhar karti hai. Ek instr mein koun koun se khubian honi chahiye aur use apne class se kis tarah ka vyavahar rakhna chahiye, is prakar hai:-

(a) **Instr ki Khubian.**Ek instr mein nimnlikhit khubian hona awashyak hai:-

1. **Dhancha (Bearing).** Jaise hi ek instr class ke samne aata hai vidhyarthi instr ke kuch bolne se pahile hi usko janchna (judge karna) suru kar deta hai.Isliye ek instr ka achha bearing hona jaruri hai. Ek achhe fauji bearing ko kayam rakhne ke liye instr ko hamesha achhi tarah (turned out) dress pahanna chahiye, chust, hansmukh rahna chahiye aur uska class ke saath achha vyavahar hona chahiye.
2. **Josh/ Dilchaspi (Enthusiasm).** Josh ek admi se dusre admi mein failta hai. Isliye agar instr mein josh/ dilchaspi hai to class mein bhi iska hona swabhavik hai. Illiye ek instr ko chahe koi sabak pasand na ho to bhi class ke samne nahi dikhna chahiye.
3. **Awaj.** Bilkul saaf hona chahiye aur bahut dhime ya bahut tej nahi hona chahiye. Yadi PA eqpt ka istemal kiya ja raha hai to use thik se adjust karna chahiye.
4. **Bolne ka Dhang (Delivery).** Bolne ka dhang ek kala hai. Isliye ek instr ko iska abhyas karke apni adaton mein shamil karna chahiye. Dhyan mein rakhne wali batein is prakar se hai:-

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| (aa) | Thik speed. |
| (ab) | Vakyo ke bich mein thahrao. |
| (ac) | Mukhya baton par jor. |
| (ad) | Sidhi sadi bhasa. |
| (ae) | Bekar ki batein ( takya kalam) jaise ki achha phir, soche aur |

batayen, aadi shabdon ka istemal nahi karna chahiye.

1. **Sahan shilta (patience).** Har class mein alag alag star ke vidhyarthi hote hai. Isliye yadi kisi ko koi baat samajh mein na aye to instr ko kabhi gussa ya chahare par pareshani nahi dikhni chahiye balki us student ki madad karni chahiye.
2. **Hansi Majak.** Is gun ka ek instr mein hona nihayat hi jaruri hai,Hansi majak aisa hona chahiye jo ki class ki pasand ka ho lekin ek class mein hansi majak bahut zyada nahi hona chahiye aur gande kism ka nahi hona chahiye.
3. **Bharosa.** Ek instr ko apni kabliyat par bharosa hona chahiye aur kabhi bhi ghabrana nahi chahiye.
4. **Gyan.** Instr jo kuch padane ja raha hai use uske bare mein gahrai se gyan hona chahiye aur gyan ke saath saath usme kisi bhi baat ko aasani se class ko samajhne ki kabliyat honi chahiye.
5. **Hav Bhav( Gestures & mannerism).** Yadi ek instr kabhi kabhi kisi jaruri baat ko samjhne ke liye koi harkat karta hai to thik hai lekin yadi woh koi bhi harkat yadi bar bar karta hai jaise ki sir ko khujana, (cl ke samne) muncho par haath lagana, pointer ke saath khelna, ankh band karna etc, toh yeh galat hai kyonki aisi harkat class ka dhyan batanti hai.
6. **WT Instr ki Khubian.** Instr ki khubion ke alawa ek WT instr mein in khubion ka hona bhi jaruri hai:-
   1. **Wpn Handling.** Ek instr ki wpn handling bahut hi unche darje ki honi chahiye.
   2. **Trg Aid ka Istemal.** Ustad ko yeh malum hona chahiye ki use koun se trg aid kis samay par, kaise aur kahan se cl ko dikhana chahiye.
   3. **Galti Pakarne aur use dur Karne ki Kabliyat.** Ek WT instr mein itni kabliyat honi chahiye ki woh koi bhi student yadi koi choti bhi galti kare to use pakar sake aur use dur karwa sake.
7. **Instr ka Class ke Saath Vyvahar.** Instr ko class ke saath vyavahar karte samay inn baaton ka dhyan rakhna chahiye:-
   1. **Class ko Janana.**Instr ko apni class ke sabhi students ka naam malum hona chahiye aur unke naam lekar hi bulana chahiye. Instr ko class ke har student ki sikhlai ki baaton mein kamjori aur unke aache kam ke bare mein jankari honi chahiye aur samay samay par use students ko inke bare mein batate rahna chahiye.
   2. **Sahakarmion se nishtha.** Kabhi bhi dusre instr ki burai ya unke bare mein buri baat cl ke samne nahin karni chahiye. Sabhi instr ka aapas ka mel milap achha hona chahiye.
   3. **Dostana Vyavahar.** Ek instr ko kabhi bhi puri class ki taraf ya kisi ek student ke upar gusse wala ya hamesha dantne wala rukh nahin apnana chahiye. Aur kabhi bhi apne aap ko bahut bada aadmi sochkar kisi ki be-izzati nahin karna chahiye. Class ke saath aise vyavahar hona chahiye ki class instr ko apna samjhe usse koi bhi subject ko puchne mein madad mang sake. Instr jab kisi student ki galti ko dur karwana hai to is prakar se karwana chahiye ki student ko lage ki woh uski madad kar raha hai aur use samjha raha hai.
   4. **Uphas na Karna.** Kisi bhi aadmi ko yeh pasand nahi hota hai ki koi uska majak udaye. Isliye kisi bhi student ka cl ke saamne majak nahi udana chahiye.
   5. **Tarafdari ya Pakshpat na Karna. (Avoid favouratism).**Kabhi bhi vidhyarthion ke saath pakshpat nahin karna chahiye ki yeh mere gaon ka hai, unit ka hai, Regt ka hai etc. Aisa karne se vidhyarthion mein asantushtata fail jati hai. Shuru mein to jinko instr madad nahin karte hain wahi instr ko izzat nahin karega parantu baad mein jinko instr madad karte hain wo bhi unki izzat nahi karte hai.
   6. **Satta na Marna (Never bluff).** Waise to ek instr ko jo kuch bhi ho woh pada raha hai uska bahut achha gyan hona chahiye lekin kabhi kabhi ho sakta hai use kisi bat ka pata na ho, aise samay mein use class ko batana chahiye ki woh us baat ka pata lagakar batayega aur use yeh yakin karna chahiye ki woh baad mein us baat ko class ko jarur bataye.

Use jis baat ka pata nahi hai uske bare mein kabhi bhi satta nahi marna chahiye.

* 1. **Zyada na Hakna /Khud ka Badappan).**  Kai log apni hamesha badhai karte hai ki maine aisa kiya vaisa kia aur bahut samay barbad kar dete hai, instr ko aise karna nahi chahiye ha yadi uska koi aisa tajurba hai jisse class ko faida ho sakta hai to use woh class ko bata sakta hai. Lekin class chalane ke samay ka dhyan rakhte hue.
  2. **Sakhti Karna (Be firm)**. Ek instr ko apno class ke saath utni sakhti baratni chahiye ki unka discp kharab na ho aur koi bhi galti karne par unki sakhtai se galti na karne ke liye kahna chahiye. Vidhiyarthion ki dil mein yeh baat kabhi nahi ane deni chahiye ki galti karne ke baad bhi use kuch nahi kaha jayega. Baad mein aisa instr hamesha students se izzat pata hai.
  3. **Meljol kisi had tak(Avoid Familiarity).** Vidhyarthi aur ek instr ka apas mein thoda meljol hona jaruri hai lekin itna nahi ki vidhyarthi instr ki izzat karna hi band kar de.

3. Aapko jo kuch aaj is lesson mein bataya gaya hai yadi aap in baton ko class lete samay dhyan mein rakhenge to yakinan hi ek achhe instr banenge. Aur ane wale samay mein is course ke dauran aur course ke baad aapko hamesha safalta milegi.

**CHAPTER – 50**

**LESSON PLAN BANANA**

**Lesson Plan Banane Se Pahle Ka Soch-Vichar**

1. Lesson plan banane se pahle agar hum gaur karen to hamen kuchh prashnon ke uttar ki jarurat paregi jaise, kya, kahan, kaise, kab, kaun aadi. Inhi se hamen lesson plan banane ka adhar milta hai.
   1. Kya padhana hai vishay aur uddesh.
   2. Date, samay aur jagah. Jagah ka vikalp bhi hona chahiye.
   3. **Student ka star.** Recruits, Young soldiers ya trained soldiers ke liye. Trained soldiers main bhi Sepoys, NCOs ya JCO's ke liye.
   4. **Tariqe.**Basic, PWT, CWT ya IWT ke tariqe se.
   5. **Trg aids.** Kin-kin training aids ki zarurat paregi.
   6. **Samay ki yojna.**Samay ko yojna baddh tariqe se pura upyog kiya jaye.
   7. **Bandobasti karwai.**Saman, Gadhi, pani, khana aadi ki aawashyakta.
   8. Kamzorian ya points jo pehle mahsush kie gae hon.
2. Is prakar hum dekhte hain ki in muddon par vichar karne se hamen lesson plan banane ka adhar mil jata hai.

**Lesson plan ka khaka aur usko banane ka tariqa**

1. Lesson plan ke bare main anya kuchh bhi baatcheet karne se pahle yeh janna nihayat hi jaruri hai ki uska khaka aur uske mukhya ansh kya hote hain:-
   1. Sabse upar aur baen, course, subject aur periods allotted die jayen.
   2. Upar aur dayen, syllabus ref, subject ref, period No die jayen.
   3. Lesson plan ke columns - Iske antargat nimn shamil hai:-
      1. Ser No.
      2. Bhag ( Tartib).
      3. Pathaya samagri/vistaar(Teaching points).
      4. Training Aids.
      5. Samay(Time) - Ismein actual aur running time darshaya jata hai.
      6. **Remarks.** Yeh column sabse mahatwapurna column hota hai jiske antargat instr ke lie hidayaten di jati hain.
2. Yeh janne ke baad ki lesson plan ka khaka kaisa hota hai, ab hum lesson plan banane ke lie karwai kis prakar ki jati hai, uske bare main janenge:-
   1. Precis, GS pamphlet se material ikkatha karen.
   2. Sabak ka uddesh aur samay ko madya nazar rakhte hue jaruri bhagon mein baant karen.
   3. Har ek bhag ke ant mein kuchh sawal aur jawab shamil kar lie jayen. Isse instr ko class ka star pata chal jata hai.
   4. Training aids ka istemal.
   5. Har ek bhag ke saath samay ka bantwara kar dia jaye. (Actual aur Running donon)
   6. Kisi bhi pradarshan ko jarurat ke anusar shamil kia jaye. Ise se behtar hoga ki pradarshan bhag ke ant main ya lesson ke ant main rakha jaye.
   7. Sankshep ant mein awashya kia jaye.
   8. In sabko milakar rough lesson plan ban jayega.

(j) Rehearsal agar jarurat ho to kar lia jaye.

(k) Fair lesson plan bana lia jaye.

1. Lesson plan banate waqt kuchh jaruri baten jinko dhyan main rakhna chahiye woh is prakar hain :-
   1. Point form main ho.
   2. Training aids ko dahine column main awashyakta ke anusar shamil kia jaye.
   3. Sawal aur jawab ke lie paryapt samay ho.
   4. Sawal/Jawab pure likhe jayen.
   5. Bhumika aur sankshep ko bhi pura likh sakte hain.
   6. Instr ke lie hidayaten remarks column main di jayen, Iske antargat woh sab hidayaton di ja sakti hain, jo ki instr ki madad karengi.
   7. Fauji tartib aur tarika se lesson plan banaya jaye tatha saaf suthra ho.

**PWT/IWT Lesson Plan se Sambandhit Hidayaten aur Jaruri Baten**

1. PWT lesson plan se sambandhit jaruri baten is prakar hain:-
   1. **Shuru-Shuru ka kam.**Basic lesson ke mutabiq ho Nirikshan aur Bandobast.
   2. **Uddesh.**Abhyas dena hai. Udaharan di jaiye.
   3. **Yad dilao.**Sawal/Jawab class ke star ke mutabiq hon.
   4. **Namuna.** Sabse mahatwapurn bhag par dia jaye.
   5. **Abhyas.**Class ki kamzorion ko madya nazar rakhte hue abhyas karwaen. Jin karwaion par abhyas dene ho uska ullekh karen.
   6. **Test.** Dhyan rakhe ki abhyas di gai karwai main se hi kisi par test karwaya jaye. Sharten awashya di jayen.
   7. **Mukabala.** Ismein bhi yeh dhyan rakha jaye ki yeh vastvik aur vividhta purn ho. Yeh bhi jaruri hai ki karwai aur tarika aisa chuna jaye ki sabke lie barabar ho. Sharton ka ullekh remarks coln main karna chahiye.
   8. **Sankshep.** Shak aur sawalon ka jawab den aur uske pashchat class ko unke actual star bataen. Unki kamzorion ko gaur karen aur jarurat ke anusar tatha class ki karwai ke anusar unka hausla badhaen.
2. IWT lesson plan se sambandhit jaruri baten is prakar hain:-
   1. **Shuru-Shuru ka kam.** Basic aur PWT lesson ke mutabiq hi.
   2. **Uddesh.** Hathiyar ki handling main aur bhi abhyas dena hai.
   3. **Hidayten.** Is bhag main sabak se sambandhit sabhi hidayten class ko di jayen. Saath hi class ko batain jayen. Jaise - drill ammunition ka istemal karne, asli tgt ka na hona zamin ki banawat ki bandishen.
   4. **Zor Dene Wali Baten.** Aise mudde jin par aap zor dena chahte hai wah students ko bata dia jata hai. Jaise Morcho ka sahi chunav aur istemal, fasle ka sahi anuman lagana. Instr ki madad ke lie sabak se sambandhit kyakya batein check karni chahiye, remarks column main di jayen.
   5. **Larai ki Halaat.** Ismein zamini nishan aur larai ki tactical halaat ke bare main students ko bataya jata hai. Yad rahe ki larai ki halaat mein adhik samay na lagaya jaye aur use saral aur asani se samjhane yogya banaya jaye. Instr ke lie saath-saath hidayaten remarks coln mein di jayen. Inhe pura likha jaye.
   6. **Yad Dilao.** Sabak se sambandhit sawal jawab pura likha jaye. Ismein minor tactics ke sawal bhi shamil karna chahiye.
   7. **Abhyas.** Is bhag par sabse adhik samay dia jaye aur pure sabak par karwai karai jaye. Ismein sabse adhik zor tactical baton ke saath, hathiyar ki handling par ho.
3. Sabak ko tartibwar chalane ke liye aur samay ka pura aur sahi istemal karne ke lie yeh jaruri hai ki vishay se sambandhit lesson plan bana lia jaye. Aisa karne se faidon ke bare main ab adhik batane ki awyashakta nahin hai. Ise hum dekh chuke hain. Kisi bhi sabak ko sucharu roop se chalane ke lie, ek nape-tule star ko kayam rakhne ke liye aur instr avam VIPs ki sahuliat ke lie lesson plan ka bana lena ati awashyak hota hai. Iske mahatwa ko asani se nazarandaz nahin kia ja sakta hai.

**CHAPTER – 51**

**WEAPON TRAINING PROGRAMME BANANA**

**WT Pgme Banane se Pahle Sochvichar**

1. Waise to WT Pgme banana bahut saral kam lagta hai lekin sahi mudda haasil karne ke lie kafi sochvichar ki zarurat parti hai.
2. Nimnlikhit muddon par sochvichar bahut zaruri hai:-

(a) Uddesh.

* 1. Employability.
  2. Pahunch.
  3. Samay.
  4. Star.

**Uddesh**

1. Kisi bhi training programme se achha natija haasil karne ke lie zaruri hai ki training ka uddesh pata ho. Yeh uddesh aamtaur par Battalion mein saaf shabdon mein bataya jata hai. Uddesh ke dwara hamen training programme ke bahari khake ki jankari ho jati hai. Yeh chotta aur saaf hona chahiye. Udaaharan ke taur par uddesh ho sakta hai, Nk to Hav promotion cadre ke liye training programme banana, kisi hathiyar ke new entrance ka training programme, Young soldier ke lie Platoon Weapons Cadre itiyadi. Lekin uddesh se bhi jyada ahmiyat ki cheez ek jawan ke employability hai.

**Employability**

1. Kisi bhi training programme ko banane se pahle yeh janna hai ki trainingmein shamil hue jawan training safalta purvak karne ke baad kis auhde par kam karenge. Training programme ko is tarah se banaya jaye ki ek jawan apne har auhde par diya hua task ko achhi tarah se kar sake. Training programme mein woh sab sabak shamil kiye jaye jinki use bhavishya men jarurat paregi.

**Pahunch**

1. Uddesh aur employability ka khaka saaf ho jane ke bad zaruri hai ki hum pahluon par vichar karen jo ham training khatam ho jane ke bad chahte hain ki jawan un par mahir ho jaye. Iska wasta seedha block syllabus se hota hai. Yeh sab woh pahlu hota hai jinko training programme mein shaamil hona zaruri hai. Yeh saaf shabdon men likha hona chahiye.

**Samay**

1. Training ka achha natija haasil karne ke lie pahle training ki tazwiz bana leni chahiye aur baad mein samay ki bant karne chahiye. Lekin yeh adhiktar nahi ho pata hai aur diye hue samay mein training chalane parti hai. Isliye yahan par bahut sujh bujh ki zarurat hoti hai. yadi samay ki kami ho to bahut samajhdari se training programme mein A/N periods shamil kiye jane chahiye. Agar night training bhi deni hai jo ki apko training programme banane ke hukam dene wale spasht karenge to apko night trainin ke periods bhi,"samay sarni mein shamil karne padenge.

**Star**

1. Training programme banane se pahle students ka star pata hona zaruri hai. Star se hi subject aur lesson ka chunao kiya jata hai. Lekin dhyan rahe students ka nimn star hai to cadre ka uddesh mein phark nahin parna chahiye. Koshish yeh honi chahiye ki students ki training is tarah se di jaye ki uska star uncha ho aur trg ka uddesh haasil ho jaye.
2. Training ko theek tarah se chalane ke lie kuch adm bandobast ki baton par bhi sochvichar karna zaruri hai jo ki is prakar hai:-
   1. Students ki nafri.
   2. Instructor ki kabilyat, unke nafri aur unhe jaruratsudha standard tak lane ke liye samay.
   3. Training ground, lecture hall, range aur field firing range ki suvidha.
   4. Transport.
   5. Training ke dauran koi rukawat
   6. Training aids ki zarurat squadewise hisab lagana chahiye maslan ek squad mein 8 students hain to drill cartridge ki zarurat 5/10 per student hai to ek squad ke lie 8 black boards ki zarurat padegi.

**Weapon Training programme Banane ki Tartib Aur Tarika**

1. Training programme bahut sochvichar ke baad banaya jata hai aur har admi isko alag alag tarah se banata hai lekin training programme mein koi galti na ho aur ant mein training ka uddesh pura ho jaye islie training programme ko 6 stage mein banaya jata hai. Yeh stage is prakar hai:-
   1. Time plan.
   2. Block syllabus.
   3. Detailed syllabus.
   4. Block time table.
   5. Work chart aur check sheet.
   6. Weekly training programme.

**Time Plan**

1. Yadi diye hue samay ke andar training ko pura karna ho to jaruri hai ki hame pata chal jaye ki puri training kitne periods ke andar karna hai.

**Block Syllabus**

1. Uddesh, scope aur samay ka pata chal jane ke baad jaruri hai ki un subject ka chunao kiya jaye jo ki training mein shamil kiya jayenge. Yeh woh stage hai jisme training ka mudda haasil karne ke liye subject ko periods allot liye jate hai.
2. Kuch baten jinmen soch vichar ki jarurat hai weh is prakar hai:-
   1. Shamil kiye jane wale subject/weapon.
   2. Periods ki bant.
3. **Dhyan mein rahne wali baten is prakar hain**
   1. Training ko dhyan mein rakhte hue revision, spare, test adi ke liye bhi periods diye jane chahiye.
   2. Firing ko ek alag subject banana chahiye.
   3. Day, A/N aur Night periods ke liye alag alag column hona chahiye.
   4. Khara total (grand total) Time plan mein diya hua kul periods se milan chahiye.
   5. Yadi periods time plan se jyada ho jate hain to unki badli abhi na karke detailed syllabus banane ke baad ki jaye.
   6. Har subject ko sahi code diya jaye.

**Detailed Syllabus**

1. Is stage mein ek subject ko diya hue periods ko alag alag lesson mein bantna hota hai. Detailed syllabus har subject ke lie banaya jata hai. (spare ko chod kar).
2. **Sochvichar karne wali batein**
   1. Uddesh ko haasil karne ke liye sabak ka chanao aur periods ki sankhya.
   2. Sabakon ko chalane ka tariqa (methods of instructions).
   3. Subject ko soch vichar kar banane ke upay.
3. **Detailed syllabus banate samay dhyan mein rakane wali batein**
   1. Koi jaruri sabak na chut jaye.
   2. Har sabak ko jarurat suda samay diya jaye.
   3. Detailed syllabus ko usi tarah tartib se likha jaye jis tartib mein block syllabus mein subject diye hon.
   4. Sabakon is tartib se likha jaye jis tarah se padhaya jayega.
   5. Periods ka total block syllabus mein subjects ko diye hue periods se milana chahiye.
   6. Yadi periods kam par rahen hon kam ahmiyat wale sabak ya sabakon ko kam period not kar total milana chahiye. Yah karwai tab ki jaye jab kisi bhi subjects se period na bach rahe hon.
   7. Day, A/N aur Night period ke liye alag, column hon.

**Block Time Table**

1. Is stage mein training programme ko alag alag block mein banaya jata hai. Amtour par yahi hafte ke block mein banta jata hai is liye ise weekly/block time table bhi kahte hain. Block time table banane ka maqsad yahi yakin karna hai ki training tarteb war bani rahna aur dheere dheere mudde ki taraf bareh, saath hi yah bhi yakin ho jata hai ki periods ki ginti mein koi galti nahin ho rahi hai.
2. **Block syllabus banate samay soch vichar karne wali batein**
   1. Vishayon ki tartib par un ko padaya jayega.
   2. Kitna aur kaun kaun se vishay ek block/week mein padane hain.
   3. Kon se hafte mein kon se vishay padane jaruri hain.
3. **Block time table banate samay dhyan mein rakhne wali batein**
   1. Yadi training ek hafte ya isse kam ho to block time table banane ki jarurat nahin parti hai.
   2. bahut jyada vishay ya weapon ek saath ek hafte nahin rakhne chahiye.
   3. Yakin karna chahiye ki vishay tartibwar rakhe hue hon e.g. firing periods.
   4. Day A/N aur Ni pds ke liye alag alag coln banana chahiye.
   5. Periods ki bant jaise block syllabus mein.

**Work Chart aur Check Sheet**

1. Har block ke liye work chart aur check sheet banayi jati hai. Yadi block hafte ke hisab se banayi gai hai to ise bhi banana chahiye. Work chart ko banane se sabkon ko tartib war padaya ja sakta hai. Weekly work chart aur check sheet har din chalne wale sabkon ki jankari deta hai. Isko banane se periods ki sankhya ki galti bhi pakri jati hai.
2. **Weekly work chart aur check sheet banate samay soch vichar karne walibatein**
   1. Hafte mein har din kitne aur kaun kaun se vishay parhane hai.
   2. Is vishayon ke har din kaun kaun sabak shaamil karne hain.
3. **Weekly work chart aur check sheet banate samay dhyan mein rakhne walibatein**
   1. Bahut jiyada vishay ek din mein na padhaye jaye.
   2. Yadi training ki tarikh pahile se niyukta ki hui hai to work chart ko har tarikh ke liye banaya jaye, nahin to D day ke liye banta jaye. Har hafte ke lie alag alag banaya jaye.
   3. Har lesson ka code reference aur periods ki sankhya likhi jaye.
   4. Yadi A/N ya Ni pds ho to uske jankari dijaye.

**Weekly Training programme**

1. Yeh training programme banane ka akhri stage hai, jiske adhar par training chalta hai. Isme woh sabhi jankari shamil hoti hain jiski jaurat instructor, students, training aur adm staff ko parti hai. Ismen abhi tak ki karwai ko ek rup dena hota hai.
2. **Weekly training programme banate samay sochvichar karne wali batein**
   1. Har prashikshan ke liye unchit samay.
   2. Unchit Jagah.
   3. Sabak chalane ki zimmewari.
3. **Weekly training programme banate samay dhyan mein rakhne wali batein**
   1. Saral aur kathin sabak theek dhang se milaye jaye.
   2. Kathin sabak subah chalaye jaye.
   3. Pura din ek hi tarah ke vishay nahin chalane chahiye.
   4. Training programme mein istemal hue abbreviation ka bayan legend mein hona chahiye.
   5. Jahan tak ho sake LD subah honi chahiye.
4. Unit mein aise kai mauke ate hain jab ki training programme banane ki jarurat parti hai. Training programme is tarah banana chahiye joki ek jawan ki kabliyat ko unche darje ki oar le jaye. Is baat ko hamesha dhyan rakhna chahiye ki ladai men jeet uski hi hoti hai jisne achha prashikshan prapt kiya ho jo ki achhi tartibwar training par nirbhar karta hai.

**CHAPTER – 52**

**INSTRUCTIONAL AID AUR UNKA ISTEMAL**

1. **Instructional Aids.** Koi bhi aisi vastu ya saman joki ek vishaye ko vistar se samjhane ya uski vishestayen aur uske gunon ka bayan karne ke liye instructor dwara istemal kiya jata hai, use instructional aids kahte hain. Udaaharan ke liye pointer, models, charts, slide,projector adi. Dhyan dene wali baat yeh hai ki ek instructional aid apne aap trg nahin deta hai, balki inka istemal karte hue instructor students ko vishay samjhata hai.
2. **Instructional Aid ki Kismen.** Weapon training mein kai prakar ke instructional aid istemal kiye jate hain:-
   1. Sunai dene wala.
   2. Dekhai dene wala.
   3. Mans peshiyon ke istemal wala.
   4. Ayojit.
3. Inki kismon ke bare mein ek ek karke baat karte hain.
   1. **Sunai Dene Wala.** Sunai dene wale instructional aids ke udaaharan is

prakar se hain:-

* + 1. Audio cassettes.
    2. PA Eqpt.
    3. Lectures.
  1. **Dekhai Dene Wale Trg Aids.** Udaaharan is prakar se hain:-
     1. Charts (Diagram wale ya likhe hue).
     2. Boards (black boards,megnetic boards ityadi).
     3. Television.
     4. Training films.
     5. Model.
     6. Slides.

(vii) Demonstration.

* 1. **Manspeshiyon Ke Istemal se Sambandhit.** Yeh woh instructional aid hote hain jismen sarir ki harkat shaamil hoti hai. Wpn trg ke dauran aise trg aids ka adhik se adhik istemal hona chahiye kyonki ek vyakti jitna khud handling karke seekh sakta hai utna sun kar ya dekhkar nahi seekh sakta. Iske udaaharan is prakar se hain:-
     1. Weapon.
     2. Equipment.
     3. Simulator
     4. Models.
  2. **Ayojit (organised).** Ek se jyada instructional aids ki kism ko istemal karte hue jo trg di jati hai use ayojit trg kahte hain. Is tarah ki trg ke liye kafi bandobast ki zarurat hoti hai. Udaaharan ke liye :-
     1. Drama.
     2. Sandmodels.
     3. IWT.
     4. lecture/demo.

**Instructional Aids Ke Istemal Ka Tarika**

1. Bhartiya sena mein WT ke liye teen prakar se sabak chalaye jate hain Basic, PWT ya CWT aur IWT, jo student ke darje par nirbhar karte hain. Instructor chahe kisi bhi tarike se sabak chalaye, use sabak se pahle yeh soch vichar kar lena chahiye ki woh sabak ko chalane ke liye kaun-kaun se instructional aids ka istemal kis tarah aur kab karega.
2. Sabak chahe basic se chalaya jaye ya PWT/CWT ya IWT se, instructional aids ke istemal ka tarika ek jaisa hi rahta hai kewal unki ahmiyat PWT/CWT/IWT ke dauran alag alag hote hai.Inhe niche explain kiya gaya hai:-
   1. **Models.** Yeh zaruri hai ki sabak chalane se pahle instructor apna soch vichar kar le ki sabak mein kon se hisse ko samajhne ke liye models ki zarurat padagi, taaki woh pahle se hi models ka bandobast kar le , models kewal usi ka banana chahiye jisko student hathiyar par na dekh sakta ho. Jaise ki LMG ki zeroing ko samajhne ke liye foresight ke model ka proyog. Sectionised hathiyar ka istemal bhi model ke taur par kia ja sakta hai udaaharan ke liye rif mein locking aur unlocking ki karwai ko samjhne ke liye sectionised rif ka proyog.
   2. **Charts.** Charts ka prayog us samay kiya jana chahiye jis samay ek vishay ke bare mein kai khas baton ko batana ho. Udaaharan ke liye INSAS rif ki vishestaien batane ke liye chart ka prayog. Charts ko banate ya istemal karte samay niche di gai baton ko dhyan mein rakhna chahiye:-
      1. Charts ko bare aksharon mein likhna chahiye taaki sab dekh aur parh saken.
      2. Charts achhi tarah se tanga hona chahiye, takhi hawa se na ure.
      3. Charts tabhi khole jayen jab dikhana ho.
      4. Charts ko class ke kisi students se parahe jaye.
      5. Charts banate samay alag alag rangon ka istemal karna chahiye.
      6. Charts mein koi galtiya na ho.
      7. Charts ko kholkar usse stand ke saath bandh dena chahiye.
   3. **Boards.** Boards kai prakar ke ho sakte hain jaise ki, pahle se likha ya diagram banaya gaya boards jinko charts ki tarah hi istemal karna chahiye, magnetic boards, black boards. Jyadatar ek ustad dwara black board ke istemal ka tarika aana chahiye. Black board ka istemal karte samay dhyan mien rakhne wali baten:-
      1. Yadi instructor dahine hath se likhta hai to board ke dahine ho ya iska ulta.
      2. Instructor likhte samay baat na Karen.
      3. Bara akshron mein likhna chahiye.
      4. Alag-Alag rangon ke chalk ka istemal karen. (Yellow, white, Pink, Red,

Brown, Green, Violet, Blue)

* + 1. Tasvir pahle se hi pencil se board par bana li jaye.
  1. **Pointer.** Pointer ka istemal kewal sanket ke liye kiya jaye na ki dande ki tarah. Pointer ko istemal karte samay dhyan mein rakhne wali baten is prakar se hain:-
     1. Zarurat ke anusar thik size ka pointer istemal kiya jaye.
     2. Pointer kewal kisi chiz/chart /board ko dekhne ke liye karen, phir wapas rakh den.
     3. Pointer ko hilate nahin rahna chahiye.
  2. **Demo Troops ya Students ka Istemal.** Weapon training ke dauran kai ek lesson aise hain jiske dauran mushkil baton ko samjhne ke liye agar demo tps ya students ka istemal kiya jaye to class ko asani se samajh mein aa jata hai saath hi trg practical aur dilchasp banai ja sakti hai.Udaaharan ke liye leed lena aur hat kar shist lena sikhne ke lie demo tps/students ka istemal, aur IWT lesson mein dushman ko darshane ke liye demo tps ka istemal.

1. Instructional aids ka istemal kewal ek vishay ko vistar se samjhne ke liye kiya jata hai aur yeh instructor ki madad ke liye hote hain. Instructional aids apne aap trg nahin de sakte aur na hi instructor ki jagah le sakte hain. Ek WT instructor ko class ka darja madhya nazar rakhte hue instructional aids ka istemal karna chahiye. Instructional aids saral, samajhne mein asan aur akarshak hona chahiye.

**CHAPTER - 53**

**PWT, CWT AUR COMPOSITE PERIODS**

1. Hamari sikhlai ka uddesh hai ki jawanon ko is tarah sikhlai di jaye ki woh larai ki har halaton mein apne hathiyar ko durust istemal karte huye dushman ko barbad kar saken. Isi karan hamari fauj mein sikhlai lagatar di jati hai. Sikhlai ka tariqa auhde ke saath badalta jata hai. Hamari koshish yehi hoti hai ki sikhlai rochak bani rahe. Haasil ki gayi training ke lihaj se jawanon ko teen categories men bant sakte hain:-
   1. **Recruit.** Yeh ek naya jawan hota hai jise fauj ki har cheej ki jankari deni parti hai. ( Regt Centre mein recruits aur IMA, OTA mein Gentleman Cadets).
   2. **Young Soldiers.** Aise soldiers jinko basic sikhlai ki jankari hoti hai lekin thora abhyas aur anubhav ki jarurat hoti hai.
   3. **Trained Soldiers.** Weapon training mein mahir jawan jin mein anubhav aur atmavishwas ki kami na ho.
2. Yeh swabhawik baat hai ki yadi sabhi tarah ke jawanon ki sikhlai ka tarika ek hi ho to sabak mein ruchi kam ho jayegi. Jawan se unche darje ka kaam lene ke liye unche darje ki training dena zaruri hai. Training ka darja auhde ke saath saath barhta jana chahiye. WT mein basic ke tarike se aap waqfiat hain. Iss lesson mein kuch annya tarikon se training dene ke bare mein jankari de jayegi.

**PWT Ka Tarika**

1. PWT tarike ki jankari haasil karne se pahle zaruri hai ki basic tarike ki kamiyon ki jankari ho.
2. **Basic lesson ke kamiyan.**
   1. Young soldiers ka dhyan class mein nahin lagta hai kyonki unhen sabak ki jankari pahle se hi hoti hai.
   2. Basic tarike mein samay ki barbadi hoti hai kyonki ustad ko har baat ko bahut bariki se samjhana parta hai.
   3. Student dwara hathiyaron ki handling ke liye bahut kam samay milta hai.
   4. Achhe aur kamjor students ko alag nahin kar sakte.
3. Upar di gayi kamiyon ko dur karne ke liye aur sabak ko rochak banaye rakhne ke liye PWT ke tarike ka istemal kiya jata hai. Is tarike ka istemal young soldiers ko training dene ke liye kiya jata hai. Is tarike se ek jawan ko Weapon handling ka jyada abhyas milta hai aur woh usmen unche darje ki dakshta pane ka prayas karta hai. Is tarike se sikhlai dene ke liye zarurat hai ki tamam jawanon ki naukari saman ho aur unka weapon handling ka darja ek jaisa ho. PWT se nimn baton ka yakin kiya jata hai:-
   1. Sikhlai ke dauran students ko hathiyaron ki handling ka jyada mauka milta hai.
   2. Ustad ka bayan kam hota hai aur woh students ki kamiyon par dhyan deta hai aur unko dur karne mein abhyas deta hai.
   3. Sabak ke prati students ki ruchi bani rahti hai kyonki test aur muqabla karwaya jata hai.

**Sabak ki Banawat**

1. PWT ka sabak, ek akele sabak ka bhi chalaya ja sakta hai aur kuchh sabakon ko mila kar bhi chalaya ja sakta hai. Jab chand ek sabakon ko milakar chalaya ja raha ho to nimn baaton ka dhyan rakhna chahiye:-
   1. Jo sabak milaye ja rahen hon to unmen aapasi sambandh ho jaise 5.56mm INSAS rifle ko kholna jorna, shist, pakar aur fire ke abhyas ko jor sakte hain. Kyonki is sikhlai mein ek tartib banti hai aur pahli karwai dusri karwai ko sikhlane mein madad deti hai.
   2. Bahut jyada sabakon ko na jora jaye kiyonki aisa karne se sabak kathin ho jayega aur mudda haasil nahin hoga.
   3. Sabak ka mudda aur sikhlai ki baton ko dhyan mein rakhkar samay allot karen.
2. **PWT ki class ko chalane ki tartib.**
   1. Shuru shuru ka kaam.
   2. Uddesh.
   3. Yad dilao.
   4. Namuna.
   5. Abhyas.
   6. Test.
   7. Mukabala.
   8. Sankshep.

**Shuru Shuru Ka Kam**

1. Sabak ko bina rukawat ke chalane ke liye shuru shuru ki karwai ki jati hai aur is dauran nimn baton par dhyan dena chahiye:-
   1. Class dwara hathiyar aur saman ka mulaiza. Ismen yeh yakin kiya jata hai ki kya hathiyar aur saman sabak ko chalane ke liye thik halat mein hai. (b) Class dwara ginti aur groupon mein bant. Zarurat pare to deton mein bant.

**Uddesh**

1. PWT sabak ki banawat is prakar banai gayi hai jisse students ko jyada se jyada abhyas mil sake. Islie uddesh "Abhyas dena hoga".

**Yaad Dilao**

1. Yeh sawal jawab ke zariye kiya jata hai. Dohrai mein un pahluon par sawal kiya jayega jin par sabak chal chuka hai. Dohrai se sambandh rakhne wali baaten is prakar hain:-
   1. Sawal jawab mein samay jyada barbad na kiya jaye.
   2. Sawal class ke star ko dekhte hue puche jayen.
   3. Sawal aise hona chahiye jisse class ki taiyari aur star ka pata lag jaye. (d) Sawal sabak ke har pahlu par pucha jayen.

**Namuna**

1. PWT class mein ustad students ke auhde aur sikhlai ke darje ko madhya najar rakhte hue phale se hi namune ka nishchay kar leta hai. Samay ki bachat ho iske liye ustad namuna bagair bayan ke deta hai. Namuna dene se pahle ustaad dwara soch vichar karne wali batein is prakar hai :-
   1. Namuna sabak ke sabse mahatav puran pahlu par diya jaye.
   2. Jaruri hai ki namune ka abhyas ustad ne pahle se hi kiya ho taki sabak ke dauran usmein koi galti na ho.
   3. Namuna is tarah se diya jaye ki woh class ke liye ek mapdand ban jaye aur ustad class se usi darje ki ummid kare.
   4. Sabak ke dauran yadi ustad ko yeh mahsus hota hai ki class kisi aur pahlu main bhi kamjor hai to ustad ko uska bhi namuna dena chahiye.

**Abhyas**

1. Sabak ka yeh bhag sabse mahatvpuran hai aur is ke liye sabse jyada samay diya jata hai. Abhyas karte waqt ustad ko in baaton par vishesh dhyan dena chahiye.
   1. Students ki tamam faults ko ustad ko pakadna chahiye aur galtion ka ahsas karakar usi samay dur karna chahiye.
   2. Jyada matra mein hathiyaron ka istemal karna chahiye jis se jyada students ek saath abhyas kar saken.
   3. Ek saath itne students ka abhyas na karwaya jaye jis se ustad ko unki galti pakrane mein dikkat ho.
   4. Abhyas mein bahut students galti kar rahe hon to abhyas rok kar ustad dobara namuna de.
   5. Abhyas sabak ke tamam bhagon mein karwaya jaye.
   6. Abhyas ke dauran students ki chatki aur chusti ke bajaye weapon handling ki quality aur durusti par dhayan diya jaye.
   7. Abhyas ko bahut deliberately karwaya jaye.
   8. Abhyas chahe kisi bhi bhag par karwaya jaye ustad ko un sabhi galtion par dhayan dena chahiye jin ka fire par asar parta ho.

**Test**

1. Is ka uddesh class ke star ka pata karna aur sabak mein ruchi banaye rakhna hota hai. Test lete samay in baton par dhayan diya jayega:-
   1. Jis karwai par test liya ja raha ho uske bare mein class ko pahle jankari di jaye.
   2. Test ke dauran total marks aur passing marks class ko bataya jayen. Passing marks class ke standrad ko dekhte hue rakhe jayen. Un sab galtion ke jyada marks kate jayen jo fire par asar dalti hon.
   3. Ustad ko fault ek note book mein likhne chahiye aur apni yaddasht par vishvas nahi karna chahiye.
   4. Class ko vyast rakhne ke liye unko bhi fault apni apni note book mein note karne ke liye kahna chahiye.
   5. Test ka natija karwai khatam hote hi bata dena chahiye, saath saath unki galtian bhi bata deni chahiye.
   6. Dhayan rahe tamam students se test ek hi karwai par liya jaye aur woh karwai puri karwai ho.

**Muqabla**

1. Muqabala ka uddesh class mein competitive/muqable ki spirit paida karna aur ruchi ko kayam rakhna hai. Muqabala karwate waqt in baaton par dhayan den :-
   1. Muqabala hamesha puri class se ek hi karwai par karwaya jaye. (b) Muqabala time based bhi ho sakta hai aur quality based bhi. Dhayan rahe yadi time based ho to time aur quality of handling dono par dhayan diya jaye. Is liye time based muqable achhe standard wale students se hi karwaya jayen.

(c) Yadi r class crew served wpn par chal rahi ho to muqabala det wise karwaya jaye.

**Sankshep**

1. Sankshep chhota aur sabak ke sambandit baaton par ho. Sankshep mein in baton ko shamil kiya jayega:-
   1. Har jawan ki moti galtion ko bataya jaye.
   2. Class ki samanya galtion ko bataya jaye.
   3. Class ka star yadi barabar ho to bataya jaye.

**CWT METHOD**

1. PWT lesson ki kuch kamion ke karan CWT lesson ka avishkar kiya gaya. PWT lesson ki kamian is prakar hai :-
   1. Class chalane se pahle ustad ko student ke star ka pata nahi hota. Star pata karne ke liye ustad kuchh sawal puchhta hai jis se weapon handling ke star ke bare mein kuchh pata nahi chalta.
   2. Ustad dwara diye jane wala namuna pahle se hi chuna huya hota hai chahe class ki karwai us pahlu par kamjor ho ya na ho.
   3. PWT mein achchhe aur kamjor students ko alag alag sikhlai dene ka provision nahi hai.
   4. Achchhe students ke liye sikhlai ke dauran koi dusra tarika nahi hai jis wajah se unki ruchi kam ho jati hai.
   5. Kamjor students ko vishesh pahlu par sikhlai dene ka koi intzam nahi hai aur woh bunyadi taur par kamjor rah jate hain.
2. In sabhi kamiyon ko competitive weapon training ke jariye dur kiya jata hai. Is tarike ka istemal bhi PWT ki tarah hi young soldier ko sikhlai dene ke liye kiya jata hai. Is tarike ka sab se achchha natija tab haasil hota jab sikhlai pane wale jawan alag alag service level ke hon aur achchhe aur kamjor dono tarah ke students ho. Unit ke ander is tarike ka istemal ITC ke dauran kiya ja sakta hai, jahan Company ke tamam jawan ek saath training kar sakte hain.
3. **CWT se sikhlai ki tartib.** CWT se sikhlai ki tartib is prakar hai :-
   1. Shuru Shuru ka kam.
   2. Uddesh.
   3. Muqabala.
   4. Namuna.
   5. Chhote groupon mein abhyas.
   6. Test.
   7. Sankshep.

**Shuru Shuru ka Kam**

1. PWT ki tarah hi.

**Uddesh**

1. Ismein Uddesh mein "aur bhi abhyas dena" kaha jayega.

**Muqabala**

1. Muqabale ki tartib bilkul vaisi hi hai jaise PWT mein hoti hai. Muqabala ko sabak ke shuru mein rakhne ka maksad is prakar se hai:-
   1. Class ke samanya star ka pata lagana.
   2. Achchhe aur kamjor students ki pahchan karna.
   3. Sabak ke un pahluon ko pahchanana jin mein students kamjor hon taaki ustad us karwai ka namuna de saken.

**Namuna**

1. CWT mein ustad namuna pahle se mukarar karke nahin aata hai. Class ki kamjorion ko dhyan mein rakhte hue namune ka chunav bhi usi samay karta hai. Namuna dene se pahle ustad class ko bataye ki woh namuna konsi karwai par aur kyon de raha hai. Namuna ek dam durust hona chahiye taaki class uska anusaran kar sake.

**Chhotte Gorupon mein Abhyas**

1. Ustad class ke mukable ke natije ko dekhte huye, chhote chhote groupon mein banta hai. Class ko abhyas ke liye chhote groupon mein bante waqt in baaton par dhyan dena chahiye :-
   1. Achchhe students ko chhote groupon mein abhyas ke dauran supervise karne ke liye niyukt karna chahiye.
   2. Class ko utne group mein hi bantna chahiye jitna ek achha student ya jitne groupon par ustad nigrani rakh sakta hai.
   3. Har group mein barabar sikhlai ke darje wale student ho.
   4. Kamjor group ko sabse achchha student dena chahiye.
   5. Ustad groups ko aisi jagah par rakhen jahan se woh sab par nigrani rakh sake.
   6. Ustad har group ke pas jaye aur unke dwara ki gayi galtion ko dur kare. (g) Agar kamjor students par sudhar na ho raha ho to us group ka abhyas khud karwaye.

(h) Agar sabhi student ek hi galti kar rahe hon to unko bulakar namuna bhi de sakta hai.

**Test**

1. Test ki tartib bhi bilkul PWT jaise hi hai. Yadi abhyas ke dauran ustad dekhta hai ki class ka darja kamjor hai to woh abhyas ko hi jari rakh sakta hai aur test nahi karwata hai.

**Sankhsep**

1. PWT Jaise.

**Composite Period**

1. Sikhlai ka yeh tarika hamari fauj mein bahut hi kam istemal hota hai. Composite periods se sikhlai ka istemal nimnlikhit halaton mein hota hai :-
   1. Jab sikhlai ke liye zyada samay na ho.
   2. Jab zyada hathiyaron ki sikhlai kam samay mein dena ho.
2. **Composite Period tarike**. Composite Period do tarike ke hote hai :-
   1. **Country fair method.** Is tarike ka istemal us waqt kiya jata hai jab ustad ki kami na ho. Jitni tarah ke hathiyaron mein sikhlai dena hai students ko utne group mein banta jata hai.
   2. **Round Robin Method.** Ustad ki kami hone ke karan is tarike ka istemal karte hai. Sabhi hathiyar squad post par hi rakhe jate hain.
3. **Composite periods ki tartib.** Composite periods ki tartib iss prakar hai:-

(a) Shuru shuru ka kaam.

* 1. Uddesh.
  2. Rifle abhyas.
  3. Mukabla.
  4. (Badli) LMG abhyas.
  5. Mukabla.
  6. (Badli) Carbine abhyas.
  7. Mukabla.

(j) Sankshep.

1. Unit mein tarah tarah ki class chalane se jawan unche darje ka sikhlai pate hai. Ek instr hone ke nate hamari yahi koshish honi chahiye ki jawan sikhlai mein vividhtha ho taaki trg mein jawan ki ruchi bani rahe.

**CHAPTER – 54**

###### RANGE KI TARTIB AUR FIRE CONDUCT KARNA

**Inf Trg Volume –III, Ranges and Course, Pamphlet No031 (2007)**

**Fire se pahle ki taiyariyan**

1. Ek station mein range ki allotement unit ko nirdharit range alloting auth karti hai. Range allotment hote hi unit ko range ke fire sambandhi taiyariyan suru kar dene chahiye. Range, Range standing order,pamphlet Infantry training vol I aur range course ke mutabiq fire ke liye taiyar karna chahiye, taaki fire samay par suru kiya ja sake aur fire ke dauran koi hadsa na ho. Range ki taiyari mein nimnlikhit batein shaamil ki jayen:-
   1. Stop butt ke dahine kinare par 20' uncha stop pole jis par 6’x6' ka laal jhanda laga ho.
   2. Stop butt ki mitti naram aur usmen pathar sikka na ho.
   3. Target bahar wale kinare se 20' andar ki taraf ho.
   4. Stop butt par 2'x3' chauri target No plate lagi ho
   5. Markers gallery ke bayen taraf 12' pole par 4x4' ka laal jhanda laga ho.
   6. Mantlet butt ki mitti naram aur usmen bhi koi pathar ya sikka na ho. (g) Firing point aur trenches par formet ke matabik naram mitti se bhara sand bag ho.

(h) Area saaf ho.

(j ) Firing point par firer ko letane ke liye bandobast .

1. Agar fire trench ka istemal ho raha ho to aad ke liye sand bag.
2. **Anya stand**

(i) Range ke ek taraf munasib jagah par nimnlikhit stand lagaye jayen:-

(aa) Ammunition.

(ab) Armourer.

(ac) Nursing Assistant.

(ad) Sights kala karne ki jagah ( FS Blakenning).

(ae) Urinal.

(af) Rest Area.

* 1. **Milap.** Telephone line lay kiya hua saath hi radio set ka bandobast.
  2. Sentries.
  3. Nafri aur jagah range standing order ke mutabik.
  4. Jagah lal jhande se mark aur raat mein lantern se.
  5. Sentries lal jacket mein.
  6. Milap radio aur whistle dwara.
  7. Warning boards ka bandobast.

1. **Annya Taiyariyan.**
   1. Range clearance.
   2. Firers ka nominal roll taiyar karna.
   3. Hathiyaron ki before firing inspection.
   4. Ammunition ka bandobast.
   5. Milap ke sadhan ka prabandh.
   6. Butt party bantna.
   7. Working party bantna.
   8. Coaches ka bandobast.
   9. Hathiyar safai ke lie saman.
   10. Warning boards taiyar karna.
   11. **Documents**
       * 1. Firing point register.
         2. Butt register.
         3. Range course SAO 12/S/85 (New range course).
         4. No damage certificate.
         5. Lead deposite certificate.
         6. Ammunition aur fired case ka detail.
   12. Armourer, NA aur bugler ka saman ke saath bandobast.
   13. Practise ke mutabik target taiyar karna.
   14. Temporary camp lagane ka bandobast (agar Cl range unit se dur ho)

**Practise Conduct Karna**

1. Range par firer ko do groups mein baant diya jata hai.
   1. Firing group.
   2. Training group.
2. **Firing Group.** Pure firers ko details mein bant diya jata hai aur ek samay par char (4) detail range par kaam kar rahe hoti hain.
   1. Firing Detail.
   2. Waiting detail - do (2).
   3. Ammunition collection detail.
3. **Training Group.** Firing point se pichhe training gorup ko nimnlikhit abhyas ke liye lagaya jata hai:-
   1. Aiming.
   2. Trigger operation.
   3. Hold.
   4. Roken dur karna.
   5. Firers ki jati galti ke lie sudharak exercise aur coaching.
   6. TsOET.
4. **Suraksha Sambandhi Batein**
   1. **Firing point se Pichhe**
      1. Hathiyar clear, magzine utra hua aur safety device laga hua.
      2. Muzzle hamesha surakshit disha mein.
      3. Drill carts ka istemal nahin.
      4. Ammunition practise ke mutabik issue.
      5. Harkat chal kar.
      6. Chember hamesha khali.
      7. Dry exercise se pahle hathiyar ka nirikshan.
   2. **Firing Point Par**
      1. Ammunition ki safai aur damage check.
      2. Barrel surakshit disha mein.
      3. Bhar hukam se.
      4. Sahi khali kar ki karwai.
      5. Safty ke barkhilap karwai par fire band.
      6. Roken dur karte samay savdhani ke saath.
5. **Fire conduct karne ke lie zaruri saman.** Fire conduct karne ke lie zaruri saman is prakar hai:-
   1. **Stop Butt**
      1. Flag red 6'x6'.
      2. Flag pole 20'.
      3. Target No plate 3'x2' - 8.
   2. **Mantlet Butt aur marker Gallery**
      1. Flag 4'x4'.
      2. Flag Pole 12'.
      3. Target frame as per practise - 20 (16 for trollies).
      4. Target paper as required.
      5. Red jacket - 10.
      6. Helmet - 10.
      7. Repair materials.
      8. Butt register.
   3. **Firing Point**
      1. Flag red 4x4'.
      2. Flag pole 12'.
      3. Checker disc - 2.
      4. Sand bags - 2 (har firer ke lie).
      5. Ground sheet - 24(8x3 Firing detail- 1, waiting detail- 2, pistol firing mein 30'x30' tarpauline).
      6. Waiting detail 2'x2' – 4.
      7. Case collectors - 8.
6. **Fore sight blackening stand**
   1. Lamp for F/S blackening – 2.
   2. Tent 140lbs – 1.
7. **Ammunition Point**
   1. Red flag 2'x2' with pole - 2.
   2. Tent 140lbs - 1.
   3. Ground sheet zarurat ke matabik (min 8).
   4. Ammunition zarurat ke mutabik.
8. **Corrective Stand**
   1. Charts with stand - Galti aur sudharak ex.
   2. Trg aids - Sudharak ex ke lie.
9. **Rest Area**
   1. Hathiyar safai ka saman.
   2. Pani garam karne ka sadhan.
10. **Sentries**
11. Red flag 4'x4'.
    1. Pole 12'.
    2. Red jacket.
    3. Milap ke sadhan (RS/ Whistle).
12. **Comn Stores**
    1. Radio set STAR V-2.
    2. Telephone 5 B - 4.
    3. Cable JWD - 1000m.
    4. Rs Motorola- Sentries ke lie range standing order ke mutabik.
13. **Cont Stores**
    1. Stop watch - 2.
    2. Binocular - zaurat ke mutabik.
14. **Sign Posting**
    * 1. Firing point.
      2. OIC Firing.
      3. Armourer.
      4. Nursing assistant.
      5. Foresight blackening.
      6. Rest area.
      7. Corrective Stand.
      8. Car, scooter &cycle park.
      9. Urinal.
      10. Company Area.
15. **Misc Stores**
    * + 1. Tent extendable complete-2.
        2. Tent EPIP complete - 2.
        3. Tarpauline 30x30' - 2.
        4. Tape white for scooter/ cycle park.
16. **Administration**
    * + 1. Pine ka pani.
        2. Chaye ka bandobast.
        3. Camp ka bandobast.

**Range ka layout**

8. Range ka suggested layout iss prakar hai:-

**100 m firing**

Firing point 100m Firing detail

Waiting detail No-1

3m

Waiting detail No-2

25m

Ammunition point

15m

Corrective Stand s

15m

Nursing Assistant

3m

Armour

3m

FS Blanking Rest area Firing point 200M

Arms cleaning

9. **Ohdedaron ki dutyian.**

1. **Firing point officer**
   1. Range ki puri taiyari aur fire conduct karne ke lie zimmewari.
   2. Ohdedaron ki briefing aur kaam par niyantran.
   3. Milap check karna.
   4. Ammunition seal aur quantity indent ke mutabik check karna.
   5. Firing detail ko practise aur mausam ke asar par brief karna.
   6. Coaches ki firers ke lie bant.
   7. Begule bajane ka 15 min baad fire suru karna.
   8. Range clearence police se lena.
   9. Details ko practise batana.
   10. Suraksha ke lie zimmewari.
   11. No damage certificate sign karana.
2. **Butt officer/ JCO**
   1. Check karna, target specification ke mutabik taiyar hain.
   2. Firing point se milap qaim rakhna.
   3. Butt party ke kaam par niyantran.
   4. Stop watch whistle aur range course ki copy butt mein ho.
   5. Practise ke mutabik target nikalwana.
   6. Butt register bharna.
   7. Target repair check karna.
   8. Details ka score firing point officer ko dena.
   9. Butt flag ka sahi prayog.
   10. Butt party ki suraksha.

(e) **CHM**

* 1. Range par bandobast.
  2. Company ki detail bharna.
  3. Butt, ammunition, working party aur sentries bantna.
  4. Parade state taiyar karna.
  5. Documents.

(d) **Coach(qualified ya trained)**

* 1. Yakin karna firer firing point officer ke adesh ke mutabik karwai karta hai.
  2. Muzzle hamesha surakshit disha mein.
  3. Firer ki kudrati sidai, position aur pakar check karna.
  4. Cease fire par durust karwai.
  5. Durust khali kar par amal.
  6. Coaching.
  7. Roken ko durust aur sahi tartib se dur karwana.
  8. Bhare hathiyar se harkat karte samay suraksha.

1. **Ammunition NCO**
   1. Indent ke mutabik ammunition lena.
   2. Practise mutabik ammunition issue karna.
   3. Ammunition ki hifazat.
   4. Ammunition kharch ka hisab.
2. **Sentries**
   1. Warning board lagana.
   2. Range area clear rakhna.
   3. Achanak fire band karne ka ishra dena.
3. **Working party.** Range par diya hua kaam pura karna.
4. **Radio operator/line**
5. Firing point aur butt ke beech milap kayam rakhna.

(ii) Firing point officer aur sentries ke beech milap kayam rakhna.

1. **Armourer**
   1. Hathiyar ka inspection.
   2. Zeroing mein madad karna.
   3. Weapons damage check karna.
2. **Bugler**
   1. Fire suru, samapt aur achanak band karne ka ishra dena.
   2. Firing point flag operate karna.
3. **Medical Reprsentative.** Fire ke dauran range par koi hadsa hone par medical assistance pradaan karna.

**Range Organisation**

1. Range par fire conduct karne ke lie jo ohdedaron ki zarurat padti hai woh is prakar hain:-
2. OIC firing/ firing point officer.
3. Butt officer/JCO.
4. CHM.
5. Coach.
6. Ammunition NCO.
7. Sentries.
8. Working Party.
9. Radio operators.
10. Armourer.
11. Bugler.
12. Medical representative(NA/BFNA).
13. Police representative.

11. Achha firing ka daromadar kafi had tak range ki taiyari aur range par durust drill par amal karne par nirbhar karta hai. Ohdedar aur firer ko fire ke dauran suraksha ka pura dhyan rakhna chahiye.

**CHAPTER – 55**

**CHHOTE HATHIYARON KE FIRE KA SIDDHANT**

**Infantry Training Volume-1 Infantry Platoon Weapons, Pamphlet No-12 Theory of Small Arms, Fire and fire control (All Arms) 2007**.

**Paribhashayen**

1. **Barrel ki Line (Axis of Bore).** Us farzi line ko kahte hain jo breech block se bore ke bilkul madhya se hote hue, muzzle tak jati hai. Jis ko muzzle end se aage badha ne se yeh line of elevation kahlati hai.
2. **Goli Nikalne ki Line ( Line of Departure).** Muzzle se nikalne ke baad goli jis rukh mein ya jis raste hokar jani chahiye usko goli nikalne ki line kahte hain. Yeh ek farzi line hai.
3. **Jump.** Yeh us farq ko jahir karta hai jo ki barrel ki line aur line of departure ke beech hota hai. Yeh muzzle ki harkat bullet ke muzzle chorte waqt, round ke dhamake ke karan hoti hai. Ise nangi aankh se asani se nahin dekha ja sakta hai kyonki yeh harkat bahut hi mamuli hoti hai aur bahut hi tezi se hoti hai. Jump se goli ki trajectory mein bhi farq parta hai lekin iska purwanuman lagakar zeroing ke dwara isko nakara kiya ja sakta hai.
4. **Throw Off.** Yeh bhi jump ki tarah hi hai lekin farq kewal barrel ki harkat mein hota hai. Jump mein barrel kewal upar ya niche ki harkat karta hai lekin throw off mein barrel daen/ baen ki harkat karti hai. Iske asar ko bhi zeroing karke nakara ja sakta hai.AK 47 mein throw off 2 baje ki line mein hai is liye 7 baje ki line mein compensator lagaya gaya hai.
5. **Shist ki Rekha (Line of Sight).** Us farzi line ko kahte hain jo firer ki ankh, back sight ke bicho bich, fore sight tip se hote hue point of aim parjati hai.
6. (a) **Quadrant Elevation.** Firing se pahle axis of bore aur samtal ke bich banne wala woh kon QE kahlata hai jab gun fire ke lie taiyar ho.

(b) **Trajectory.** Muzzle ko chorne ke baad target ko hit karne tak ya zamin par takrane tak goli ka hawa mein uran ke dauran jo golaidar raasta banta hai use trajectory kahte hain.

1. **Uncha Nishan (Culminating Point).** Uran ke dauran goli line of sight se, jis sabse unche mukam par pahunchti hai use culminating point kahte hain. Yeh aamtaur par trajectory ke adhe raaste ke baad hota hai. Golian culminating point ke baad bahut tezi ke saath zamin ki taraf ati hain.
2. **Utaar ka Kon (Angle of Descent).** Uncha nishan (CP) ke aage trajectory ke kisi bhi bhag par mapa jane wala woh kon hai jo ki samtal (horizontal) aur trajectory ke kisi bhi bhag se khinchi sparsh rekha (tangent) ke bich chhota kon (angle) banta hai.
3. **Girne ka Kon (Angle of Fall).** Yeh trajectory ke us bhag par, jahan line of sight trajectory ko kaatti hai, banne wala woh kon hai jo ki us bhag se khinchi sparsh rekha aur samtal ke bich banta hai. Dusre sabdon mein, jahan barrel se lekar guzarti samanantar rekha trajectory ko kaatti hai, use point of fall kahte hain. Point of fall par trajectory se khinchi sparsh rekha aur samtal ke bich ke kon ko angle of fall kahte hain. Dhyan rahe ki is sthan par angle of fall aur angle of descent ek hi hain.
4. **Disha Badalna (Recochet).** Goli zamin se ya kisi annya sthan se takrane ke baad jab apni disha ko badal leti hai use recochet hona kahte hain. Pani se bhi recochet hota hai.
5. **Pahli Pakar (First Catch).** Yeh, Trajectory, par woh point hota hai jahan par goli target ke sabse unche hisse se takra sakti hai aur yeh zamin se sambandhit hoti hai.
6. **Pahli Ragar (First Graze).** Yeh zamin par, point hota hai jahan, first catch ke bad, zamin par goli takrati hai.
7. **Dangerous Space.**Woh ilaka jo first catch aur first graze ke bich banta hai.
8. **Cone of Fire.** Auto hathiyar se burst fire ke dauran golian hawa mein jis akar mein failti hain use cone of fire kahte hain. Yeh aamtaur par ek ande ke akar mein failta hai. Ismen Zyadatar golian ande ke bicho bich hoti hain.
9. **Beaten Zone.** Cone of fire ki golian zamin par girkar jo sakal banati hain use beaton zone kahte hain. Iski banawat range aur zamin ki banawat ke anusar alag- alag hoti hai.e.g. BZ for 7.62mm LMG at 500m =175x2m and at 1000m it is 115x4m.
10. **Dangerous Zone.** Dangerous space aur beaton zone ke bich ke ilake ko dangerous zone kahte hain. Fire ko kargar hone ke lie yeh zaruri hai ki target dangerous zone mein shaamil ho.

**Dangerous Space par asar dalne wali baten**

1. Dangerous space ka bara ya chhota hona chand ek baton par nirbhar hai jo ki is parkar se hain:-
   1. **Range.** Lambe range par dangerous space kam hoga banispat chhote range ke.
   2. **Zamini Satah se Upar Hathiyar ki Unchai.** Agar hathiyar unchai par hoga to dangerous space chhota banega aur wahi hathiyar nichai par ho to dangerous space bara banega.
   3. **Zamini Halaat.** Dangerous space ke bare ya chhote hona bahut had tak zamin ki banawat par bhi nirbhar hota hai kyonki zamin ki halaat ke Madhyanazar target height ya hathiyar ki unchai alag-alag hogi.
   4. **Trajectory ka chaptapan**Yani trajectory jitni chapti hogi, dangerous space utna hi zyada hoga.
   5. **Target ki Unchai.** Target jitna uncha hoga dangerous space zyada hoga.

**Golion ki Uran wa usse Talluk rakhane wali baten**

1. **Barrel Chhorne se pahle**
   1. **Gas ka dabao.** Jyada gas ke dabao se zyada Muzzle velocity(MV) milti hai aur range badh jata hai. Trajectory bhi chapti hoti hai.
   2. **Ghumao (Spin).** Barrel ke andar grooves yani churion ke hone se goli ko uran ke dauran sidhai milti hai.
   3. **Dhamaka aur Recoil.** Dhamake ki wazah se aur goli ke aage badhne se ek kism ki thartharahat paida hoti hai jisse jump aur throw off paida hoti hai. Recoil ka waise bhi koi khas asar nahin parta kionki jab hathiyar mein sabse adhik recoil paida hota hai tab tak goli barrel ko chhor chuki hoti hai. Stocking up tunning up se kam hota hai.
2. **Jump ka Mahatwa.** Hathiyar mein firing ke baad amuman paida hui thartharahat ke karan hi jump hota hai. Ise hamne pahle paribhashaon mein bhi dekha hai. Jump`Positive' ya `negative' ho sakta hai. Jab line of departure, barrel ki line se upar hota hai to jump positive kahlata hain aur usi bhanti agar line of departure, barrel ki line se niche ho to wah jump negative kahlati hai. Hamesha hi chhote hathiyar mein jump positive hi hota hai. Jump nimn baton par nirbhar karta hai:-
   1. **Stocking Up.** Yani forehand grip ko body aur barrel se kas dena. Forehand grip ke tedhe hone pe, screw ka dhile hone se ya forehand grip aur barrel ki bich kisi chiz ke aa jane se jump par asar parta hai aur jump kam ya adhik hota hai.
   2. **Bayonet ke Fire Par asar.** Bayonet chadhakar karne se bhi fire par asar parta hai. Islie jawanon se training ke dauran bayonet lagakar fire karwaen, taki iske parnewale farq ka pata chale. Bayonet chadhakar fire karne se golian niche lagti hain.
   3. **Hathiyar ko Sahara dene ki Jagah.**Chunki zeroing unsp position se hota hai islie jab ham supported fire karte hain to jump mein farq ata hai. Islie CG ke anusar alag- alag support se alag alag jump ka asar hoga aur golian failkar lagengi.
      1. CG (centre of gravity) ke aage sahara hone se golian upar lagengi.
      2. CG ke pichhe sahara lene se golian niche lagengi, jaise ki magazine tikakar fire karne ke karan hota hai.
   4. **Barrel Mein Tel ka Hona.** Barrel, chamber par tel hone se atirikt gas paida hoti hai jisse muzzle velocity badh jati hai, dhua adhik paida hota hai golian upar lagti hain. Aisi halat mein fire karne se barrel bulge hone ka khatra bhi rahta hai. Lekin accuracy badh jati hai.
3. **Fixed Line Lagana.** Am taur par aap sabhi ko LMG ko site karte waqt fixed line ka chunao karna parta hoga. Aur shayad aap yeh bhi jante honge ki fixed line ka chunao ham 700m dur zamin par karte hain.Aisa iss liye kiya jata kyonki 700mpar aim lekar fire karne par 5.56mm INSAS LMG ki goliyan zamin se 4.5 feet se upar nahi udhati.
   1. **BZ ke Lihaz se Mafi Galti.** Agar range ka sahi anuman lagane mein firer galti karta hai to wah LMG par bhi galat range lagaega. Lekin agar galti kewal 50% BZ ke tak ki hai to wah 5.56 mm INSASLMG ke beaten zone ke karan tgt ko apne chapet mein le legi. Kahne ka matlab hai ki agar gun par sahi range laga ho to tgt BZ ke bichobich aa jayega, 50% se jyada ki galti hai to wah tgt ko cover nahin kar pati hai.
4. **Barrel Chhorne ke Baad.**
   1. **Hawa ka Pratirodh.** Jab goli barrel ko chorti hai to ispar hawa ka asar parta hai jisse iski raftar mein kami aa jati hai, saath hi daen/ baen se chalne wali hawa ka bhi asar golian ki maar par parta hai. Samne ya pichhe se ane wali hawa ka asar kam range par nahin parta hai.
   2. **Zamini Akarshan ya Gurutova Akarshan ka Asar.** Iske karan bhi goli ke uran par farq parta hai. Jaise-jaise range badhti jati hai ye asar adhik hota jata hai.
5. In donon wajahon se goli target par pahunchte-pahunchte ek golaidar raasta taye karti hai. Jyon-jyon range badhta hai, saath hi goli ki raftar mein kami ati hai. Isse goli adhik range par zyada tezi se zamin ki taraf aati hai.

**Mausam ka Chhote Hathiyaron tatha Fire par Asar**

1. **Unchai.** Samudra tal se jagah ki unchai ke bhi fire par asar parta hai. Jaise 1200 ft ya usse unche sthanon par golian upar lagti hai kyonki :-
   1. Hawa ka kam dabao hone se hawa ki, pratirodhak shamta kam hoti hai.
   2. Gurutwa karshan shakti kam hone se golian upar lagti hai.
2. **Taapman.**
   1. **Geela Ammunition.**  Barrud dhire jalega, MV kam hoga aur golian niche lagengi.
   2. **Barrel Ka Garam hona.**MV adhik hoga aur golian upar lagengi. Sard ilaqon mein barrel ko dhire-dhire garam karna ke lie pahle single shot fire karen.
   3. **Garam Ammunition.** Iska bhi taalluk MV se hota hai. Goli upar lagti hain, parantu iske asar bahut hi mamuli hota hai.
3. **Roshni ka Asar.** Agar mausam mein bahut zyada dhul hone ke karan ya ghata/badlon ke ane se roshni kam ho gai ho to, yakinan hathiyar ki foresight saff mausam ki bansipat kam saaf dikhai degi. Is tarah agar tez roshni hogi to dohri ya nakli foresight bhi dikhai degi. Isse elevation par asar parege aur golian upar ya niche lagengi. Hamesha yaad rahe :-

(a) Light up - Sight up.

(b) Light down - Sight down.

1. **Adrata(Humidity).** Adrata adhik hone se hawa ka ghanatwa kam ho jata hai aur nose hawa ki pratirodhak akshamta bhi kam ho jati hai. Aisi halat mein golian upar lagti hain. Shist ko upar rakhna chahiye.
2. **Unchai aur Geele Ammunition ka mila jula Asar.** Chunki unchai ka asar adhik hota hai isse golian upar hi lagti hain. Zeroing ki khas ahmiat hoti hai.
3. Chhote hathiyaron ke fire ke siddhant ke bare me jankari hojane se ek firer asani se iske pahaluon ka, nishane bazi ke prashikshan ke dauran, istemal kar sakta hai. Aisa karne se jahan uska fire behtar hoga, wahin uska apne hathiyar se behtar talmel sthapit hoga. Apne is sabak ke dauran in sidhanton ke bare mein jankari prapt karne ke paschat yah awashya hi mahsus kiya hoga ki ye chhoti-chhoti si baten kitni aham hoti hain. Kai aise pahlu jinpar pahle aapne kabhi vichar bhi nahin kia hoga ab aapki samajh ke daire mein hain aur aap ab apne hathiyaron ka behtar roop mein istemal karne mein saksham honge.

#### CHAPTER – 56

**AAM GROUP KE SIDHANT AUR MULYANKAN KE MAPDAND**

**Paribhashayen**

1. **Group.** Jab ek firer apne hathiyar se ek hi range, ek hi pakar, ek hi position aur shist kayam karte hue do ya do se jyada golian fire karta hai toh golion se jo khakha target par banta hai use group kahte hain.
2. **Normal Group.** Agar ek firer apne hathiyar se ek hi range aur firing position se alag alag din, alag alag samay par group fire karta hai to sabhi group ka jo ausat group nikalega use firer ka normal group kahte hain. Badhte range ke saath group badhta hai. Ek firer ko kisi bhi range par ausat gorup banane ke bare mein jankari honi chahiye.
3. **MPI (Mean Point of Impact).** Group ke madhya ko MPI kahte hain.
4. **Accuracy.** Ek hathiyar ki woh kabliyat joh ki group ke MPI ko chune hue POA par dal sake.
5. **Consistency.** Fire kiye hue group mein MPI se golion ke phailav ki samrupta ko consistency kahte hain.Consistency firer se sambandh rakhti hai.

**Aam Group Ke Sidhant**

1. **Group kyon banata hai.**Fire ki hui do golian ek hi surakh se nahin nikalti hain, iske karan is prakar hain:-
   1. **Hathiyar ki Accuracy/ Consistency.** Ek rifle jab factory se pass hoti hai tab woh 100m se 2,1/2 cm ka group banati hai, yani ki factory mein bhi do golian ek hi surakh se nahin guzarti, kyonki hathiyar bari sankhya mein bante hai aur thori bahut kami rah jati hai, is lie group banta hai.
   2. **Barrel Ka Garam Hona.** Goli fire hone par gas paida hoti hai jo bullet ko aage dhakelti hai. Agar barrel garam nahin hai toh jyada garmi barrel ko garam karne mein jab ho jati hai jisse goli ke pichhe gas ka dabao kam ho jata hai isse muzzle velocity kam ho jati hai.
   3. **Ammunition mein Antar.**
      1. **Propellant ka Wazan.** Propellant ke wazan aur visheshta mein antar hone se paida hui gas pressure mein antar hota hai, jisse goli ki muzzle velocity mein antar par jata hai.
      2. **Goli ka Shape Size aur Wazan.** Goli ke shape, size aur wazan mein antar hone se goli ki trajectory mein antar par jata hai.
   4. **Jump.** Goli fire hone par hathiyar mein jump hota hai, yeh recoil fire ki wajah se hota hai, jisse barrel thori upar ya niche ki harkat karti hai. Har goli fire karne par jump mein thora farq hota hai jisse goli ke trajectotry mein farq parta hai.
   5. **Mausam.** Alag alag mausami halat, jaise hawa ki raftar aur disha se goli ki trajectory mein antar par jata hai, jisse goli target par alag alag jagah par lagti hai.
   6. **Firer ki Galti.** Grouping fire ke dauran jab firer galti karta hai to golian alag alag jagah par lagti hai. Firer aksar pakar, aiming ya trigger operation ki galtian karta hai.
   7. **Stocking up & tuning up.** Yadi hathiyar ke mukhya hisse purze thik se kase hue nahin hai to fire ki gaye koi do goliyan alag line of departure akhtiyar karti hain. Jiski wajha se group banta hai.
   8. **Target ka range.** Yadi group fire adhik range se kiya jaye to do goliyon ka target par lagne ka fasla bhi adhik hota hain.
2. Badhti range ke saath group ka size bhi badhta hai. Yeh mumkin nahin hai ki hum golion ko bikharne se rok den, lekin hum inka failao achhi training, firing ke liye puri taiyari, mazboot pakar, durust aiming aur trigger operation aur achhi maintenance ke jarie kam se kam karke achha grouping fire haasil kar sakte hain.
3. **Error Chasing (Galti ka Peecha Karna).** Jab firer ki jatia galti ke karan goli POA par nahi lagti to firer goli ko POA par lane ke liye apni shist badli kar deta hai, isi tarah galti pe galti karne ke karan uske group ka size bara banta jata hai, firer ki is karwai ko error chasing kahte hain.
4. **Group Ke Usul.** Tamam golian ek surakh se nahin guzarti, islie group banta hai. Yeh baat hum samajh chuke hain aur iske karan bhi jaan chuke hain. Isi ko hum group ki buniyad samajhte hue group ke usul dekhenge:-
   1. Badhti range ke saath group ka size bhi badhta hai.
   2. Group ka size hathiyar, ammunition, firer, range aur position par nirbhar karta hai.
   3. Group target par kahin bhi ban sakta hai.
   4. Grouping fire mein position, pakar aur shist ki badli nahin ki jati hai.
   5. Group ka MPI, sighton par lage range aur target ke sahi range ke hisab se banta hai.
   6. Grouping fire ke dauran hawa, roshni ya anya baton ka haq nahin rakha jata hai.
   7. Sahi zeroing se Group ke MPI ko sahi jagah par laya ja sakta hai. (h) Group ka size single shot aur burst fire ke liye alag alag hai.

**MPI Malum Karne ke Tariqe**

1. Ek firer ko apne group ka MPI nikalne ka tariqa malum hona chahiye taki woh apne hathiyar ki sighton mein tabdili kar ke use zero kar sake. Group ka MPI malum karne ke teen tariqe hain:-
   1. **Calculation Ka Tariqa**
      1. Sabse pahle koi bhi do golion ke nishan ko ek rekha se jor do. Is rekha ka madhya pahle do golion ka MPI hoga.
      2. Pahle do golion ke MPI ko rekha se tisri goli ki nishan se mila do aur is rekha ko teen bhag mein bant do. Pahle MPI ke nazdeek wala bindu in teen golion ka MPI hoga.
      3. MPI No-2 ko chouthi goli ke nishan se rekha khinch kar mila do aur is rekha ko char bhagon mein bant do. MPI No 2 ke nazdik jo bindu hoga woh char golion ka MPI hoga.
      4. Isi tarah panchvi aur chhatti golion ka MPI malum karke, group ka MPI malum kiya ja sakta hai.
   2. **Graph Ka Tariqa**
      1. Group ki sabse bayen wali goli se ek sidhi khari rekha khincho.
      2. Group kisabse niche wali goli se ek pari rekha khincho aur khari rekha se milado.
      3. Har ek goli ka khari aur pari rekha se fasla nikalo(cms mein).
      4. Sabhi golion ke khari aur pari rekha se alag alag fasla jordo. Khari aur pari rekhaon se ausat fasla nikalne ke liye ise kul golion ki sankhya se vibhajan kar do.
      5. Ausat faslon ko khari aur pari rekhaon se rekha khinch kar jordo aur jis jagah par yeh rekhayen milti hain woh bindu Group ka MPI hoga.
   3. **Axis of Dispersion Ka Tariqa.** Is tarike ka tab istemal karte hai jab bahut si golion ka MPI malum karna ho:-
      1. Ek khari rekha khinch kar golion ko do barabar bhagon mein bant do . (ii) Isi tarah ek pari rekha khinch kar golion ko do barabar bhagon mein baant do.
      2. Jahan par khari aur pari rekha milti hai woh bindu Group ka MPI hoga.

**ESA aur uska Nirdharan (Expected Scoring Area)**

1. **ESA.**ESA ek gol daire ka vyas hai jismen ek ausat firer ko diye hue range, firing position, hathiyar aur fire ki kism ke zariye fire ki gai sabhi golian, is daire ke andar marni chahiye. ESA ka nishchay new range course mein kiya hua hai jabki normal group firer ke upar nirbhar karta hai.

1. **ESA ka Izhad.** ESA ki dharna ek ausat firer ko madhya najar rakhte hue banaya gaya hai. 5.56mm INSAS rifle ka kargar range 400m hai, yani ladai mein ek Rifleman 400m par dushman yani ek insani target (48cm chaurai) ko hit karna chahiye. Is prakar rifle ki sabse mushkil practise ko base banate hue new range course mein ESA ka izhad kiya gaya hai. 400m se ESA 48cm hona chahiye, is prakar alag alag ranges, firing position, fire ka tarika aur hathiyar ko madhya najar rakhte hue ESA ko nirdharit kiya gaya hai. Agar upar bataye gaye kisi bhi cheez mein antar dalte hai to ESA ka size bhi badli ho jayega.
2. **1985 Range Course mein Mulyankan ke Mapdand mein Kamiyan.**
   1. **Samay barbad.** Bahut jyada practises hone ke karan kafi samay barbad hota hai.
   2. **Target ka prabhandh.** Target ke kai qism hone ki wajah se target ka prabandh karna mushkil hota hai.
   3. **Scoring syatem.** Target par scoring ka tarika alag alag range, firing position, hathiyar aur fire ke tariqe se sambandhit nahin hai.
   4. **MM.** Bina target ke centre mein hit kiye, 66.66% number lekar koi bhi fire MM ban sakta hai.
3. **ESA Dharna ke Dwara New Range Course mein Sudhar.**
   1. New Range Course, is dharna par banaya gaya hai ki yatharth (precision) nishanebaji se hi ek firer ladai ke dauran fire ka mudda haasil kar sakta hai.
   2. **ESA.** ESA ka izhad aur hathiyar, range, position aur fire ka tariqe, ko madhya nazar rakhte hue ESA aur incentive circle ke size mein badlao kiya gaya hai.
   3. **Scoring System.** Incentive circle ke lie -3, ESA - 2 aur fig 11 tgt par kahin bhi hit hone par 1pt milta hai.
   4. **MM.** MM ka darja haasil karne ke lie 70% point lena awashyak hai, iska matlab MM banne ke liye kuchh rounds incentive circle mein hit karna hi padega.
   5. **Tgt ki Qism.** Kam se kam tgt ka istemal.
   6. **Incentive Circle.** Achha firer ka hausala badhane ke lie incentive circle diya gaya hai.
   7. **Auto Fire.** 1985 Range Course ke banishpat LMG ka 300m se ESA 48cm se jyada.
4. New range course is tariqe se banaya gaya hai ki woh ek ausat firer ko fire karne ka protsahan de aur achhe firer ka hausla badhaye. Ek firer mein yeh kablliyat hona chahiye ki woh achha group fire kar sake aur saath hi use apna group banane ki kabiliyat ki jankari honi chahiye. Firer ko apne group ka vishleshan karne ka tariqe ana chahiye taaki woh group ka MPI malum kar sake aur apni galtion ko sudhar karke ek unche darje ka firer ban sake.

**CHAPTER – 57**

SHOT GROUP KA VISHLESHAN AUR INSAS RIFLE FIRER KO COACH KARNA

**Infantry Training Volume-1 Basic Marksmanship the 5.56mm Insas Rif (2007)**

**SHOT GROUP KA VISHLESHAN**

1. Jis tarah bimar ke lakshyaan ko dekhkar bimari ka pata chalta hai usi tarah target par goliyan ki maar ya group ka vishleshan karne se hone wali galtiyon ka pata chalta hai.Group mein goliyan ki maar aur unke failao ko dekhkar firer ki kabliyat ka asani se pata lagaya ja sakta hai.

**Shot Group Vishleshan Card**

1. Yeh ek aisa card hota hai jis par alag alag kisam ke group ke khake bane hote hai. Iski madad se firer khud ya coach uske banae hue group se milakar galtiyon ko samajhta hai aur unko sudharne ke liye munasib exercise karwata hai.

**Firing Data Card**

1. Shot group ke vishleshan mein firing data card bahut madad karta hai. Iske istemal se firer ke dimag mein maar ke asar aur target par hone wale maar ke asar ki tulna ki jati hai. Dhyan rahe ki iska istemal tabhi shuru kiya jaye jab ki rifle achhi tarah se zero kar li gayi ho.
2. **Firing Data Card ka Istemal.** Is card mein do target ke khake hote hain, Call target aur Hit target.Inka vivran iss prakar hai:-
   * 1. **Call Target.** Durust follow through karte hue firer harek goli ke baad uski maar pukarta hai. Nishan, Nishan upar, nichhe, dayen, bayen ya uska combination. Coach maar ko call target khake mein bhar deta hai.
     2. **Hit Target.** Target par usi goli ki sahi maar butt se darshayi jati hai. Isko coach hit target mein bhar deta hai.
     3. **Tulna.** Practice khatam hone par call aur hit target ki tulna ki jati hai. Agar yeh donon ek dusre se milte hai to firing durust hai. Lekin agar yeh apas mein nahi milte to ho sakta hai ki nichhe di gai galtiyan hui hon :-
     4. Galat follow through.
     5. Kandha marna.
     6. Galat trigger operation.
     7. Sans par kabu na rakhna.
     8. Sir marna.
     9. Mazboot pakar haasil na karna.

**Aam Galtiyan Aur Unke Sudharne Ke Tariqe**

1. Agar harek firer aur khas karke coach ko firing se sambandhit galtiyan aur unhen dur karne ke tariqe pata hon to firing ka star bahut achha kiya ja sakta hai. In galtiyon ko firer ya coach do tariqon se pakar sakte hai. Firer dwara ki jane wali galtiyon ko dekh kar ya tgt par golian ki mar ko dekh kar.

**Firing Mein Galti**

1. Agar firing ke usulon ka sahi tariqe se paalan kiya jaye to koi wajah nahin hai ki firing unche darje ki na ho lekin aam taur par tajurbe, training ya coaching ki kami ki wajah se firer in usulon par amal nahin karta jisse firing ke star par asar parta hai udaaharan ke taur par:-

(a) **Shist ki Galtiyan**

* + 1. Sighton ko tirchha rakhna.
    2. Fore sight back sight aperture ke madhya mein na rakhna.
    3. Shist ke kaide par amal na karna.
    4. Hawa ka haq na rakhna.
    5. Light up sight up aur light down sight down ka tarika na apnana.

(b) **Trigger Operation ki Galtiyan**

* 1. Kalme wali anguli ki position trigger par thik na hona.
  2. Pull haasil na karna.

(c) **Position Mein Galtiyan**

* + 1. Badan line of fire se tirchha na hona.
    2. Hathon aur kohnion ki position galat hona.
    3. Aar ka durust istemal na karna.
    4. Rest istemal karte samay kalai rest ke saath na milana.
    5. Position aramdeh na hona.
    6. Fire ke dauran badan ko harkat dena.

(d) **Sans ki Galtiyan**

* + 1. Trigger dabate samay sans par kabu na rakhna.
    2. Sans ko jyada der tak rokna ya bahut pahle chorna.

(e) **Three Round Burst**

* + 1. Trigger control na hona.
    2. Tharthrahat par kabu na karna.

**Target se Pata Chalne Wali Galtiyan**

1. Kaha jata hai ki firing sare weapon training ka nichor darshata hai. Usi mutabiq target par dikhne wali galtiyon ki maar se firer ki galtiyon ke bare mein bahut nishchit jankari milti hai. Galtiyan pahchanne ka yeh tariqa firer aur coach achhi tarah jante hon to target ko dekh galtiyon ko pahchan ya confirm kar sakte hain.
2. Fire ki hui goliyan tgt par group banati hain. In groupon mein goliyon ke failao aur unki apasi duri, saath hi aiming mark ke banisbat MPI ki jagah se jin galtiyon ka pata chalta hai woh niche batai gai hain.
3. **Group ka Failao.**
   * 1. **Chhota Khara Group.** Iska karan aiming point ki galti. Firer ka bhi shist aiming point ke thora upar to kabhi thora niche leta hai jisse ki goliyan thora niche ya upar lagti hain.
     2. **Chhota Para Group.** Ismen bhi firer kabhi shist aiming point ke thora daen to kabhi baen leta hai. Iska asar target par chhote pare khare group ki shakal mein dikhai deta hai.
     3. **Lamba Khara Group.** Ismen firer sight alignment ki galti karte hue fore sight ki nok ko kabhi aperture ke madhya ke upar aur kabhi niche rakhta hai yeh ek bari galti ko jahir karta hai.
     4. **Lamba Para Group.** Yeh bhi sight alignment ke ek bari galti hai ismen firer fore sight ki nok ko aperture ke madhya ke bayen ya daen rakhta hai.
     5. **Bifocal Group.** Agar baki durust firing karte hue bhi firer kabhi apna dhyan foresight ki nok aur kabhi aiming pt par jamae to uski goliyan do alag aur gorup banati hain, ise bifocal group kahte hain.
     6. **Bikhra Hua Group.** Yeh sabse kharab firing ko jahir karta hai. Firing ke kisi bhi usul ko madhya nazar na rakhkar dhili pakar se fire karne se aisa group banta hai.
4. **MPI ki Jagah.** MPI ki jagah ko dekhkar firer dwara ki gayi galti ko samjha ja sakta hai. Ise bari bari dekhen:-
   * 1. **11 Baje ki line.** Agar MPI aiming point se lagatar 11 baje ki line mein banta hai to iska matlab hai firer goli ke dhamake se anayas darkar aankh band karke shir butt par marta hai.
     2. **7 Baje ki Line.** Kai firer recoil ko rokne ke liye kandha kara karte hain ya usse butt par dhakka marte hain. Isse goliyon ka MPI aiming point se 7 baje ki line mein banta hain.
     3. **4 Baje ki Line.** Trigger dabate samay jhatka dene se group ka MPI aiming point se 4 baje ki line mein banta hai.
5. **Galtiyon ke Karan.** Firing mein hone wali galtiyon ko malum karne ke saath hamen yeh bhi pata hona chahiye ki woh kis karan se ho rahi hain. Isse hum aise halat ka yakin kar sakte hain jinse galtiyan kam se kam hon.

(a) **Firer ke Control ki Baten**

* + 1. Marksmanship ke sidhant thik se amal mein na lana.
    2. Rifle ki zeroing, dekh rekh, tuning/stocking aur saaf safai kharab hona.
    3. Ammunition ka thik saaf na hona.
    4. Sans ki galti.
    5. Nishchay ki kami.

(b) **Firer ke Control se Bahar ki Baten**

* + 1. **Mausam.** Light kam ya jyada, Mausami halat.
    2. Kharab Range ki Tartib.
    3. Kharab Coaching.
    4. Firer ki sharirik kamiyan jaise ki kamjor aankh ya kharab tabiyat.

**Firing Sudharne ke Tariqe**

1. Ab tak humne dekha ki firing mein kon kon se galtiyan hoti hain aur unhen kaise pahchana ja sakta hai. Inmen se position ki galtiyan saaf dikhai deti hain aur unhen demonstration aur hidayat ke saath bakhubi sudhara ja sakta hai. Shist aur trigger operation ki galtiyon ko sudharne ke liye kuch exercises hain jinhen squad post training ke dauran ya firing ke dauran corrective stand mein firer se karwaya ja sakta hai. Inka vivran niche diya gaya hai.
2. **Shist Sudharne ke Liye Exs.**
   1. **Blank Tgt Exercise.** Jaise ki pahle bataya gaya hai ki sight alignment bahut ahimiyat rakhta hai. Firer ko yeh mahsoos karane ke liye blank target exercise karwaya jata hai. Ismen firer se takriban 10 mtr ki duri par target lagaya jata hai, jismen ek sada kagaz laga hota hai. Kyonki target par koi aiming mark nahin hota hai islie firer ka dhyan sight alignment par kendrit kiya ja sakta hai.
   2. **Aiming Box Ex.** Is exercise mein sight alignment aur sight picture ka talmel shist ke sahi kaide ke anusar karne ki sikhlai hoti hai. Is Exercise ko bhi squad post training ke dauran karwaya jana chahiye.

(i) **Tarika**

(aa) Firer se aiming box 10 mtr ki duri par .

(ab) Target ek box ki shakal ka jis par 6"x6" ka sada kagaz laga ho.

(ac) Box par coach aiming disc ke saath, firer dwara pukare gaye nishan ko mark karne ke liye.

(ad) Rifle short rest ke upar kasi hui.

(ae) Firer apni taraf se durust shist haasil karta hua eye disc ko sight alignment ke saath milata hai iske liye woh lying position akhtiyar karke ek hath par thori rakhta hai aur dusre se coach ko eye disc ki harkat karne ke liye ishara deta hai. Durust shist haasil karte hi woh pukarta hai "Nishan". Is pukar par coach Aiming disc ke chhed se nishan target par laga deta hai.

(af) Firer upar wali karhwai teen bar karta hai.

(ag) Teenon nishan ek ungarhi pencil ke daire ya 6mm dia mein ana chahiye. Yeh is liye ke 6 mm 400 mtr par ek admi ki chaurai ko cover karta hai.

(c) **Aiming Corrector.** Yeh device periscope ke sidhant par adharit hai jisse ki firer dwara haasil sight picture, coach sishon ki madad se dekh sakta hai:-

1. **Firer.** Jiski sight picture durust na ho.
2. **Tariqa.**

(aa) Aiming corrector butt par fit karen.

(ab) Firer target ke aiming mark par durust shist haasil kare. (ac) Coach aiming corrector ki madad se firer dwara ki ja rahi galti ko pakere aur durust kare.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| (d) **Tin Disc Ex**  (i) **Firer** | Wt – 10 gm, Dia- 2.5 mm. |
| (aa) | Galat sans leta hai. |
| (ab) | Manspeshion ko sakht karta hai. |
| (ac) | Trigger jhatke se dabata hai. |

1. **Tariqa**

(aa) Firer position mein rifle ready kare.

(ab) Tin disc flash hider ke upar par rakha jaye.

(ac) Firer durust shist lekar trigger dabae.

(ad) Agar trigger dabane par tin disc na gire to durust mana jaye warna firer ko teen mauke diye jayen.

(e) **Ball aur Dummy Ex**

* + 1. **Firer.** Jo fire ke dhamake se darkar galti karte hain jisse group 11 baje ki line par banta hai.
    2. **Tariqa**

(aa) Range par firing ke dauran aise firer ki magzine mein bina uski jankari ke, ek do round live ke baad drill round bhar diye jayen.

(ab) Firing ke dauran drill round hone par firer ko apni galti ka khas taur se ahsas ho jayega.

1. **SATS/ DRONA.** Yeh computer se niyantrit ek aisa ala hai jisse ki kamre ke andar bhi range par haasil sabhi halat ki nakal ki ja sakti hai. Saath hi coach halat ko apni marji se badal sakta hai aur use firer dwara ki ja rahi galtiyan computer ke screen par ya print out per dikh jati hain.

**Coaching Ke Tariqe**

1. Firing ka star tabhi sudhara ja sakta hai jab firing mein hone wali galtiyon ko sahi tarike se samajhkar unhen sudharne ke munasib upai kiye jayen yeh ek achhe coach ki visheshta hoti hai. Coach banne ke liye tajurbe ki zarurat hoti hai, lekin agar ham coaching ke tariqon ko samajh le to thore samay mein ham iske mahir ho sakte hain.
2. **Coach ke Liye Dhyan Mein Rakhne Wali Baten.**
   1. **Coach ki Khubian**
      1. Khud achha firer.
      2. Galti pakarne mein mahir ho.
      3. Sahanshil aur badhawa dene wala ho .
      4. **Jankar ho.**

(aa) Theory of small arms.

(ab) Hathiyar aur ammunition ke bare mein.

(ac) Group ke sidhant.

(ad) Shot group analysis.

(ae) SATS ki handling.

* 1. **Coach ke Liye Hidayaten**
     1. Coaching zarurat ke mutabiq.
     2. Firer ke star ka dhyan rakhe.
     3. Firer ko badhawa den.
     4. Galti ko saath saath batayen.

**Coaching ke tarike**

1. Coaching ek lagatar ki karhwai hai yani ki squad post training se shuru hokar, firing ke dauran aur firing ke baad tak. Islie sab se behtar yeh hoga ki sectioncommander khud jawan ka coach bhi ho. Phir bhi zarurat parne par coach mukarar kiye jate hai ya firer khud apas mein ek dusre ki coaching kar sakte hain. Coaching jin darjon mein ki jati hai woh niche bataye gaye hain.
2. **Firing se Pahle.**
   1. **Firer ka star pahchanana.** Firer ke firing data card aur record card se uski khas dhyan dene yogya kamjorion ka andaza lagaya ja sakta hai .
   2. Firer ki position aur shist durust ho.
   3. Khud firer ke nazdik munasib position le jisse woh galtiyon ko asani se pakar sake.
3. **Firing ke Dauran.**
   1. Dhyan firer par, halanki, kuch dhyan tgt par hone wale asar par bhi hona chahiye.
   2. Call tgt aur hit tgt ka dhyan rakhe.
   3. Niche diye gaye aam galtiyon ko pakaren:-
      1. Hathiyar ki kamiyan maslan, stocking/tuning up, tut fut, galat size ka butt.
      2. Shist mein jyada der rahna.
      3. Goliyon ke bich harkat dena, khas kar shir aur bayen kohni ko.
      4. Dhili pakar.
      5. Trigger jhatke se dabana, kandha marna, sans ki galti ya galat follow through.
4. **Firing ke Baad.**
   1. Call aur hit target ki tulna.
   2. Group ka size aur MPI ki jagah firing record card mein bharna.
   3. Agar hathiyar ki kami lage to check fire karna.
   4. Firer ko uski achhaiyan aur kamjorion ki jankari dena.
5. Squad post training mein har jawan firing mein hone wali galtiyon ke bare mein sikhta hai. Phir bhi anjane mein firing karte samay kai aise galtiyan karte hain jisse firing ka star girta hai. Agar ek achha coach firer ki galti ko pahchane, unhen firer ko samjhae aur sudharne wale exercise dwara unhen dur kare to firing ka star bahut achha ho jayega. SectionCommander ke weapon training ka sabse bara faida uske ek achha coach banne mein hi hai.

**CHAPTER – 58**

**COACHING THE LMG FIRER**

**Infanry Platoon Weapons Pamphlet No-6A Insas LMG (2006)**

**LMG Aur Rifle Fire Mein Antar**

1. LMG aur Rif mein kafi samantaen hain lekin kuchh khas batein jo ki coach ko dhyan mein rakhne chahiye woh is prakar hai:-

1. LMG ek sub unit ka hathiyar hai na ki ek personal hathiyar.
2. LMG ek automatic hathiyar hai aur isse single shot ke saath- saath burst fire bhi kiya jata hai. Isliye iske fire ka failao jyada hota hai. Rifle men sirf Three rd Brust fire karne ki suvidha hai.
3. LMG rifle se bhari hai aur iske saath ek bipod lagaya gaya hai jo ise sthirta deta hai.
4. **Banawat alag hone se**
   1. **Zeroing.** Ek coach ko dhyan mein rakhna chahiye ki LMG ko sabse achha firer (LMG No-1)zero karta hai, lekin section ke har jawan ko apna apna check group fire karna chahiye. Group ki MPI ki madad se har firer zarurat parne par apne point of aim ko correction de kar durust karta hai.
   2. **Position aur Pakar.** LMG ki position aur pakar mein shamil khas baatein iss prakar hai:-

(aa) Firer ka sharir, LMG ke pichhe seedha hona chahiye. Yani ki target, gun aur firer ka kandha ek line mein hona chahiye. Ismen kisi prakar ka tanav nahin hona chahiye. Kudrati sidhai milni chahiye.

(ab) Dahina hath pistol grip ko pakarta hai aur kalai jitni ho sake sidhi honi chahiye. Dahine hath ka kaam LMG ko pichhe aur niche khichna hai taki butt aur kandhe ka milap kudrati aur sadharan ho.

(ac) Baya hath small of the butt ko pakarta hai, char ungli upar se aur angutha niche se aur LMG ko pichhe khichte hue thoda niche dabata hai.

(ad) Butt aur kandhe ka milap kudrati ho aur usmen koi gap na ho.

(ae) Kalaiyonko andar ki taraf ghuma kar LMG ko lock karna chahiye isse LMG ki dahine aur bayen ki harkat nahin hogi.

(iii) **Anya Position.** Waise LMG ko kisi bhi position se durust fire kiya ja sakta hai lekin kai bar firer ke sharirik kamion ka position par asar par sakta hai. Is asar ko thik karne ka tarika is prakar hai:-

(aa) **Halka Wazan.** Yadi firer ka wazan kam ho to use apni taang faila lene chahiye, Taaki sharir ka zamin ke saath milap barh jaye aur jyada sthirtha mile.

(ab) **Panje Garhna.** Yadi firer ko apne panje gardne ki adat hai to uske panjon ke nicche sand bag lagana chahiye. Generally ek firer Recoil ko jajab karne ke liye apne panje garhta hai.

(ac) **Under Hand Grip.** Yadi firer ko apna shir bayen hath ke upar rakhne mein pareshani hoti hai to use bayen hath ki pakar niche se karne chahiye. Is position se us firer ko bhi faida hota hai jo bayen hath se LMG ko fire ke dauran bayen khinchte hain.

(e) **Auto fire hone se**

1. **Trigger Operation.** Yadi LMG ko single shot fire kiya jaye to LMG aur Rifle ke fire mein koi antar nahin hai. Burst fire ke dauran trigger ko chhorne ki karwai khas ahmiyat rakhti hai. Yadi trigger ko jhatke se chhora jayen to iske fire par bura asar hoga. Isliye coach ko iska dhyan rakhna chahiye. Jis tarah trigger ko dabaya jata haiusi tarah use chhorna bhi chahiye.
2. **Shot Release.** Jab LMG ko single shot fire karen to ismen aur rifle ke shot release mein koi antar nahin hai. Par burst ke dauran kafi recoil paida hota hai jisse shot release mein antar parta hai.Isliye jaruri hai ki burst ke dauran mazboot pakar aur sidhai ko banaya rakha jaye. Isse target par golion ka failao kam hoga.
3. **Follow Through.** LMG mein burst fire ke dauran follow through ki karwai karni chahiye. Yani ki pure burst fire ke dauran ek hi pakar aur shist banaya rakhna chahiye.

**Grouping Fire ko Coach Karne ki Tartib**

1. Grouping fire chahe short range par kiya jaye yani ki preliminary (prarambhik) stage ke dauran ya basic stage yani long range par usmen check karne wali batein aur tartib ek jaise honi chahiye.
2. Grouping fire ko coach karne ki tartib mein check karne wali batein is prakar se hain :-
   1. **Firing se pahle**
      1. Check firing record.
      2. Hathiyar ka nirikshan.
      3. Check target No.
      4. Firer ki position aur group check karna.
      5. Sight picture check karna.
      6. Firer ke dahine position lena.
   2. **Firing ke dauran**
      1. Firer ki galti ko note karna aur firing data card bharna.
      2. Firer ke dhyan ko na tode.
      3. Firer ko usi halat mein stop karen jab firer moti galti kar raha ho.
      4. Call target note karen.
      5. Is waqt jahan tak ho sake koi faisla na lein.
   3. **Firing ke baad**
      1. Group size napen.
      2. MPI ke position ko note karen.
      3. Call target aur hit target ko milaen.
      4. Group ka nirikshan karen.
      5. Fire ko discuss karen.
      6. Galti dur karne ke tariqe samjhaen.
      7. Firer ko badhawa den.
3. Ek firer dwara ki jane wali kuch galtian target dekhne se pata chalti hain.Firer ke dwara ki jane wali galtiyan coach single shot group aur burst gorup ke nirikshan karne se jaan pata hai.Yeh iss prakar hai:-
   1. **Single Shot Group ka Nirikshan.** Single shot group ka nirikshan karne ke liye har burst ki pahli goli ka nirikshan karna jaruri hai. Yeh pata karna ki ek burst ki pahli goli kon si hai bahut muskil hai. Ek burst fire karte samay yadi ek firer durust shist aur trigger operation ki karwai karta hai to uski pahli goli POA ke nazdik jakar lagegi baki golian thartharahat ke karan POA se dur aakar lagengi. Is baat ko madhya nazar rakhte hue ek burst ki pahli goli use mana jata hai jo ki POA ke sabse nazdik lagi ho. Single shot group ka nirikshan karne ke liye har burst ki pahli goli ke group ka nirikshan kiya jana chahiye tgt par single shot group ke khake ko dekhkar galtion ka usi prakar se pata chalega jis prakar INSAS rifle firer ko coach karne mein sikhaya gaya tha.
   2. **Burst Group.** Fire kiye gaye har burst aur uske bikhrao ki tartib ko dekhkar galtian kis prakar se pata chalti hain woh is prakar hain:-
      1. **LMG Pichhe Khinchna.**Yadi firer LMG ko fire ke dauran pichhe khinchta hai to golian ka failav aiming point se lekar upar ki taraf hoga.
      2. **LMG ko Age ko Dhakka Dena.** Yadi firer LMG ko aage ko dhaka deta hai to har agli goli pahli goli se niche lagegi. Pahli goli aiming point aur baki niche lagegi.
      3. **Bikhara Huwa Group.** Pakar kamjor hone se bikhra huwa group banega.
      4. **Bayen Hath (Master Grip).** Yadi golian bayen se dahine aur upar ko lagi ho to aisa group bayen hath (master grip) hone par banta hai.
      5. **Dahina Hath(master grip).** Yadi har agli goli pahli goli se bayen aur niche lagegi to aisa group dahina hath (master grip) hone se banta hai.

* + 1. **Eka-ek Majboot Pakar.**Firer pahli goli fire hone ke baad pakar ko maboot karta hai aisa karne se pahli goli thik lagti hai aur baki group kahin aur banta hai.

1. **Burst group fire mein coach ko janne wali baten.**
   1. Burst fire se group single shot group ki banispat bara banega.
   2. 30.5 mtr mein LMG bipod par 4 cm ka group size sahi mana gaya hai.
   3. Ek aiming mark par agar chand ek burst fire kiye gain ho unka phailav burst ki pahli goli ko ikathha rakhne ki kabliyat par nirbhar karta hai.
   4. Coach ko fire ka ausat group size (burst group ka) malum hona chahiye.
   5. Burst ka chhota ya bara group fire ke dauran LMG par control aur sidhai par nirbhar karega.
   6. Chand ek burston ki pahli goli kitna hatkar lagengi yeh single shot group ki kabliyat par nirbhar karta hai.
   7. Burst ki pahli goli fire karte samay marksmanship ke siddhanton ko madhya nazar rakha jaye.
2. Kafi had tak ek firer ki galtian, fire karte samay observe karne se pata lagaye ja sakti hain.

**Application Fire ke Dauran Coaching**

1. Prarambhik stage ki sikhlai pa lene ke baad firer ko agle stage par le jaye jata hai. Jise basic marksmanship stage kahte hai. Iss stage ke bhagon mein grouping, zeroing, application aur classification shamil hai.

**Application Fire**

1. LMG firer ki coaching ka aakhri hissa application fire hai. Application fire ke dauran, larai ke dauran istemal ki jane wali position aur combat target ka istemal kiya jata hai. Firer ko uski goli ki maar ko target par disc/flag se dikhayen. Firer apni goli ki maar ko dekh kar shist mein badli karta hai. Yahan par coach ki yeh koshis hogi ki firer ko lagatar badhawa de kar uski coaching ko baraya jaye.
2. **Application fire ko coach karne ki tartib is prakar se hai**
   1. **Firing se Pahle**
      1. Firer se fire ke vibhin pahlu ke upar discuss kare, ESA bhi discuss kara jaye.
      2. Yakin karo durust range laga hai.
   2. **Firing ke Dauran**
      1. Galtiyon ko note karo.
      2. Yakin karo MPI, ESA ke andar hai.
      3. Record card bharo.

* 1. **Firing ke Baad**
     1. Galtiyon ko discuss karo.
     2. Result note karo.
     3. Firer ko badhawa do.

10. Is lesson ke dauran apne LMG firer ko coaching dene ka tarika sikha hai. Achhi coaching dene se firer ko apne hathiyar aur khud par bharosa ho jata hai aur woh apne fire se achha natija haasil kar sakta hai.

**CHAPTER - 59**

**BATTLEFIELD SURVEILLANCE RADAR INDIGENOUS (SHORT RANGE)**

**Short Range BFSR EL/M 2129 (SR) 2005**

**Parichay**

Kisi bhi operation ke dauran infantry ki kamyabi ke liye yeh zaruri hai ki dushman ki zyada se zyada khabar haasil ki jaye. Waqt se pahle dushman ki harkaton ke bare mein pata karne ke liye kai tarah ki tukrian aur upkaran kam mein ate hain, jaise LC patrol, Depth area patrol, recce patrol, OP/LPs, stay behind parties, binocular, trip flare ityadi jinke bare mein aap pahle se hi waqif hain. Isi shrinkhala mein dushman ki harkat ka zyada duri par pata lagane wala ek navintam upakaran hai BFSR SR, yeh khas infantry aur Recce and Support Battalion ke upyog ke lie taiyar kiya gaya hai.

**BFSR SR se Waqfiat**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| (a) | Total Wt Radar And Assy | 47.21 kg |
| (b) | Total Weight | 29.9 kg |
| (c) | Transciever | 12.6 kg |
| (d) | Pedestal | 7.5kg |
| (e) | CDU(Control Display Unit) | 6.7 kg |
| (f) | Tripod | 3.1 kg |
| (g) | Battery Cable | 600g |
| (h) | Data With Bobbin | 1.9 kg |
| (j) | Head Set Assy | 400g |
| (k) | Telescop | 560g |
| (l) | Cable Type | 2 wire jd |
| (m) | Life of Battery | 2 se 3 yr |
| (n) | Setting Time | 5 min (approx) |
| (o) | Power Supply | 24 v lithium recharbale battery |
| (p) | Operating Range | 21 to 30 v dc |
| (q) | Azimuth Coverage | 359 degrees max |
| (r) | Frequency | 20 mhz (21 channel) |
| (s) | Accuracy | +/- 20 m |
| (t) | Azimuth | 4 degree |
| (u) | **Detection Range** |  |
|  | (i) Chalte Huwe Admi Ki Tukri | 5 km |
|  | (ii) Chalte Huwe Gari | 8 km |
|  | (iii) Single Walking Man | 2 km |
|  | (iv) Min Range | 100M |
|  | (v) Maximum Range | 18 KM |
|  | (vi) Crawling Man | 500M |
|  | (vii) Heavy Veh | 10 KM |
|  | (viii) B Veh | 08 KM |

1. **Visheshtayen (Characteristics**). BFSR ek portable aur battery se chalne wala radarhai. jo khas infantry ke istemal mein ata hai. Ise zamin par harkat karne wale admi aur garion ke bare mein jankari haasil karne ke lie istemal kiya jata hai.

**Hisse(Parts)**

1. Is radar ko char hisso mein banta ja sakta hai:-

* 1. **CDU(Control Display Unit)**. Iska casing alluminium ka bana hua hai. Operating control iske side mein bana hota hai. Yeh is system ka control unit hai. Yeh ek all weather equipment hai aur isko batteries aur antenna se connect kiya jata hai.
  2. **Tripod Stand**. Is mein ek mounting head assembly aur teen telescopic legs hote hain. Mounting head assembly ya pedestal guide pedestal se jurta hai aur uske upar mein ek bubble window hoti hai. Mounting head assembly ko 359 degree ghumaya ja sakta hai. Telescopic legs ke teen hisse hote hain aur alluminium ke bane hue hain.
  3. **Pedestal.** Yeh ek flexible neck ki tarah hota hai jo ke tripod aurantenna ko connect karta hai. iske andar antenna ko harkat dene ke liye do motor hoti hain.
  4. **Transceiver Antenna.** Yeh ek all weather mein operate karne wala equipment hai. jo ek aluminium casing mein band hai. Iske upar ek telescopic sight mounthai jo ki isko calliberate karne ke kaam aata hai. Isko pedestal par mount hokar 359 degrees ke ilake ko scan kar sakte hain.

**Working Principle (Chal Ka Sidhant)**

1. BFSR SR se ek second mein 2600 pulse RF energy transmit hota hai, jo kisi bhi vastutarget par takrakar wapas hoti hai aur jo radar par jahir hoti hai. Sirf harkati target ko hi yeh pata kar sakta hai aur radar ke head phones mein awaz sunai deta hai aur range display par target ki details deta hai. BFSR SR line of sight aur DOPPLER effect ke principle par kaam karta hai.

**Istemal (Tactics Emp)**

1. BFSR ka istemal kai halato mein kiya ja sakta hai jaise ki:-

(a) Kam visibility (Andheri raat).

* 1. Fog (kohra).
  2. Smoke (Dhuan).
  3. Dust Storm (Aandhi /Toofan).
  4. Barish.
  5. Snow fall.

1. **Surveillanveaur Observation.** Dushman ki approaches, khas ahmiyat wale zamin par nazar rakhna.
2. **Defence Mein.** Patrolling mein istemal, defence ke gaps ka suvellience aur infiltration routes ki dekhbhal.
3. **Attack Mein.**  Dushman ke defence ke failao ke bare mein khabar haasil karna, attack mein firm base ke open flank ke dekhbal, dushman ke main defence ke aage harkat karte chotte tukriyon ka pata lagana.
4. **Hadbandiyan.** 
   1. 2 ft/section se dhire crawl karte hue admi ka detection nahin hoga.
   2. Single aadmi aur group ke beech ka farak pata karna mushkil hai. Yeh 60m tak ke target ko ek hi samajhta hai.
   3. Adhik jungle wale ilake mein detection mushkil.
   4. Tez hawa mein pedon ke beech detection mushkil.

**Dekh, Rekh, Safai, Deployment Aur Istemal**

1. **Daily Preventive Maintenance Check.** Kisi mission mein jaane se pahle aur aane ke bad equipment ke nimnlikhit baaton ko check karen:-
   1. **Tripod Stand.** 
      1. Teenon legs ke locks theek hain, kahin se mura to nahi hai aur teenon legs theek prakar kam karte hain.
      2. Azimuth scale dial mein koi kharonch ya dhul jama na ho.
   2. **Pedestal.** 
      1. Guide pedestal ho, lugs mura na ho aur saf kapre se guide pedestal wale bhag ko saaf karo. Andruni bhag (Internal surface) ko emery paper aur carborundom powder se saf nahi karna chahiye taki uska andruni bhag kharab na ho.
      2. Dhyan rahe ki guide pedestal antenna mein fit ho jaye.
   3. **Radar Unit.** 
      1. Koi bhi cable connection aur ports tute to nahi hai.
      2. Kisi bhi part ko gum hone ya tut phut se bachana chahiye.
   4. **Head Set Assembly(Antenna).** 
      1. Head band tuta aur gum nahi hona chahiye.
      2. Cable kata na ho.
      3. Electrical ear-pieces tuta hua na ho.
   5. **Power Cable.** Cable power connector saf ho aur tuta huwa na ho.
   6. **Battery Pack.** Iske terminals damage nahi hona chahiye.
   7. **Central Display Unit.** 
      1. Battery aur head set theek se jura ho, antenna theek se jura ho.
      2. Transmitter ko chalane ke lie 30 se 50 second ka intezar karen.
2. **Cleaning.** Iske sabhi hisse purzon ke dhul, garda aur grease ko naram kapre se saaf karna chahiye. Range readout counter window ko garam sabun ke pani mein ghol bana kar kapre mein bhigo kar aur kapre ko nichorkar saf karna chahiye. Power input aur headset connector ko naram brush se saf kare. Dhyan rahe ki iske saf safai ke samay lamba - lamba sans na liya jaye aur yakin karen ki isko khule hawa mein saf kiya ja raha hai. Isko aag ke nazdik saf nahi karna chahiye. Operation ke dauran iske ird-grid 1m ke ilaqe mein koi nahi hona chahiye.
3. **Alag Alag Tapman wale Ilaqe mein Istemal.** 
   1. **Garmi aur Barish wale Ilaqe mein Istemal.** Dhup wale ilaqe mein isko zyada der istemal kar rahe hon to iske lohe wale bhag garam ho jayenge. Jiske karan isko chhune se chamra wala bhag jal sakta hai. Yadi bina patte wala darakht iske chal mein rukawat dal raha ho to usko kat diya jaye. Agar ho sake to isse sidha dhup aur barish se bachaya jaye. Isko is parkar banaya gaya hai ki is par pani ka koi asar nahi hai phir bhi ho sakta hai iske range readout counter window par asar pare aur range pata karne mein dikkat pesh aye. Head phone ko sukha rakhen, yeh water proof nahi ho raha ho to head phone ko tripod control handle par latka kar rakhen. Check karen ki wave guide dipole mein pani to nahin hai. Yadi pani hai to use saf karen. Zyada tej barish mein head phone mein zyada awaz ati hai to is halat mein range ka pata karna mushkil ho jata hai.
   2. **Thande Ilaqe Mein Istemal (High Altitude).** Bahut thande ilaqe mein iske istemal karte samay dastane ka istemal karen. Khali hath se isko na chhuen jisse chamre par koi asar pare. Thande sthan se isse ek dam garam sthan par na le jaye. Garam hawa iske range readout counter par asar dal sakta hai. Jisse range saf nahi dikhai degi. Antenna aur wave guide dipole mein jama barf ko saf karen. Zyada baraf jama hone se iske chal mein farak aa sakta hai.
   3. **Desert Ilaqe Mein Istemal.** Toofani retili hawa aur kohra mein range readout window ko band kar sakte hain. Retile ilaqe mein isse target ka pata lagane ke lie unche ilaqe mein istemal karen. Ret(sand) ka upari bhag ho sakta hai RF power zyada na de aur tuta phuta bhag harkati target ko dhundne mein rukawat dhalta hai . Equipment ko yadi istemal nahi kar rahe hain to ise kapre se dhak kar rakh den.

**Handling**

1. **BFSR ko Jorne Ka Tariqa**. Ek surveillance det mein 3 OR kam karte hai. Ek commander, No-1 aur No-2.
   1. **Commander ke Pass Saman**. Map, Compass, Binocular aur 2 Battery pack.
   2. **No-1 ke Pass Saman**. CDU (control and display unit), Pedestal, Head set aur Tripod.
   3. **No-2 ke Pass Saman.** Transceiver Antenna, Telescope, Cables.
2. **Lagane ka tariqa.**
   1. **Tripod ko Lagana.** Tripod ko lagane se pehle dhyan mein rakhne wali baten:-
      1. Dushman ki nazar aur goli se bachav ho.
      2. Antenna aise jagah legaya jaye jahan se dushman ke aane ka andesha ho ya jis ilake khabar haasil karna ho.
      3. Tripod adjustable hai ise subidha ke mutabik up,down aur flat karke lagaya ja sakta hai. Tripod lagate samay dhyan rahe ki bubble madhaya mein ho.
   2. **Pedestal ko Lagana.** Pedestal ko lagate samay dhyan rahe ki mechanical stopper apni taraf ho pedsetal guide ko tripod ke upar fit karen. Pedestal ke niche ek nut laga hua hai use tight karen.
   3. **Tranceiver Antenna ko Lagana.** Antenna ke lug ko Pedestal ke katav ke saath milaen Pedestal ke upar 2 screw lage hain dono screw ko tight karen.
   4. **Telescope ko Lagana.** Telescope ko telescope mount ke upar fit karen aur nut ko tight karen.
   5. **Antenna Cable ko Lagana.** Antenne cable ko lagane ke liye cable ke jis kinare par 3 API likh hua hai us kinare ko antenna ke saath join karen. Antenna cable mein ek ring laga hua hai ring ko Pedestal ke huk ke saath lagayen.
   6. **CDU ko Lagana.** Antenna cable ko CDU ke saath join karen jahan par J2 likha hua hai.
   7. **Battery ko Connect karna.** Battery ko lagate samay battery se battery ka apsi fasla kam se kam 6” hona chahiye taki shot circut na ho. Bridge cable ke ek kinare ko + (plus) mein aur dusre kinare ko – (Negative) mein join karen. Power cable ke red cable ko + (plus) mein aur black cable – (negative) ke screw ke saath join karten. Power cable ke dusre kinare ko CDU ke saath join kare jahan par J-1 likha hua hai aur CDU ko on karne se pahle Antenna switch ko ON Karen.
   8. **Head Set ko lagana.** Head Set ko lagate ke liye CDU mein jahan per J-6 likha hua hai joint karein.
3. BFSR (SR) ka employment iski hadbandyon ko dhyan mein rakhte hue karna chahiye jisse iska pura faida uthaya ja sake.

**CHAPTER -60**

**HAND HELD THERMAL IMAGER (HHTI) AND LASER RANGE FINDER (LRF)**

Laser Range Finder 2005/Hand Held Thermal Imager 2004

**Parichay**

1. Yudhon ko itihas utna hi purana hai jitna ki manav itihas. Har yudh ke saath larai ke tariqe/ tactics aur equipments mein badlav hote rahe hain. Hamari sena mein bhi is adhunikaran ki wajah se tactics badle aur naye yantra shamil kie gaye. Is adhunikaran ke tehat abhi haal hi mein Automatic Grenade Launchers, Missiles, naye Radio Set, Multishot Grenade Launcher adi shamil kiye gaye. HHTI aur LRF bhi naye yantra hain jo abhi haal hi mein induct kiye gaye hain.

**HHTI se Jankari**

1. Purane zamane mein yudh subah shuru hokar sham ko bugle bajte hi band ho jata tha. Phir samay ke saath surprise haasil karne ke liye yudh raat mein bhi lare jane lage. Is liye raat mein bhi dekhne ke liye naye tariqe ka awishkar hota raha, phir woh mashal ka istemal se lekar illuminating round, PNVD aye aur ab HHTI ka istemal ho raha hai. HHTI hamen raat, kathin battlefield condition aur kharab roshni mein dekhne ki kshamta pradan karta hai.
2. **Technical Data.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  |  | (a) | Weight : 3.9 kg |
|  |  | (b) | Focus range : 100 mtr se infinity tak (NFOV) |
|  |  |  | : 20 mtr se infinity tak. (WFOV) |
|  |  | (c) | Detection range : Man - 1.5 km to 2 km |
|  |  |  | : Vehicle - 2.5 to 3 km |
|  |  | (d) | Operation time : 2 hours(standard NiMH battery ke saath). |
|  |  | (e) | Ready time : 5-8 minute off position se. |
|  |  |  | : 45 second stand by mode se. |

* 1. Operating temperature : -30o c to +55o c

* 1. Storage temperature : -30o to +70o c
  2. Rectical pattern our range estimation ka khaka(with the help of chart).

1. **Accessories of HHTI.**

* 1. Logistic container.
  2. AC/DC adapter.
  3. Tripod.
  4. Interface plate (part of tripod)
  5. Battery charger.
  6. Cleaning kit set.
  7. Operating manual.
  8. Rechargeable battery.

1. **Operation ke Sidhant.** Yeh yantra aspas ki vastuon ke tapman mein fark ko pehchan kar object/ target ko detect karta hai. Ismein tapman ke anusar object ko detect kar darshane ke liye white hot/ black hot polarity ka bandobast hai. Iss siddhant ko thermal imaging bhi kahte hain. Takniki bhasha mein yeh Forward Looking Infra Red(FLIR) ke siddhat par kaam karta hai.
2. **Vishestaen aur Hadbandiyan.**
   1. **Visheshtaen.** 
      1. Kafi lambe range tak detect kar sakta hai.
      2. Andheri raat, kharab roshni, camouflage aur kohre mein bhi dekhne ki kshamta rakhta hai.
      3. Din ke samay bhi istemal kiya ja sakta hai.
      4. Zoom ka bhi bandobast hai.
      5. Ismen LRF, video out put aur specific test equipment ke liye interface jorne ka bandobast hai.
      6. Nazdiki range par hathiyar aur equipment ka khaka pehchana ja sakta hai.
   2. **Hadbandiyan.**
      1. Lamba ready time.
      2. Battery ke karan simit operational time.
      3. Ghane khore, dhuen aur pedon/ jharidar ilake mein detection kam reduce ho jata hai.
3. **Maintenance aur Storage mein Dhyan Dene wali Baten**. Kisi bhi equipment ko lambe samay tak operational/serviceable rakhne ke liye yah nihayat zaruri hai ki uski sahi dekhbhal ki jaye. HHTI ki dekhbhal mein chand ek zaruri baten is parkar hai:-
   1. Safai ke dauran chemical/rashayan ka istemal na kare kyonki isse plastic aur rubber parts ka kharab hone ka khatra rahta hai.
   2. Lens ko kapre ya rumal se saaf na karen.
   3. Operation ke dauran battery ko puri tarah discharge na karen.
   4. Battery ko kholne ka prayas na karen, isse explode hone ka khatra ho sakta hai.
   5. Batteryko aisi jagah na rakhen jahan par tapman 65oC se adhik ya -20oC se kam ho.
   6. Short term storage mein 0 degree se 25 degree celsius tapman mein rakhen. Battery pratidin apni capacity ka 1% lose karti hai.
   7. Long term storage ke dauran har 12 mahine mein battery ko recharge karen.

**LRF se Waqfiat**

1. Kisi bhi target par kargar fire girakar usko barbad karne ke liye uske range ka sahi andaza lagana nihayat zaruri hai. Pehle ham halving aur Section average jaise tarikon se range ka andaza lagate the par ab LRF se accurate range pata lagana sambhav hai.
2. **Technical Data.**
   1. Weight : 1.5 kg.
   2. Range : Max - 20,000 m.

: Min - 80 m. : Accuracy - + 5 m.

* 1. Measuring frequency : Har 6 section mein ek shot.
  2. FOV : 6 degree + 0.5 degree (horizontal)
  3. Magnification : 6X(6 times)
  4. Operatingtemperature : -20 deg C to 65 deg C
  5. Operating voltage : 10V to 30 V DC
  6. Eye safe distance : 800 Mtr

(j) Battery : NiCd Rechargeable (12 V) 220 MAH

1. **Accessories.**
   1. Range finder Laser Hand Held LH-30.
   2. Battery secondary NiCd 12 V (02 Nos).
   3. Cleaning kit.
   4. Case carrying LRF.
   5. Charger battery.
   6. AC adapter.
   7. Tripod stand with case carrying.
2. **Principle of Operation.** Iska operation echo ke sidhant par adharit hai. Ek adrishya (invisible) high intensity ki infra-red light target par transmit ki jati hai aur reflected light wapas receive ki jati hai. Is infra-red light ka target ko hit kar wapas ane ka time electrically napa jata hai aur phir isko automatically doori mein badla jata hai.
3. **Reticle Pattern.** LRF mein target par aim karne ke liye aur range dikhane ke liye ek reticle pattern diya gaya hai. Ise neeche chitra mein darshaya gaya hai.

Aiming Circle

circle

Ready

Indicator

Low voltage

|  |
| --- |
| Range |

1. **Filter Assembly.**Yeh kam range wale target ki duri ko napne ke kam ata hai. Iske istemal se eye safe distance 800m se ghatkar 125m ho jati hai, par saath hi maximum range bhi 6000m tak ho jati hai. Iska istemal amuman 1km se kam duri wale target ka range napne ke kaam ata hai.
2. Yadi aap HHTI ka sahi istemal kare toh paramparik yudh aur counter terrorist operation ki halat mein dushman aur terrorist ki ghuspaith /movement ko samay par detect kar action le sakte hai. Saath hi LRF ke zariye range measure kar kisi bhi target par bahut hi accurate fire dalkar barbad kiya ja sakta hai.

### CHAPTER - 61

**INFANTRY BATTALION KE RADIO SETS**

**Parichay**

1. Radio Sets (RS) ladai ke maidan mein communication ke pramukh saadhan hai. Inke theek prayog aur dekh rekh se hum ladai mein ya anya ops mein communication mein rehte hai, jiski kisi bhi prakaar ke operation mein bahut avashyakta hoti hai. Isi karanvarsh, har section commander ko, ek Infantry Batttalion mein issue kiye gaye har RS ke bare mein jaankari honi chahiye.

**RS Stars V**

1. **Suvidhaen.** 
   1. Halka aur portable hain.
   2. Clear aur secure mode mein kam kar sakte hain.
   3. 8 channel pre-set aur 1 channel manual set kar sakte hain.
   4. 32 crypto key aur ek manual key set kar sakte hain.
   5. Extension data ko in put/out put kar sakte hain.
   6. Pre-set data ko erase kar sakte hain.
   7. RS aur RCU ke beech milap kar sakte hain.
   8. Sulk mode operation kar sakte hain.
   9. Auto test equipment (ATE) ka bando bast hain.
   10. Selective call ka bandobast hain.
   11. Extension control ka bandobast hain.
   12. Scan mode ki suvidha hain.
   13. Local re-broadcasting/remote rebroadcasting kar sakte hain.
2. **Tech Data.**

* 1. Total Weight - 15.50 kg 2 x Ni-Cd battery.

- 12.60 kg 2x LiSO2 battery.

* 1. Frequency Range - 30.000 MHz to 87.975 MHz.
  2. Channel Spacing - 25 KHz.
  3. Total Channel - 23 20.
  4. Unusable Channel - 67.

1. **Communication Range.** 
   1. Tape antenna 1.5 mtr - 5 - 7 km
   2. Whip antenna 3.1 mtr - 9 - 12 km
   3. GPA - 25 km
2. **Power Supply.**
   1. **Battery Pack Ni - Cd 12 V 7AH**.
      1. Life - TX : RX, 1 : 9 -11 hrs (CLR) 10.5 hrs (SECTION).

TX : RX : S BY (1:2:7) 14 HRS CLR.

* 1. **Battery LiSO2 12 V 15 AH.**

(i) Shelf Life - 65 month.

* + 1. Bty Life– TX:RX (1:9) 26 hrs CLR, 25.5 hrs(SECTION).

TX:RX:S BY (1:2:7) 35 hrs CLEAR.

1. **Awashyak Samagri.** 
   1. Radio set.
   2. Hand set.
   3. Head gear assembly.
   4. Battery pack Ni-Cd 12V 7 AH.
   5. Battery pack LiSO 12V 15 AH.
   6. Antenna tape 1.5 mtr.
   7. Antenna whip 3.1 mtr.
   8. Carrying harness.

(j) Extension control.

(h) Cable for extension control.

* 1. Fill gun.
  2. Cable for fill gun.
  3. Solar bty charger.
  4. Main power cable 2 m for charger**.**
  5. Battery cable assembly.
  6. Cable for radio set (RWI).
  7. RCU.
  8. Adaptor charger.

1. **Radio Set Ko Jorna.**
   1. Yakin karo accessories poori hai..
   2. Charge battery joro.
   3. Antenna ko lagao.
   4. Hand set lagao.
2. **Frequency Preset Karna.**
   1. Function SW program par karo.
   2. Channel SW ko 1 par karo.
   3. ‘F’ button ko press karo
   4. Frequency ke figure press karo.
3. **Manual Frequency Setting.**
   1. Function SW ‘on’ karo.
   2. Channel SW ko ‘man’ par karo.
   3. ‘F’ key ko press karo display mein frequency show hoga aur uske bad ‘P’ ayega.
   4. Frequency ke figure press karo.
   5. Frequency ko badli karne ke lie up aur down key ka prayog karo.

**Note** :- Set off karne ke bad manual Frequency samapt ho jati hai.

1. **Operating.** 
   1. Function SW zarurat ke anusar karo.
   2. Channel SW ki position zarurat ke anusar karo.
   3. Secrecy mode mein operate karna hai to key ka selection karo.
   4. Zarurat ke anusar power select karo.
   5. Ab RS operate karne ke lie taiyar hai.
2. **Close Down.** 
   1. Function SW off par karo.
   2. Antenna ko utaro.
   3. Hand set nikalo.
   4. Battery nikalo.
   5. Sabhi dust cap lagao.

**RS GROUP- 338 MOTOROLA**

1. **Aam Varnan.** Radio Set GROUP- 338 ek VHF/UHF Radio hai. Is ka frequencyrange VHF Mode mein 136 MHz se 174 MHz aur UHF mode mein 403 MHz se 470 MHz tak hai. Jis ko 128 channel mein aur 8 zone mein banta geya hai. Ek zone mein 16 channel pre set kar sakte hain. Is Radio Set ko normal aur secrecy equipment ke taur par istemal kiya ja sakta hai. Is Radio Set se cloning kiya ja sakta hai.
2. **Suvidhayen.**
   1. 8 zone mein 128 channel program kar sakte hain.
   2. Scan aur priority scan ka bandobast hai.
   3. Selective call kar sakte hain.
   4. Call alert bhej sakte hain.
   5. Radio check ki suvidha hai.
   6. Samay ke liye clock ka bandobast hai.
   7. Power output select kar sakte hain.
   8. Reminder alarm ka bandobast hai.
   9. Secure aur clear communication kar sakte hain.
   10. Repeater se communication range bara sakte hain.
   11. Tones ko enable aur disable kar sakte hain .
   12. Call tone aur name tone tagging ki suvidha hai.
   13. Compounding ki suvidha hai.
   14. Esc alert ki suvidha hai.

* 1. Battery strength indicator ka bandobast hai.
  2. Receiving signal strength indicator ka bandobast hai.
  3. 14 character alpha numeric LCD display ka bandobast hai.

1. **Tech Data.**
   1. Dimension with NiMH High Cap Battery: 137 x 57.5 x 37.5 mm.
   2. Weight with NiMH High Cap Battery: 420 grams.
   3. **Frequency Range.**
      1. VHF mode mein 136 MHz se 174 MHz.
      2. UHF mode mein 403 MHz se 470 MHz tak hai.

* 1. **Communication Range.** Is radio set ka communication range 4 se 5 km hai aurrepeater ke saath 16 to 20 km tak hai.

1. **Banawat.** Banawat ke hisab se is radio set ko char bare bhagon mein banta gaya hai .
   1. **Top Panel.** Top Panel par lage control ke naam aur kaam is prakar hain:-
      1. **On/ off Volume Knob.** Is knob ki madad se radio set ko power supply ke saath jorne ke liye aur volume ko control karne ke liye istemal kiya jata hai.
      2. **Channel Selector Knob.** Is knob ki madad se jarurat ke anusar channel ko lagaya jata hai.
      3. **Top button.** Is button ko program kiya ja sakta hai (alert tone ke liye )
      4. **Antenna Mount.** Is ke upper jarurat ke anusar antenna fit kiye jate hai.
   2. **Side Panel.**Side panel par lage control ke naam aur kam is prakar hain:-
      1. **Side Button 1.**Yeh button bhi programmable hai is button ko short press karne se radio set monitoring mode mein kam karta hai aur long press karne se radio set normal mode mein aa jata hai.
      2. **Press to Talk Switch.** Is switch ko press karne se radio set transmission mode mein chala jata hai aur chhodne par reception mode mein kam karta hai.
      3. **Side Button 2.** Yeh button bhi programmable hai. Is ko bhi short press karne se radio set scan mode mein chala jata hai aur long press karne par radio set scan se out ho jata hai.
      4. **Side Button 3.** Yeh button bhi programmable hai. Option board ke liye hai.
      5. **Right Side Assembly mount.** Is mount par computer se programming karte samay IC cable ko jora jata hai. Dusara is ke upper air phone head set microphone ko jora jata hai. Tisra palmtop se secrecy key ko scramble karte samay IC cable ko jora jata hai. Aam halat mein is ko dust cap se band rakha jata hai.
      6. **Front Panel Programming Button.** Yeh kul 6 hai.

(aa) **Exit key.** Is key ki madad se program ho jane ke baad programming se bahar niklne ke liye hai.

(ab) **Up key.** Is key ki madad se programme ko ek strip up kiya jata hai.

(ac) **Menu select key.** Is key se menu ko select keya jata hai.

(ad) **P-1 key.**  Is key ki madad se programme ko ek strip lift kiya jata

hai.

(ae) **P-2 Key.** Is key se programme ko ek strip down kiya jata hai.

(af) **P-3 key.**Is key se programme ko ek strip right kiya jata hai.

* 1. **Front panel.**
     1. **Key Pad.** Yah key pad ek A/ N key pad hai. Is ke upper 0 se 9 tak fig ke 10 key aur ek key star aur ek key extract key hai har key ka multi role kam hai is ke liye har key ke upper A se Z likha gaya hai. Is key pad ki madad se programming ke dauran frequency select karne , secrecy key ko banane ke liye, phone number lagane ke liye , radio ID bharte samay istemal kiya jata hai.
     2. **LCD Display.** Yah ek 14 character LCD display window hai aur is mein 14 type ke indicator display hote hai.
  2. **Back Panel.** Is radio set ke back panel par bty ko fit kiya jata hai.

**RS HX PRC 6020**

1. **Aam Varnan**. Yah radio set aam taur par man pack role ke liye banaya gaya hai. Jo HF tatha AM prakar ka hai. Yah un sabhi radio sets se milap kar sakta hai, jinka frequency range inse milta ho tatha AM prakar ke hon. Jarurat parne par ham is set ko vehicle tatha ground station ke taur per bhi istemal kar sakte hain. Iska nirman Tadrian Company (Israel) dwara kiya gaya hai.
2. **Suvidhayen.**
   1. Halka aur portable hai.
   2. Man pack, Ground tatha Vehicle station hai.
   3. Voice communication ke alawa CW aur flash msg bhej sakte hain.
   4. Clear / Secrecy mode mein kam kar sakte hain.
   5. Frequency ke 100 channel ko preset kar sakte hain.
   6. Power out select kar sakte hain. (High, Med, Low aur Adoptive)
   7. 180 auto call kar sakte hain
   8. Data in put / out put kar sakte hain.
   9. Whip antenna ke alawa Dipole antenna bhi istemal kar sakte hain.
   10. Selective call ki suvidha hai.
   11. 10 secrecy key preset kar sakte hain.
   12. 10 frequency hopping table ki suvidha hai.
   13. Scan mode mein kaam kar sakte hain.
   14. Date / time alarm ki suvidha hai.
   15. Programing Data Erase ki suvidha hai.
   16. Single frequency ke alawa Duel Frequency per bhi kam kar sakte hain.
   17. Squelch / Trace ki suvidha hai.
   18. Remote operating kar sakte hain.
   19. 100 Flash message store kar sakte hain.
   20. Jamming se bachav hai.
3. **Tech Data.**
   1. Frequency range - 1.50000 MHz to 29.9999 MHz.
   2. Nos of Channels - 2, 85, 000.
   3. Channel spacing - 100 Hz.
   4. **Communication Range.**
      1. With Antenna Whip - 10 – 25 km.
      2. With Dipole Antenna - 25 - 250 km.
4. Communication kisi bhi operation ke safalta ke liya ek mool siddhant hai jiske bina koi bhi ladai safaltapurvak nahi ladi ja sakti. Ismen Radio communication ek bahut hi aham hissa hai. Isliye yeh zaruri hai ki junior leader hone ke nate infantry battalion mein istemal hone wale radio sets ki jankari ho jisse ise ladai mein sahi tariqe se istemal kiya ja sake.

**INFANTRY BATTLE DRILLS**

**CHAPTER - 62**

**SURVEILLANCE, OBSERVATION AUR DURI NAPNE KI DRILL**

**Parichay**

1. BFSR, HR Binocular, PNS aur UGS jaise naye upkarnon ke aa jaane ke saath hi Infantry ki saadhak, kargar aur yatharth surveillance, observation aur doori pehchanne ki kabiliyat atyadhik barh gayi hain. Ab bahut kam janbal (manpower) tainaat karke ek ilaqe ko adhik kargar surveillance ke andar rakhna sambhav ho gaya hain. Duri ka aakalan karna bhi asaan ho gaya hain.

**Sujhai Drills**

1. **Surveillance aur Observation Drill.** 
   1. Surveillance (Nigarani) ka star, yogyata (Kabiliyat) ke adhar par sahi surveillance upkaran chunane aur usey lagane par hain. Iske liye yeh zaruri hai ki jis kshetra ko surveillance ke andar rakhna ho usey lambai aur chaurai ke adhar par sectors main banta jaye aur har sector ke liye atyadhik kabil aur sab se anukool surveillance upkaran ki baant ki jaye.
   2. Zimmedari ke ilaqe ko khoj kshetra (detection zone) aur pehchan kshetra (recog zone) main banta jana chahiye aur surveillance upkaran ki kshamta ke aadhar par kshetron (zones) ka bantwara kiya jaye. Ek surveillance grid sthapit karne ka prayaas kiya jana chahiye. Upkarnon (Devices) ke beech overlap (paraspar vyapat) karna vivek purna hoga jisse zimmedari ke ilaqe main koi dead zone na ho. BFSR apni lambi range ki vajah se detection zone par nigarani rakhane ke liye purna taraha se anukool hain. BSFR ki tainati ki jaye taki koi ilaqa bina nigarani ke na rahe. BSFR (ELM-2129) 5-6 km tak manushya aur 16 km tak gariyon ke bare mein pata lagane mein saksham hain. BFSR mein kuch paidayishi khamiyaan hain, jaise ki drishya pradarshan (visual display) mein saksham nahi hain, aur issi liye sakaraatmak pehchan (positive iden) nahi de sakta.
   3. BFSR dwara pradaan ki gayi jankariyon ko pehchanne aur uski pushti karne ke liye, HHTIs ko tainaat kiya jana chahiye. Is tarah HHTIs identification zone (pehchan ke ilaqe) ko cover karenge.
   4. Kuch mauqe aise bhi honge jab bhubhaag samakruti (terrain configuration) BFSRs ke liye dead ho, aise area mein UGS ko tainaat karna uchit hoga.
   5. Nazdiki ranges ke liye PNVDs/ Telescopic sights, HR BINOs ke saath hi nangi ankhon se bhi avlokan kiya jana chahiye.
   6. BFSRs ko referencepoints ki pehchan karne ke liye istemal kiya ja sakta hain. In referencepoints ko raat mein pehchan aur dekhbhal (observation) ke liye istemal kiya ja sakta hain.
   7. Sabhi prakaar ki khabaron ko comapny aur battalion sthar par sthapit surveillance centres ko pahunchaya jaye, aur wahan se vibhhin upyogkartaon (users) ke liye vitrit (distribute) kiya jaye. Vartmaan mein battalionsurveillance centre ke paas sensors se sidhe jankari hansil karne ki kshamata nahin hain aur is liye jankari ko surakshit network se bheja jayega. Is khabar ko battalionlevel par upalabdh karane ka prayaas hona chahiye jahaan jald se jald nirnaye liye jane hain.
   8. OPs ka pariniyojan (deployment) abhi bhi mahatvapurna rahega. Halanki uplabdh night surveillance kshamantaon ke saath LPs ke pariniyojan (deploy) ki zarurat shaayad na ho. Jahan bhi field of view izajat de wahan OPs ko surveillance ki atirikt zimmedari di ja sakti hain.
2. **Duri Jannchna (Judging Distance).** Purane tariqon ke alawa nimnalikhit ka bhi upyog kiya ja sakta hain: -
   1. **LRF.** 80m se 20 km tak ki range napne ke liye istemal kiya ja sakta hain. 1700m tak ki range ka aakalan bahut hi satikta se kiya ja sakta hain.
   2. **GPS.** LRF ke saath sanyojan ke roop mein GPS aur digital compass ke istemal se ek sthan ka satik range aur GR hansil kiya ja sakta hain.
   3. **Weapon Sights.** SVDN aur RL jaisi weapon sights se target ki unchaai se unki range ka pata lagaya ja sakta hain.

**CHAPTER - 63**

**NAVIGATION DRILL**

**Parichay**

1. GPS, digital compass aur LRF ke praveshan se, navigation saral ho gaya hain aur isiliye navigation drills mein roopantar karne ki zarurat hain. Navigation se judey paramparik drills ka palan karna zaruri nahin reh gaya hain. Upalabdh kshamataon ka puri tarah se istemal kiya jana chahiye. Sujhai drills aage ke paragraphs mein diye gaye hain. Lekin yeh dhyan mein rahka jaye ki GPS par atyadhik nirbhar nahin rehna chahiye kyonki ho sakta hain ki yeh trutipuran (defective) ho ya apratyashit paristhitiyon ki vajah se upalabdh na ho, aur isliye paramparagat map reading ka gyaan abhi bhi utna hi mahatvapurna hain.

**Sujhai Drill (Suggested Drill)**

1. **Nafri**. Navigation party ki nafri ko kam kar chaar se do kiya ja sakta hai.
   1. **Navigator**. Wah navigation ke liye kul milakar zimmedaar hoga.
      1. Ek GPS carry karega jismen way points, route aur obstacles ka vivaran pehle se bhara (feed) hon.
      2. Digital Compass, map aur bino ley jayega.
      3. Sahayak navigator uski sahayata karega.
   2. **Sahayak Navigator (Asistant Navigator)**. Yeh navigator ki sahayata karega.
      1. Ek GPS carry karega jismen way points, raaste (route) aur badhaon (obsts) ka vivaran pehle se feed ho.
      2. Digital compass aur atirikt btys ke saath NVG/ NVB bhi le jayega.
2. **Move ka Tariqa.** 
   1. Navigator party ko lead karega aur asst navigator usko follow karega.
   2. Ilaqon mein jahan dushman se sampark ki sambhavana zyada hain, wahan scouts/ anya specialized (visheshgya) party navigator se aage chalegi.
   3. GPS switch on kiya jata hain aur marg ka agla way point/ bound nirdharit kiya jata hain.
   4. Yadi uplabdh hon to referencepoints ka chayan kiya ja sakta hain jisse GPS ko hamesha haanton mein na rakha jaye. Cross track alarm aur nikatta (proximity) alarm ki sahayata li ja sakti hain. GPS hamesha prastavit raaste (route) ko aur jis raaste par party ja rahi hain ko darshayega.
   5. Ek baadha (obstacle) ka samna karte samaye, sabse acchi crossing site ka chayan kiya jata hain aur us site se baadha (obstacle) ko cross kiya jata hain. Ek baar dusri taraf jaane ke baad GPS auto agle way point/ bound ki bearing dikhayega.
   6. Bound/ Bound ke nikat pahunchne par GPS swayam hi marg ke agle way pt par switch ho jayega.
   7. Niyamit antaraal ke baad, do tarfa partaal (cross check) ke liye GR note kiya ja sakta hain.

(g ) Vyakti ki chalang/ pairon ke naap mein jo antar hain use nakaar diya gaya hain.

(h) Navigator aur assistant nagivator awashyakta hone par duty mein adlabadli bhi kar sakte hain.

(j) Aakasmiktaon ka samna karne ke liye, navigation party dwara atirikt GPS aur night march chart carry kiya jana chahiye.

**CHAPTER - 64**

**BUNKER BARBAAD KARNE KI DRILL**

**Parishay**

1. Ek Infantrysection ke liye bunker bursting ek mahatvapurna kaam hain. Adarsh roop se, apni khud ke hatahaton ki sankhya kam se kam rakhne ke liye bunkaron ka vinaash objective hasil karne se pehle kiya jana chahiye. Pehle yeh sambhav nahi tha kyunki aisa karne ke liye Infantry ke paas kabil hathiyaar nahin the. Tathapi Infantry ke paas ab nayee peerhi ke hathiyaar, range pata lagane wale aur dekhbhaal karne wale upkaran upalabhd hain jinse ki bunkers ko pehchana aur sukhshamata (precision) waale ammunition ke saath stand off range se unhe barbad kiya ja sakta hain. Ab hamare dhyaan ko ‘Close in and destroy’ se hatakar ‘Destroy and close in’ par kendrit karne ki zarurat hain. Ab, stand off neutralise/ fire dwara barbadi par nirbharta honi chahiye aur section ko kewal mopping up karna chahiye.

**Sujhai Drill**

1. **Vikalp I – Stand Off Doori Se Platoon Fire Base Dwara Vinaash AurSections Dwara Mopping Up Karen.** 
   1. Platoon Commander assault ki disha ko dhyan mein rakhte huye ek upyukt sthan par platoon fire base sthapit karta hain.
   2. Platoon fire base se RL (HEAT), Flame Thrower, MGL, LMG aur AGS ka istemal karen aur bunkers par gehare fire ka hamla shuru kiya jaye.
   3. Leading sections najdeek pahunchtein hain aur bunker ke vinaash ke paschyat mopping up karte hain.
   4. Platoon ko saunpe gaye sabhi bunker jab tak kabza/ barbaad na kar diye jayen yeh drill jari rakhi jaye.
   5. Is tariqe mein sections ek ke baad ek bunkers par kabza karte hain.
   6. Vaikalpik (Alternate) sections platoon fire base se fire support ka upyog kar thakawat vidhi (Exhaustion Method) ka paalan kar sakte hain.
2. **Vikalp II – Sections Jinke Paas Fire SupportGroup Hain.** 
   1. Section ko Support group aur Assault group mein baanta jaye.
   2. Assault ke disha anusaar section commander apna support group (Section 2IC ke aadhin RL det aur LMG Group) deploy karega.
   3. Support group bunker ko engage karega aur RL (HEAT) ka istemal kar usey barbad kar dega.
   4. Support group ke close fire support ke antargat, assault group UBGL ka fire karte huye section commander ke netritva mein fire and mov dwara bunker ke nazdeek jayega.
   5. Support fire band hone ke baad assault group bunker par hamla karega aur dushman ke bache pratirodh ko khatm kar dega.
   6. Is vikalp ka istemal kar teenon sections apne lakshya ko ek saath haasil kar sakte hain.

**Tatparya**

1. **Vikalp I.** Ek shrestha position se platoon fire base se upalabhd fire power dwara bunker ko barbaad karne se (RL, INSAS LMG, MGL aadi ke istemal se) nimnalikhit laabh arjit honge:-
   1. Khud ki kam se kam cas.
   2. Fire power aur lambi doori ke hathiyaron ka kargar istemal.
   3. Platoonsupportgroup ke fire power ka istemal kar bunker barbad kiye jayenge aur sections kewal mopping up karenge.
   4. Exhaustion Method ke saath sangat(compatible).
2. **Vikalp II**. Sections jinme gahan (inherent) fire support hain, unke dwara bunker barbaad kiya jata hain, to sabhi bunkers ko ek saath barbaad kiya ja sakta hain. Attack in Skirmish Order aur Definite Objective method mein istemal kiya ja sakta hai.

**CHAPTER - 65**

**JALDI KE HAMLE MEIN SECTION BATTLE DRILL**

**Infantry Training Volume-IV (2007) Platoon Tactics**

**Parichay**

1. Ek section ke dushman ke fire ke niche aane se lekar vipaksh (opposition) ka khatma karney tak ki karyawahi ka anukram ek drill ke roop mein hota hain. Karyawahi ka yeh tarqe anukram jo SectionCommander ko vipaksh par kaabu paane ke saksham banata hain, fire aur mov ke prarthamik siddhanton par adhaarit hain. Section aur Platoon ko upalabhdh fire power aur nigarani (surveillance) ki barhi huyi kshamata ki vajah se section ki dushman se nipatne ke kaabiliyat mein kaafi vridhhi huyi hain. Achook fire ki uplabdhata aur RL ke roop mein samast stand off kabiliyat se ab SectionCommander swayam ka fire base sthapit kar sakta hain, aur section ko do santulit groups mein organise (suvyavasthit) kiya ja sakta hain. Inhi baaton ko dhyaan mein rakhte huye ek section ke quick attack karne ke tariqe mein roopantar karna zaruri hain.

**Sujhai Drill**

1. Section sthar par quick attack nimnalikhit charnon mein karyanvrit kiya jayega: -
   1. **Dushman Ko Sthir Rakhna**. Dushman ke kaargar fire mein aane par, scouts ko turant fire karna chahiye aur dushman ko vyast (engage) karne ke liye upyukt position le leni chahiye aur dushman ko sthir (fix) karne mein section ki sahayata karni chahiye. Dushman ke baare mein adhik se adhik jankari haansil karne ke liye binos, NVDS aur weaponnight sights ka kaargar tariqe se istemal kiya jane chahiye.
   2. **Shrestha Position Par Jana**. Shesh section shrestha position par chala jayega, jahan se Section 2IC ke tahat woh dushman par LMG aur RL ka kaargar fire dalega. Yadi awashyak ho to UBGL ka fire bhi dala ja sakta hain.
   3. **Stithi ka Jaiza (Appre of the Situation)**. Section Commander drishya sahit sabhi upalabadh sadhnon ka istemaal karke zameen par stithi ka jayeza lega aur ki janey wali karyawahi par nirnay lega. Virodhi ko barbaad karna ya be-asar karna stithi (situation) par nirbhar karega. Agar virodhi, section ki kshamta se pare hain toh section commander apne platoon commander ko suchit karega.
   4. **Vinaash (Destruction).** 
      1. Dushman ko barbaad karne ke liye RL det HE/ HE airburst fire karega. Halaaton ko dhyan mein rakh kar platoon fire base se Sniper Rifle SVDN, MGL, UBGL aur 51mm mor jaise hatiyaron ki sahayata bhi li ja sakti hain. Platoon fire base ke saath coordination (talmel) radio par hoga. Platoon fire base ki grouping nimnanusar ho sakti hain:-
2. MGL.

(ab) Atirikt RL/ LMGs.

(ac) Sniper Rif SVDN.

(ad) 51mm Mortar.

* + 1. LMG ya Rifle group mein se jo bhi laabh ki sthaan (position) mein hain, fire support upalabdh karayega aur doosra group (baen/ dahine flanking) physical assault karke dushman ko barbaad karega.

**Aslt gp Support Group**

* 1. **Punargathan (Reorg)**. Punargathan command aur control punhe hasil karne, ammunition ke punarvitaran aur ghayalon ko prarthamik chikitsa upalabdh karane ke liye kiya jata hain.

**CHAPTER - 66**

**STAND TO DRILL**

**Infantry Training Volume-IV (2007) Platoon Tactics**

**Parichay**

1. Stand to, defended locality/ post par khatre/ alarm, sthaniya haalat ke samayojan (adjust), VIP ki visit ya defence ki tatparta parakhne ke abhyaas ke taur par kiya jata hain. Sabhi sambhavit akasmiktaon ka samna karne ke liye iske drill ko taiyar kiya gaya hain. Dekhbhaal aur nigarani (surveillance aur observation) ke aadhunik upkaranon ki upalabhdhta se dushman ko pehchanne aur locate karne ki Infantry battalion ki kabiliyat atyadhik barh gayi hain. Ab lambi doori se dushman ka pata lagana sambhav ho gaya hain jisse defences ko pratikriya ke liye parayapt samay mil jata hain.

**Maujuda Drill Mein Sujhaye Badlaav (Suggested Modification In Existing Drill)**.

1. Nimnalikhit pehluon ko maujuda stand to drill mein shamil kiya ja sakta hain:-
   1. Zimmedari ke ilaqe ke samne ke zamini nishanon ko nangi aankhon aur NVDs dono se pehchana jaye.
   2. Section ke illumination ke sansadhnon ko shamil kar, illuminationplan ka section ke sthar tak coordination (samanvaya).
   3. Surveillance grid ka coordination (samanvaya).
2. Ab weaponnight sight ke istemal se raat ko dekh kar fire dalna sambav ho gaya hain. Tathapi, fixed arc (nischit chap) ki prasangikta abhi bhi bani huyi hain kyunki zamini halaton aur mausam ki wajah se, drishyata (visibility) chhup sakti hain jisse ke dushman hamey chakit kar sakta hain aur isliye fixed arc (nischit chap) par ek auto (swachalit) hathiyar lagane se pratikriya ke samay ko kam karne aur fire ki dakshta ko sudharne mein madad milegi.

**CHAPTER - 67**

**JALDI KE HAMLEY KE LIYE PLATOON BATTLE DRILL**

**(PLATOON BATTLE DRILL FOR QUICK ATTACK)**

**Parichay**

1. Platoon battle drill ek advanceoperation of war mein platoon ka chhote pratirodh ka samna hone par usey parajit karne ke liye PlatoonCommander ki karyawahi ka ek tarksangat kram hain. Yeh prakriya platoon ki tezi se tainati aur harqat ko sunischit karne ke liye banayi gayi hain. Yeh ek deliberate attack (sachintit hamle) ke liye prasangik nahi hain.
2. Ab ek platoon ke paas upalabdh atirikt kshamata, adhik fire power, din aur raat ki nigarani ki kaabiliyat aur ek vyavaharath fire support gp banane ke liye regroup hone ke lachilepan mein barhotri huyi hain. Quick attack ko launch karte waqt platoon ki nirbharta ab twarit pehchan aur fire ki pradhanta ki aur parivartit ho gayi hain, jiske liye adhik se adhik coord (samanvaya) ki awashyakata hain.

**Sujhai Drill**

1. Quick attack ke liye platoon battle drill nimnanusar chaar bhagon mein kiya jayega: -
   1. **Leading Section Ki Pratikriya**.
      1. Leading section dushman ke kaargar fire mein aa jaane par dushman par fire karega. Pehchani gayi dushman ki position par aimed (lakshyait) fire dalne ke liye RL det upyukt posn ka chayan karega. UBGL aur LMG ka fire bhi daala jayega.
      2. PlatoonCommander ek suvidhajanak morche se larai ka adhyayan karega, iske liye who sabhi upalabdh sadhanon ka istemal karega aur radio set par company commander ko jankari dega, baaki sab usey sunege.
      3. Saath hi platoon ke anya supportweapons aimed fire dalne ke liye chune huye sthaan par chale jayenge.
      4. Shesh platoon, is karyavahi mein shamil huye bina tactically tainaat hogi. Platoon Hav charge lega aur aaropit (entrenched) dushman ko engage aur barbaad karne ke liye Platoon Commander ke nirdeshanusar RL/ 51mm Mortar, MMG, Flame Thrower, MGL, AMR (Support Gp) bhejega.
   2. **Fire Bases Ki Sthapna.** 
      1. Jab platoon commander ko gyaat ho jaye ki dushman point section ki kshamta se pare hain to wah jaldi se maansik mulyavardhan (mental appre) banata hain. Company aur Platoon ke sansadhnon, jaise NVDs se lagaatar upalabdh hone waali jankariyan, PlatoonCommander ko tezi se nirnaya lene mein madad karti hain. Wah nimnalikhit karyawahi karega:-

(aa) ‘O’ gp ke saath shesh platoon ke liye RV ka chayan karega aur platoon Hav/ section cdrs ko RS par jankari dega.

(ab) Leading section ko fire supportsection ke roop main kaam karne ka aadesh dega aur unhe hamle ki disha aur raaste ki jankari dega.

* + 1. Fire supportgroupjisme leading section, 3 x RLs (mtns mein 01 x 51 mm Mortar ke saath RL) MMG, Flame Thrower (agar gp kiya ho) shamil hain, nirdharit fire posn par jayega aur fire base sthapit karega.
    2. Platoon Commander pragati ki jankari Company Commander ko dega aur agar zarurat ho toh AGL, AMR, 81mm Mor ke fire ki maang karega. Agar zarurat ho/ haalat ijazat den to company support wpns ko bhi fire base mein shamil kiya ja sakta hain.
  1. **Flanking Hamla/ Stand Off Doori Se Barbaad Karna.** 
     1. Platoon Cdrs dwara twarit aadesh diye jayenge.
     2. PlatoonCommander aur O group RV par punha milenge.
     3. Sambandhit Section ko SectionCommander jankari denge.
     4. Platoon Commander dushman ki posns par fire ke prabhav ko observe karta hain, dushman ka fire kam hone par platoon hamla karega. (v) Safety angle ko dhyan mein rakhte huye support fire bandh kar diya.

(vi) Assault troops objective ke nazdik pahunchkar shesh bache pratirodh kar rahe dushman ko barbaad kar denge.

* 1. **Reorg (Punargathan)**. Aage barhne se pehle immediate reorg (tatkaal punargathan) kiya jayega, jisme nimnalikhit pehlu shamil hain: -
     1. Section aur Platoon Commander dwara punha comd aur control prapt karna.
     2. Orders/ tactical halaat ke anusaar kaam karna.
     3. Platoon ke andar ammunition ka punarvitaran.

(iv) Casualty ki nikashi (Casualty evacuation).

**CHAPTER - 68**

**PLATOON FIRE BASE STHAPIT KARNA**

**Parichay**

1. Nayi peerhi ke hathiyaaron ke pradhikaran ki vajah se fire base sthapit karne ki Infantryplatoon ki kshamata atyadhik barh gayi hain. Model 4 B (Mod) ke aadhar par ek rifle platoon ko adhikrut nimnalikhit hathiyaaron se ab ek abbhin platoon fire base banana sambhav ho gaya hain: -
   1. 01 x MGL.
   2. 03 x PNS ke saath INSAS LMG.
   3. 03 x RL.
   4. 03 x UBGL.
2. Iske alawa company sthar par barhi kshamata ka bhi platoon dwara istemaal ki ja sakta hain. Ek RifleCompany ko adhikrut nimnalikhit hathiyaar platoon fire base ya platoon fire supportgroup (agar gp kiye gaye ho toh) ka ek bhag bhi bana sakte hain:-
   1. AMR.
   2. MMG.
   3. Flame Thrower (Assault platoon se).
3. Ek abbhin platoon fire base banane ke liye upar ke purey 1 aur 2 mein varnit hathiyaron ko group kiya ja sakta hain. Is platoon fire supportgroup ke paas antarang fire support pradaan karne ke liye teevra fire power hain jisse ki lambi doori se dushman ke bunkers ko barbaad kiya ja sakta hain.

**Sujhai Drill**

1. **Banawat**.
   1. **Commander**. Platoon Hav. Lekin, jab MMG/ AGS section ko platoon fire base ke saath group kar diya jayega tab MMG/ AGS Sectioncommander ko Fire Base commander ke roop mein niyukt kar sakte hain.
   2. **Hathiyaar.** 
      1. PNS ke saath ek ya do RLs.
      2. PNS ke saath ek ya do INSAS LMG.
      3. 01 x MGL
      4. Ek ya do UBGL.
      5. AGS/ MMG/ FT/ AMR agar gp kiye hon.
2. **Karya (Tasks)**. Platoon fire base ko nimn karya saunpe ja sakte hain: -
   1. Assaulting section ko fire support pradaan karna.
   2. Minefd nests ko be-asar (neutralise) karna.
   3. Dushman ke Sniper/ LMG post ko be-asar (neutr) karna.
   4. Sections ke mopping up se pehle RL/ MGL/ UBGL ka istemal kar ke barbaad karna.
3. **Platoon Fire Support Group Ke Liye Sujhaya OOM**.

**.**

**.**

**.**

**1**

Platoon fire support gp

**2**

**3**

1. **Fire Support Pradaan Karne Ke Liye Tainaat Karna**. Minefd ko paar karne ke baad platoon fire supportgroup ko OOM se door hat jaana chahiye, aur khud ko aise upyukt sthan par tainaat kar lena chahiye jahan se achook fire support se ek platoon ko sounpe gaye sabhi bunkers ko barbaad kiya ja sakey. Agar zarurat ho, toh platoon fire supportgroup, zameen aur objective par kabza karne ke liye apnaye gaye tariqe ke aadhar par apne sthan parivartan kar sakte hain.Platoonsupportgroupko minefd paar karne ke baad perimeter fence (pareedhi barh) ke kareeb laabh ke kshetra (posn of advantage) mein khud ko tainaat karna chahiye, jaisa neeche darshaya gaya hain:-

Wire obst

.

.

…

.

Perimeter

fence

1

2

3

Platoon fire

support gp

Platoon

Fire

Support

Gp

1. **Fire Shuru Karna (Commencement Of Fire).** Company fire base ke fire bandh karne ke saath hi platoon fire base ko fire shuru kar dena chahiye.

**CHAPTER - 69**

**OPs AUR LPs**

**Parichay**

1. Defence mein OPs aur LPs sub unit commander ki aankhen aur kaan hain. Pehchan aur sthan ki seema mein barhotri, aur vaastavik samay mein jaankari chaubison ghante praapt aur prasaar karne ki kshamata se OPs aur LPs ki karyapranali ka aadhunikaran zaruri ho gaya hain. Infantrybattalion ko ab auth (pradhikrut) nimnalikhit upkarnon ne nigarani aur dekh rekh ki kshamata mein izafa kiya hain: -
   1. NVDs.
   2. HHTIs.
   3. LRF.
   4. Digital Camera ke saath Spotter Scope.
   5. UGS.

**Nihitarth (Implications.**

1. Upar diye gaye surveillance aur dekh rekh waale upkarnon ki uplabdhata ka OPs aur LPs ki niyukti par nihitarth nimnanusar hoga: -
   1. Upar diye gaye upkarnon ke saath sussajit OPs ko defended post/ locality ke andar chunehuye sthanon par lagaya ja sakta hain.
   2. HHTI ki ghane jharion/ paton ke beech se dekh lene ki kshamata jungle ke ilaqe mein kaargar nigarani aur observation kshamata upalabdh karati hain.
   3. LPs ke sath sath NVDs se bhi observation kiya jaye. LP ko listening drill ke saath NVDsaur HHTI de kar Night OP ka kaam diya ja sakta hain.
   4. Sanchaar ke barhe huye madhyamon ke saath OPs/ LPs ko surveillance grid ke saathsamakalit karke khabar ko vaastavik samay me pass kiya ja sakta hain.
   5. Anya madhyamon jaise UGS aur parosi location se praapt khabarein OPs aur LPs ke prabhaav ko barha sakte hain.

**CHAPTER - 70**

**BAHU DISHATMAK HAMLA**

**(MULTI DIRECTIONAL ATTACK)**

**Parichay**

1. Bahu dishatmak hamle ki paribhasha ke anusaar wah ek hamla hain jisse antarnihit (inbuilt) reserves ke saath santulit samuhon (balanced groups) dwara ek saath, ek se adhik aksh rekhaon (axis) par kiya jata hain. Pratyek hamla paryaapt roop se alag hota hain aur antim mission ke upalabhdi ke liye yogdaan deta hain, jisme anyatha vibhhin charnon mein hamlon ki ek bari sankhya ki zarurat hoti hain. Yeh awadharna defender ke upar ek naitik prabhutva pradhan karti hain, defender ke pratikriya samay ko kam kar deti hain, jabti ki pahal ko saksham banata hain (seizure of initiative) aur safalta ki sambhavna ko barhane ke alawa sainikon ke aur samay ki bachat bhi karta hain.

**Battalion Star Par Bahu Dishatmak Hamle Se Sambhandhit Mudde**

1. Battalion star par bahu dishatmak hamle ki yojna banate samaye nimnalikhit par bhi vichaar kiya jaana chahiye:-
   1. **Yudh ki Smestha (Combat Superiority of) 6/9:1**. Larai ka anupat zamin (trn) dwara tay kiya jata hain. Kam unchai wale pahari ilaqe par, 6: 1 ka anupat paryapt ho sakta hain, lekin unchey paharon par 9:1 ke anupat ki aawashyakta hogi. Bahu dishatmak hamla aam taur par brigade aur unche sthar par kiya jata hain. Lekin upyukt halaton mein ek Infantrybattalion bhi bahu dishatmak hamle karne mein saksham hogi. Kyunki Org Infantry 4B ke baad se janbal

(manpower) mein koi vridhhi nahi huyi hain, definite objective (nischit objective) ka avantan platoon strength dwara kabza kiye huye objective ke liye hi kiya ja sakta hain. Yudh ke 6:1 anupat ke saath platoon ke aakar ke objective ko pakarne ke liye do companies ki zarurat hogi, jis mamle mein, alag se reserves ko poora karna mushkil hoga.

* 1. **Santulit Sanrachna aur Paryapt Reserves Ke Saath Nafri**. Larai ke shresth anupat 6:1 par vichaar karen aur agar battalion do secs ke maap ke objective par hamla kar rahi hain to paryaapt reserves upalabhd hoga. Bare objective ke mamle mein, adhik samakalit reserves (integral reserves) mushkil ho jayega. Reserves ko ek sthan se dusre sthan par switch karne mein lagne wale samay aur unkey samay par niyojan ko dhyan mein rakhte huye reserves ki loc ko kaafi soch vichar kar nirdharit kiya jana chahiye. Kayi firebase sthapit karne honge, aur supporting hathiyaaron ko vibhajit karna hoga. Reserve battalion ke atitrikt hatiyaaron ko fire bases mein istemaal karne ke liye maang sakte hain. FUP marking aur minefd breaching ke liye atirikt samaan ka dhyan rakhna chahiye.
  2. **Pratyek Aks (Axis) Par Firm Base ki Aawashyakta**. Ek hamla ek surakshit firm base se shuru kiya jayega. Battalion sthar par hamla adhiktam do dishaon se kiya ja sakta hain. Agar hamlaawar battalion ka firm base do sthano par sthapit karna hain, to hamle ke liye koi abhhin reserves upalabdha nahi honge. Isiliye, yahaan fmn vyavastha ke tahet firm base uapalabdha karane ki aawasyakta hain.
  3. **Artillery ka Paryaapt Sahiyog**. Halanki, Model 4B (Mod) ke anukulan ke saath, platoon aur companies ke bheetar fire power mein paryaapt vridhhi ki gayi hain, arty fire support ki zarurat mein koi badllav nahi hain. Ek bahu dishatmak hamle ke liye ek battalion ko atirikt fire units ki zarurat ho sakti hain. Firm base tak ki harqat ke liye aur kaargar covering fire upalabdh karane ke liye atirikt FUs ki zarurat fmn vyavastha se poori karni hogi. Fire ka coord uchch sthar par kiya jaana hoga.
  4. **Command aur Control ka Vikendriyakaran (Decentralisation)**.

Command aur control ka vikendriyakaran prabhavi radio sanchaar ke saath hi saral aur achchi tarha abhyaas ki gayi drills ke karan sambhav hain. Vartman mein upalabdh radio upkaran ek Infantry battalion dwara kiye ja rahe bahu dishatmak hamle mein sahayog ke liye paryaapt hain. Bahu dishatmak hamle ke safalta ke liye kaargar IFF ek awashyak shart hain. Iskeliye saral aur kaargar padhhati (procedures) ko shamil karne ki zarurat hain. Bahu dishatmak hamle ki safalta ke liye asaan drills ka achche abhyas ke saath uchch prashikshit junior leadership bhi aawashyak sharte hain. CO kewal hamle ek hi disha mein prabhaav daal sakte hain aur yeh ek baadha kaarak rahega.

* 1. **Navigation Mein Aatmanirbharta**. Bahu dishatmak hamlon ke dauraan sahi navigation atyadhik mahatvapuran hota hain. GPS aur NVD ke vartmaan auth (pradhikaran) ek battalion dwara kiye ja rahe bahu dishatmak hamle mein sahyog kar sakte hain.

**Sujhai Gai Padhati**

1. Bahu dishatmak hamla paharon ke liye bahut upyukt hain. Bahu dishatmak hamle ke liye sujhai gayi padhati niche di gayi hain:-
   1. Hamla ek surakshit firm base se kiya jana chahiye. Bahu dishatmak hamle ke mamle mein pratyek aks (axis) ko ek surakshit firm base pradaan kiya jaye. Chunki Infantry battalion ke level ke liye yeh sambhav nahi hain, formation vyavastha ke tahat firm base upalabdh karaya jayega.
   2. Infantrybattalion dwara bahu dushatmak hamle do companies ke kewal do samuhon dwara kiya jana chahiye.
   3. Samaghat ki shrestta (Combat Superiority) 6/9: 1 ko dhyan mein rakhte huye, ek Infantrybattalion ko kewal platoon ke aakar ke lakshya par hamla karne ke liye lagaya ja sakta hain. Agar bare aakar ke lakshya par kabza karna hain to atirikt sanikon ke samuh ki aawasyakta hogi.
   4. Bahu dishatmak hamla launch karne ke liye artillery ka paryaapt sahyog aur fire support ek zaruri shart hain, Isey fmn vyavastha ke antargat karne ki zarurat hain.
   5. Har aks (Axis) par paryaapt AT/ porters pradaan kiye jaane chayiye taaki prabhaavi rasad (logistics support) pahunchakar safalta ko majboot kiya jaa sakey.
   6. Org Model 4B (Mod) mein ek Infantrybattalion ke paas upalabdh sanchaar, navigation aur surveillance ke upkarnon ka behtar istemal kiya jana chahiye. Objective Area (Lakshyait kshetra) tak navigation karne ke liye GPS ka istemal kiya jana chahiye. Upalabdh RS ke niyojan dwara prabhaavi kamaan aur niyantran sunischit kiya ja sakta hain aur vibhin stharon par bhatraghatak (fratricide) se bacha ja sakta hain. Firebase par surveillance aur night vision upkarnon ke niyojan se wah satik fire support sunischit karenge.
   7. Command juniorleaders ko di jaye (decentralize comd). Jr cdrs ki unche darje ki training se yeh prabhaavit hoga.
2. Bahu dishatmak hamle mein savadhaan purna yojana aur unche darje ke coordination(samanvaya) ki aawasyakta hogi. Is tariqe ke operations jab launch kiye jaate hain to wah dushman ko ashcharyachakit karte hain, dushman se pahal zabt karte hain, uski pratikriya karne ki kshamtaon ko kam karte hain aur objective par tezi se kabza sambhav banate hain.

**CHAPTER - 71**

**ABHHIN FIRE BASES KI AWDHARNA**

**(CONCEPT OF ORGANIC FIRE BASES)**

**Parichay**

1. Artillery ke mediumisation ke kaaran safety distance (suraksha duri) mein huyi barhotri ne Infantry ko hamle ke aakhri 300m mein adhik samvedansheel (vulnerable) bana diya hain. Lekin platoon level par MGL aur Section level par RL jaise adhikrit atirikt support wpns aur adhik fire power upalabdh karate hain aur section tatha platoon level par fire base sthapit karne mein suvidha pradaan karte hain, isiliye yahan section/ platoon/ company level par ek nihit fire base sthapit karne ki zarurat hain, taaki dushman ko prabhaavi tariqe se dabakar rakha ja sakey aur swayam ke tps kam hatahat hon. Ek organic fire base jisme MMG, AGS, ATGM, AMR, RL, MGL aur UBGL jaise abhhin hathiyaar shamil honge ko dhyan purvak stand off rgs par lagaya jayega aur hamle ki yojana mein arty ke saath in sabhi hathyiaron ka coord (samanvay) hoga jisse dushman ke defs mein prabhaavii giravat (eff degradation) sunischit ki ja sakey.

**Paramparik Vatavaran Mein Firebase**

1. **Battalion aur Company Firebases**. Bhootpurva fire bases, battalion level par Support Company Commander ke aadhin kendriyakrat the. Zamini halaat aur rakshak dwara apnaye gaye suraksha ke prakaar ke aadhar par fire bases sabhi battalion aur companysupport wpns ka mishran hote hain. Company fire base, battalion fire base ke samaan the, unme kewal comd ke sthar, hathiyaron ki matra, aur taiyari ke sthar mein antar hota tha. Company level se niche fire base ki koi sankalpana (concept) nahi thi.
2. **Kamiyan (Shortcomings)**. Pehle ki sankalpana mein kuch kamiya niche suchibadh hain:-
   1. Platoon aur section level par fire support pradaan karne ki kshamata simit thi.
   2. Fire power ki kami ki vajah se anya units se hathiyaaron ko ekatrit karna zaruri tha.
   3. Firebase centralized (kendrikrat) niyantran ke tahet sthapit kiye ja sakte the aur unme har samay kaargar fire daal sakne ki kshamata nahi thi. Aise fire bases hamle ke sabhi charnon ka samarthan bhi nahi kar sakte the. Jisse fire bases ko dusri jagah le jana zaruri ho jata tha.
   4. Hamlawar tukrion ko hamle ke antim charan ke liye apne support wpns par bharosa karne ke liye chor diya jata tha, aur company tatha battalion fire support wpns ko aagey laney ke liye tadarth (adhoc) vyavastha ki gayi thi.

**Abhhin Firebase (Organic Firebase)**

1. Ek Infantry battalion mein aadhunik hathiyaron aur upkarnon ke aa jaane se uska range, achookta, maarak kshamata aur din aur raat mein dekhbhaal aur nigarani karne ki kshamata bahut barh gayi hain. Ab sub units ke hathiyaron aur sansdhanon ka grouping (samuhikaran) karke abhhin firebases ko company/ platoon/ section ke sthar par sthapit karna sambhav ho gaya hain. Bhautik (Physical) hamle ki apeksha bhaari golabari se ek target ko barbaad karna sambhav hain. Vibhhin stharon par cdrs ke paas abhin firebase hota hain, jisse wah apni soch samaj se kaam le sakte hain. Infantry ke abhhin hathiyaaron ko prabhaavi dhang se niche diye huye roop mein istemaal kar saktey hain:-
   1. **Battalion Fire Base**. 81mm Mor, ATGM, AMR, AGS, MMG.
   2. **Company Fire Base**. ATGM, AMR, AGS, MMG, RL.
   3. **Platoon Fire Base**. MMG/ AGS, RL, MGL, UBGL, LMG, 51mm Mor.
   4. **Section Fire Base**. LMG, RL, UBGL.
2. **Sujhaye Gaye Abhhin Firebase (Suggested Organic Firebases).** Sujhaye huye fire base prabhaavi kaman aur niyantran ke saath abhhin hathiyaar purak hone chahiye. Abhhin firebase ki sthapana ke liye sujhaye gayi drills is prakar hain: -
   1. **Section level.** 
      1. Section kargar fire ke niche aata hain.
      2. Immediate action drill (Section battle drill) kiya jata hain.
      3. Dushman ko kaargar tariqe se uljhane ke liye LMG, RL aur UBGL aage tak jayenge aur dushman se prabhaavi dhang se larhege.
      4. LMG dushman ke shir ko dabayegi aur RL tatha UBGL ke fire dwara dushman ki position ko barbad kiya jayega.
   2. **Platoon level**. Agar dushman ki posn aage chalne wali section ki kshamta se pare hain, tab SectionCommander, PlatoonCommander ko suchit karega aur section, platoon ke aa jaane tak dushman ko uljhaye rakhega. Fire support is prakaar pradaan kiya jata hain:-
      1. Point section ke hathiyaar dushman ko vyasth karte hain aur dushman ke sar ko dabake rakhte hain.
      2. Shesh bache huye secs aur platoon ke hathiyar Platoon Commander ke nirdeshanusar upyukt sthan tak jate hain.
      3. Firebase Platoon Hav ke niyantran mein sthapit kiya jata hain, aur2 x LMG, 2 x RL, 2 x UBGL tatha MGL ke fire dwara dushman ko uljhaye rakhte hain.
      4. Fire base ki kamaan Platoon Hav ke paas hogi. Platooncommander ke tahat shesh bachi huyi platoon dwara lakshya par hamla kiya jata hain. Platoon commander aur Platoon Hav ke beech sanchar (comn) ke liye pt section ke radio set ka istemal kar saktey hain.
3. Abhhin (Organic) fire base ki sthapana karte samay nimlikhit baton par dhyan diya jana chahiye: -
   1. Fire base ko is prakar lagaya jana chahiye, jisse hathiyaaron ki sateekta aur barhi range ka upyog kiya ja sakey.
   2. Ek section ko auth hathiyaron ke crew served weapon sights aur ni sights ka istemal karke raat mein aantrik (intimate) fire support ke kshamata ka upyog karna chahiye.
   3. FSE hasil karne ke liye LRF ka istemal kar range ka sahi aakalan kiya jaye.
   4. Static (Sthir) firebase ki pravritti ko rokna hoga. Barhi nafri ke kaaran firebase ka sthanantaran sambhav hain, is se barambar regroup hone mein suvidha hoti hain.
4. **Section Banaam Platoon Firebase**. Zamin aur khatre ke aadhar par, fire bases ka sanyojan sambhav hain. Tainaati sthan ko dhyan mein rakhte huye platoon aur section dono ke firebase ka istemal kar sakte hain. Sthithi ke aadhar par juniorleaders par isska nirnaya chor dena chahiye. Platoon fire base ki kshamata barhane ke liye ek section ke hathiyaron ki sankhya kam karne ki pravritti par dhyan diye jane ki zarurat hain taaki ek section ki larai ki kshamata kam na ho.

**CHAPTER - 72**

**DEFENCES KO IKHTIYAAR KARNA: FRONTAGES AUR GAPS**

## Infantry Training Volume –IV (2007) Platoon Tactics

**Parichay**

1. Infantrybattalion ke org mein sanshodhan se aur navintam hathiyaron aur upkarnon ke shamil kar liye jaane se defence ki roop rekha ke liye yojana banane, har prakaar ke ilaqe mein, frontages aur gaps ke mamle mein jahan par section/ platoon/ company ne kabza karna hain usmey zaruri sanshodhan aawashyak hain. Lekin unit ke paas upalabdh sansadhan kewal kaarak nahi hain jo frontages and depth (agrabhag aur antaralon) par prabhaav dalte hain. Anya kaarak jo ek defence loc mein frontage aur depth par asar dalte hain is prakar hain: -
   1. Sanchaar (Communication)
   2. Kaman aur niyantran (Command and control)
   3. Manovaigyanic Algaav (Psychological Isolation)
   4. Hathiyaron ki range aur fire power.

(e) Raat mein larne ki kabiliyat (Night fighting capability)

(f) Failaav ke liye zarurat (Need for dispersion)

(g) Defence ki susanhiti (Compactness).

(h) Aapsi Sahyog ki zarurat (Mutual support).

**Unit Sthar Par Defensive Opeartions Par Upkarnon Aur Hathiyar Roop Rekha(Profile) Mein Parivartan ka Prabhav**

1. Ek Infantrybattalion mein upkaran aur hathiyaron mein parivartan ke prabhaav nimnalikhit hain:-
   1. **Hathiyar Pranali Ki Seema (Range)**. Pratyek sthar par hathiyaar pranali ki seema mein vridhi se barhe frontage (agrabhag) ko kabze mein rakhne aur depth areas (antraalon) par effective domination (prabhaavi varchasva) mein suvidha ho gayi hain.
   2. **Sanchaar (Communication)**. Section level tak RS VPS ke pradhikaran se aur line upkarnon ke paryapt pradhikaran se bare frontage ke kaaran hone waale failaav ke bawajood sub units mein kaman aur niyantran (comd aur control) kaargar aur aasan ho gaya hain. Defence ki susanthiti (compactness) ko dhyan mein rakh kar secs ke beech ke antar ko barhaya ja sakta hain. Section ka frontage (mukhbhag) utna hi rehta hain, kyunki section ke bheetar sanchaar ke saadhan ke roop mein Section commander dwara aawaj ka hi prayog hota hain.
   3. **Reinforcement/ Counter Attack**. Infantrybattalion ki barhayi gayi mobility (gatisheelta) aur fire power ke kaaran CA ko jaldi aur tezi se launch kiya ja sakta hain.
   4. **Din Aur Raat MeinAccuracy**. INSAS Rif, LMG, RL aur sniper rifles ke saath upalabhd ni sights aur optical sights ke kaaran hathiyar pranali ki achukata kayi guna barh gayi hain. Isse unit apne aslt ke antim 200m mein dushman par sahi fire dalne mein shaksham ho gayi hain, jiske kaaran dushman ko adhik nuksaan hota hain.
   5. **Nigarani Upkarnon Ki Barhi Pradhikaran**. Battalion sthar par BFSR, HHTI aur nigarani ke anya upkarnon ke pravesh se nigarani aur avlokan (obsn) ki kabiliyat kafi barh gayi hain. Company/ Battalion ke antaralon (inter company/ battalion gaps) par ab adhik kargar tariqe se domination (prabhutva sthapit) kiya ja sakta hain.

**Vichaarniya Mudde.**

1. Yadyapi Infantrybattalion ke upkarnon aur hathiyaron ki roop rekha mein badlaav bare gaps aur failey huye frontage ka sujhaav dete hain. Nimnalikhit vicharniya binduon ko dhyan mein rakha jana chahiye: -
   1. Defences ke kabze se pehle gaps aur frontages ke bare mein faisla karne ke liye terrrain (bhubhag) aur msn mukhya kaarak rahenge.
   2. Section ke frontage mein koi badlaav nahi hoga, kyunki section commander ki dekhne aur aawaj niyantran ki kshamata se samjhauta nahi kiya ja sakta.
   3. Inter section gaps ko 75m se 100m tak barhaya ja sakta hain, aisa INSAS LMG ki adhik range aur Platoon Commander ke liye sanchaaar ke pratilipikaran (duplication) uplabhdata ke kaaran sambhav hain.
   4. Inter Section gaps mein vridhhi ke karan platoon ke antaralon ko 350400m tak barhaya ja sakta hain.
   5. Company ki raatri firing kabiliyat mein vridhhi ke kaaran platoon antaralon (inter platoon gaps) ko 250-300m tak barhaya ja sakta hain.
   6. Agar trn pls ke beech mein aapsi samanvaya sthapit karne ki ijajat de to company ke frontage ko usi anusaar barhaya ja sakta hain.
   7. Isi prakaar se Battalion ke frontage mein bhi parivartan kiye ja sakte hain kyunki battalion ke beech ke vyapak gaps ko cover karne ke liye ab paryapt saadhan upalabhd hain.
   8. Antar battalion aur antar company gaps ko bhi ptls aur nayi peerhi ke nigarani wale upkarnon se prabhavit (dominate) kiya ja sakta hain.
2. **Sifarish Kiye Gaps aur Frontages**: Niche diye fronatges aur gaps ki sifarish ki jati hain: -

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  |  | (a)**Maidani Ilaqe Mein (Plains).** | | |
|  |  | **Sub Unit** | **Frontages(Meters)Gaps (Meters)** | |
|  |  | Section | 75 –100 | 100 –125 |
|  |  | Platoon | 350 – 400 | 250 – 300 |
|  |  | Company | 900 – 1000 | 600 – 800 |
|  |  | Battalion | 2500–3000 | 1200 – 1800 |
|  |  | (b) **DCB Mein**. |  |  |
|  |  | **Sub Unit** | **Frontages (Meters)** | **Depth (Meters)** |
|  |  | Section | 100 –100 | 100 –200 |
|  |  | Platoon | 700 – 800 | 300 – 400 |
|  |  | Company | 3500 – 3500 | 600 – 800 |
|  |  | Battalion | 10000–12000 | 1500 – 2000 |

(c) **Paharon Mein (Mtns)**. Nimnalikhit karnon se badlaav ke liye koi sifarish nahi ki jaati hain:-

* + 1. Sambhavna hain ki ilaqe (bhubhag) ke kaaran range simit ho jaye, isiliye hathiyaaron ka upyog plunging fire, defiladed posn se enfilade fire aur upalabdh field of view jaise kaarnon dwara nirdharit kiya jayega.
    2. Prayapt field of fire upalabdh naa ho.
    3. Mutual support, (jisme hamle ke waqt ek unit/ sub unit doosri unit/

sub unit ke frontage ko cover karti hain) bahut mushkil hoga. Is liye niche diye gaye maapdandon ko jaari rakhne ki sifarish ki jaati hain: -

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Sub Unit** | **Frontage (Meters)Antaral (Meters)** | |
|  | Section | 75 – 100 30 – 50 | |
|  | Platoon | 350 – 400 250 - 350 | |
|  | Company | 1500-2000 600 - 800 | |
|  | Battalion | Trijya (Radius) 1500-2000M  Paridhi (Circumference) 10-12 Km | |
|  | (d) **Registaan (Deserts)**. | |  |
|  | **Sub Unit Frontages (Meters)** | | **Depth(Meters)** |
|  | Section 75 – 100 | | 100 – 150 |
|  | Platoon 350 -400 | | 250 – 350 |
|  | Company 1500 - 2000 | | 600 – 800 |
|  | Battalion Radius=1500-2000m | |  |

Paridhi (Circumference) = 10 -12 km

1. Uprokt badlaav InfantryBattalion ki organisation mein haal hi mein huye parivartan/ aadhunikaran ki vajah se kiye ja rahe hain. F-INSAS ki avdharna ke kaaryanvan se Infantrybattalion ki barhi huyi firepower, sanrakshan, mobility (gatishilta) aur comn (sanchar) kshamta ke karan InfantryBattalion ki larhne ki kshamata par bhi prabhaav parega. Kamaan aur niyantran banaye rakhne ke liye frontage aur gaps ko simit rakhne ke pratibandhan ab lagoo nahi honge. Is prakaar se sub units ke beech ke gaps ko aur barhaya ja sakta hian jisse Battalion ka frontage bhi barh jayega.

**NOTESNOTESNOTESNOTESNOTESNOTESNOTES**